



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Harvard College Library



FROM THE ESTATE OF
JAMES BRADSTREET GREENOUGH
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN HARVARD COLLEGE
1883-1901

RECEIVED JULY 12, 1910



3 2044 097 055 768

o

A MANUAL

OF

INSTRUCTION IN LATIN

ON THE BASIS OF

ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S LATIN METHOD

PREPARED BY

JOSEPH H. ALLEN

BOSTON

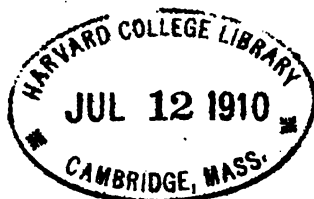
GINN AND HEATH

1880

Edue T 918.80.135

-Edue T 968.76

~~Edue T 918.76.3~~



*From the collection of
C. S. Allen*

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1876, by

JOSEPH H. ALLEN,

in the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Wright & Potter Printing Company, 18 Post Office Square, Boston.

PREFACE.

THIS Manual retains from the "Latin Method" the general arrangement of topics, the later reading selections, and a few statements in detail, especially the section on reading at sight, with much of what is said on the derivation and meaning of words. In all other respects it is an independent book, and one for which I am solely responsible.

The object in view has been to provide *a full year's course in Latin, which can be studied without the grammar.* The fulness, the general statement, the scientific nomenclature required in a book of reference, ill adapt it to the beginner, bewildering him with theory before his mind is steadied and cleared by knowing the simpler facts. The thirty Lessons of Part First, with the accompanying Exercises, contain, it is believed, all of the forms and constructions needed as a preparation for easy reading. These may be followed directly by the earlier selections of Part Fourth,* before proceeding to the more difficult constructions of Syntax.

The Vocabulary to be used with these selections contains the more useful Roots as a guide to the proper study of words. The sections on the formation and meaning of words, with the illustrative lists on pages 126-128, and those given at the end of the book, will be found of advantage at this stage, for constant reference if not for class study.

In the elementary lessons, and in the vocabularies, the practice has been followed of marking as long all vowels known to have

* Taken from Kühner's "Elementargrammatik," Hannover, 1866, 27th ed.

been so regarded by the Romans. These have been held to include not only those long "by nature" or by "vowel-extension," but also those before the combinations *nf* and *ns*,* together with a few others indicated by analogy, as *amānt*. If a serious attempt is made to pronounce according to the "Roman Method," the best help will be to train the learner's ear to it from the start.

The systematic study of Syntax is provided for in Part Second by very numerous classified illustrations, both in Latin † and English, which may be used for practice in the writing of Latin during a second year's course. The grammar is here referred to, constantly and minutely, as the subject seems to require; but the topics may be treated orally, if preferred, the examples in Latin being taken (at sight) as a guide in the exercises which follow.

The composition of this Manual has been studied wholly from the point of view of the elementary class-room; and, while scientific accuracy has been aimed at, the convenience of teacher or learner has in no case been sacrificed to theoretical completeness. Forms have been very fully indicated in the vocabularies; and occasional references to the grammar in the earlier Lessons will enable the teacher to give such further detail as may here and there be desirable.

My grateful acknowledgments are due to several of our best teachers, who have generously aided me by their counsel in the plan and in numerous details of the book. The entire work has received, in addition, the valuable revision and oversight of Dr. HENSHAW, former Principal of Williston Seminary, Easthampton, Massachusetts.

It may be worth while to add that the practice of tasking the beginner with a great mass of grammatical detail — which is fast coming to be considered a serious burden and harm to our scholarship — is one of comparatively recent date, and one which is not found (I believe) in any other country. The schoolboys of forty or

* See Cicero, Orator, ch. 48.

† Many of these are taken from Wright's "First Latin Steps." Macmillan, 1871.

fifty years ago, with less of theoretical accuracy and completeness in their studies, were relatively more familiar with the classic authors, and, there is reason to suppose, enjoyed them more, than those of a later day. A scientific etymology, and a syntax expounded on the principles of comparative philology, are a positive and great gain in the newer school. But the detail of these studies appears to belong to the professional scholar ; while their results are best seen in making more vivid and clear the forms of ancient thought and expression that have come down to us. They may be of real help to the youngest learner ; but only when they make the way easier and brighter in which he has to travel. To smooth that way a little is the best service I can hope to render.

J. H. A.

CAMBRIDGE, August 21, 1876.

N O T E.

IN the present edition, by the simplification and abridgment of the "Parallel Exercises" (pp. 46-74), space has been gained to insert a series of easy exercises (interlined) in Reading at Sight—a practice which it is desirable to encourage from as early a period of the study as possible. In this portion of the book, *long quantities* have been marked, on the principle stated in the foregoing Preface.

JUNE 18, 1880.

"Thus, upon examination, we find that all that requires un-reasoning memory may be reduced to the following heads :—

1. The five declensions, which include all adjectives and participles ;
2. The rules for gender, and exceptions ;
3. The four conjugations, active and passive, which latter voice includes *sum* ;
4. The irregular verbs, *eo, volo, nolo, malo, possum* ;
5. Syntax : two pages.

All this might easily be comprehended within twenty-four octavo pages."

D'ARCY W. THOMPSON,

"Day-Dreams of a Schoolmaster"

CONTENTS.

PART I. — ELEMENTARY LESSONS.

		PAGE
LESSON 1.	Pronunciation and Accent	1
2.	The Inflection of Nouns	2
3.	First Declension of Nouns	4
4.	Second Declension of Nouns	5
5.	Adjectives of First and Second Declensions	6
6.	Simple Sentence : Subject and Predicate	8
7.	" Object-Accusative	9
8.	" Questions ; Conjunctions	10
9.	Third Declension of Nouns	12
10.	Adjectives of the Third Declension	15
11.	Comparison of Adjectives	17
12.	Fourth and Fifth Declensions of Nouns	18
13.	Pronouns : Personal and Demonstrative	18
14.	" Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite	20
15.	Numerals	21
16.	Verbs : 1. Moods and Tenses	23
17.	" 2. The Verb ESSE, <i>to be</i>	24
18.	" 3. The Four Conjugations	26
19.	Regular Verb : 1st Conjugation, <i>Active</i>	28
20.	" " " " <i>Passive</i>	30
21.	" " <i>Noun and Adjective Forms</i>	32
22.	" " 2d Conjugation	33
23.	" " 3d Conjugation	34
24.	" " 4th Conjugation	36
25.	Deponent Verbs	37
26.	Irregular and Defective Verbs	38
27.	Particles	41
28.	Formation of Words : <i>Verb Stems</i>	42
29.	" " <i>Nouns and Adjectives</i>	43
30.	" " <i>Derivatives and Compounds</i>	44
PARALLEL	EXERCISES	47-74

PART II.—CONSTRUCTIONS OF SYNTAX.

	PAGE
CASES:—	
<i>a. As Objects of Verbs.</i>	
1. Object Accusative; 2. Two Accusatives	75, 76
3. Dative; 4. Genitive; 5. Ablative	77-79
<i>b. As Modifying Adjectives.</i>	
6. Genitive; 7. Dative	80, 81
8. Ablative of Want; 9. Of Source; 10. Of Comparison; 11. Of Means and Supply; 12. Of Difference	82-85
<i>c. Miscellaneous.</i>	
13. Adverbial Accusative; 14. Acc. of Exclamation	86, 87
15. Dative of Possession; 16. Of Service; 17. Of Reference	88-90
18. Ablative Of Separation; 19. of Cause; 20. Of Means; 21. Of Manner and Quality; 22. Of Price; 23. Of Specification; 24. Locative	91-96
25. Predicate Genitive	97
26. Relations of Time and Space	97
MOODS AND TENSES	99-103
27. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive	99
28. Historical Infinitive	101
29. Sequence of Tenses	101
SUBORDINATE CONSTRUCTIONS	103-113
30. Conditional Clauses	103
31. Disguised Conditions	104
32. Comparative Particles	105
33. Temporal Clauses	106
34. Purpose and Result	108
35. Clause of Characteristic	110
36. Intermediate Dependent Clauses	111
37. Indirect Discourse	112
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES	114-119
38. Infinitive Clauses	114
39. Substantive Clauses of Purpose	115
40. Substantive Clauses of Result	117
41. Substantive Clauses with <i>Quod</i>	118
42. Indirect Questions	118

	PAGE
PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS	120-123
43. Participles : Predicate use	120
44. Ablative Absolute	121
45. Gerundive Constructions	122

PART III.—ON READING LATIN.

1. The Meaning of Words	124
2. The Latin Sentence	129
3. Reading at Sight	133

PART IV.—READING LESSONS.

I. Fables	139
II. Dialogues	142
III. Anecdotes	146
IV. The Kings of Rome	148
V. The War with Porsena. — LIVY	151
1. <i>Horatius holds the Bridge</i>	151
2. <i>The Deed of Mucius Scævola</i>	152
3. <i>The Escape of Clælia</i>	154
VI. Miscellaneous Selections	154
1. <i>A Haunted House.</i> — PLINY.	154
2. <i>A Sharper of Syracuse.</i> — CICERO.	155
3. <i>The Vale of Enna.</i> — Id.	156
4. <i>The Earth is made for Man.</i> — Id.	157
5. <i>The Heavens declare a Creator.</i> — Id.	159
6. <i>An Active Old Age.</i> — Id.	160
NOTES	161
VOCABULARY : 1. English and Latin	169
2. Latin and English	185
TABLE OF SYNONYMES, etc.	235
SYNOPSIS OF CONSTRUCTIONS	243

GRAMMATICAL INDEX.

A or **ab** with ablative of Agent,
31. *b*, 163. R. 27.

ABLATIVE with Comparatives, 17.
R., 83; as Object, 79; of Want,
82; of Source, 83; of Means,
&c., 85, 92; of Difference, 85;
of Separation, 91; of Cause, 92;
of Manner, &c., 93; of Price,
94; of Specification, 95; Loca-
tive, 96; Absolute, 32. 2. *b*, 121;
General Rules, 163. R. 26-35.

Accent, Rules of, 2.

ACCUSATIVE, as Case of Object, 9,
75; two accusatives, 76; Ad-
verbial, 86; of Exclamation, 87;
General Rules, 162. R. 21-25.

ADJECTIVES, Inflection, 4. *c*, 6, 7,
15, 16 (47, 53); Comparison, 17
(54); rule of Agreement, 6, 162.
R. 2; used as Nouns, 7. 2; De-
rivative Forms, 43.

Adverbs in **e**, 6; in **ter**, 16; Deri-
vation, 41.

Apposition, rule of, 7; 163. R. 1.

Cases, use of, 3; Syntax of, 75-99.

Characteristic, Clause of, 110.

Comparative Particles, 105.

Comparison of Adjectives, 17; of
Adverbs, 17. 2.

Compounds, formation of, 45; of
qui and **quia**, 21.

Conditional Clauses, 103; dis-
guised, 104; General Rule, 163.
R. 46.

CONJUGATIONS, 10, 26; First, 28-
32; Second, 33; Third, 34;
Fourth, 36; forms of, 27.

Conjunctions, 11. 2.

Correlatives, 21. 3.

cum, use of, 106.

DATIVE, as Indirect Object, 3. *c*,
77; of Nearness, 81; of Posses-
sion, 88; of Service, 89; of
Reference, 90; General Rules,
162. R. 14-20.

DECLENSIONS, 3; First, 4 (46);
Second, 5 (46); Third, 12-14
(51); Fourth and Fifth, 18 (56).

Defective Verbs, 40 (72).

Deponent Verbs, 37 (70). [124-128.

Derivative Forms, 43, 44; Words,

Distributive Numerals, 22. *c*.

Esse, Forms of, 8; Inflection, 24,
25; Compounds, 26; Predicate
after, 9. R.

Gender, 2; Rules of, 4. 3. *b*, 5. *a*,
14. *b*, 18. *a*, *c*.

GENITIVE, 3. 2. *b*; in **ius**, 7. 1; of
Pronouns, 19. *d*; as Object, 79;
with Adjectives, 80; of Value,
94; as Predicate, 97; General
Rules, 162. R. 8-13.

Gerund and Gerundive, 23. 3. *a*,
2. *d*; Constructions, 122; Gen-
eral Rule, 163. R. 41.

Impersonal Verbs, 40. 2; Use of
Passive, 31. *c*.

Indirect Discourse, 112, 113.

Indirect Questions, 118, 119.

INFINITIVE, with Subject-Accusa-
tive, 32. *d*, 114; Historical, 101;
Clauses, 114; General Rules,
163. R. 38-40

Intermediate Clauses, 111.
 Interrogative Particles, 10 (50).
 Intransitive Verbs, impersonal in Passive, 31. *c*.
 Irregular Verbs, 38-40 (72).
 Locative Forms, 4. *b*, 5. *f*, 18. *b* ;
 Uses, 96, 98 ; Rules, 163, 36, 37.
 Moods, 23. 1 ; Syntax of, 99-119.
 NOMINATIVE as Subject, 3. *a*, 8. 1 ;
 as Predicate, 9.
 Nouns, Inflection, 4, 5, 12-14, 18 ;
 Derivation, 43, 44.
 Numbers, 3. 2.
 Numerals, 21, 22.
 Object, Definition, 9.
 Object-Cases, 9. *a*, 75.
 Participles, 23. 2, 32. 2 ; of Depo-
 nents, 38 ; Constructions, 120.
 Particles, 41 ; Interrogative, 10.
 Passive Voice, Uses of, 31.
 Perfect, Formation of, 27. *c*.
 Personal Endings, 8.
 Possessives, 19. *e*, 162. R. 3.
possum and **prosum**, 26.
 Predicate, Definition, 8 ; Nomina-
 tive, 9 ; Genitive, 97.
 PRONOUN, in Verb-ending, 8. 2 ;
 Personal and Reflexive, 18 (57) ;
 Possessive, 19. *e* ; Demonstrative,
 19 (57) ; Relative, 20 (58).
 Pronunciation, 1, 2.
 Purpose, Subjunctive of, 108 ; Sub-
 stantive Clauses of, 115.
 Quantity, Rules of, 2.
 Questions, 10 (50) ; Indirect, 118.
 Reading at Sight, 133-138.
 Reflexive Pronoun, 19.
 Relative Pronouns, 20 ; Rule, 21 ;
 162. R. 4.
 Result, Clauses of, 108, 117.

Root, 3. 3. *a* ; 42. 2, 3 ; in Deriva-
 tives, 126-128.
 Sentence, the Latin, 129-133.
 Stem of Nouns, 3. 3. *b*, 12. *a*, 13.
 a, 14. *a* ; of Perfect, 27. *c* ; of
 Present in Verbs, 42. 2.
 Subject, Definition, 8 ; Accusa-
 tive, 32. *d* ; 162. R. 22.
 SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, 23. *b* ; Inde-
 pendent, 99 ; Tenses of, 101 ; in
 Conditions, 103, 104 ; with Com-
 parative Particles, 105 ; in Tem-
 poral Clauses, 106 ; of Purpose
 and Result, 108 ; of Charac-
 teristic, 110 ; in Intermediate
 Clauses, 111 ; in Substantive
 Clauses, 115, 117 ; General
 Rules, 163. R. 43-48.
 Substantive Clauses, 114-119 ; In-
 finitive, 114 ; of Purpose, 115 ;
 of Result, 117 ; with **quod**, 118 ;
 Indirect Questions, 118.
 Supine, 23. 3. *b* ; 163. R. 42.
 Synopsis of Verbs, 27. *e* ; of Con-
 structions, 243, 244.
 Temporal Clauses, 106.
 Tenses, 24 ; Sequence of, 101 ;
 Rule for, 163. R. 48.
 Time and Space, 97-99.
 Transitive Verbs, 9. 1 ; in Passive,
 31. *b*.
 Translation, Rules for, 129-131.
 VERBS, 8 ; Moods and Tenses, 23 ;
 Conjugations, 26-37 ; Deponent,
 37 ; Irregular, 38 ; Defective,
 40. 1 ; Impersonal, 40. 2 ; Deriva-
 tion, 42 ; Derivative Forms, 44 ;
 Compounds, 45 ; Syntax, 99-123.
 Vowel-Stems of Nouns (3d decl.),
 14 ; Adjectives, 15 ; Verbs, 42. 2^a.
 Words, Meaning of, as shown by
 Derivation, 124-128.

TO TEACHERS.

IN the paradigms given in this book, the case-endings, &c., have been marked by bold type. This is intended simply for the convenience of the learner, and has nothing to do with the etymological theory of stems. Thus the noun-stem of *pueris* is *puerð-*, and the verb-stem of *monuit* is *monē-*; while these words are printed so as to show the characteristic ending of the case, number, tense, or person. As the stem-theory is beset, to the beginner, by some special difficulties, it seems best that the forms themselves should be made very familiar before that is taken up; and, to be dealt with intelligently, it requires much more abundant illustration than could be given here. It may be illustrated orally by the teacher; but should be used, in any case, to explain difficulties, not to multiply them.

It will be observed that the lists of words on pp. 46-72 are not intended as complete vocabularies to the Lessons, but to furnish a sufficient number and variety of examples for practice. If well committed to memory, they will, it is believed, greatly help in mastering the earlier difficulties of the tongue.

The sentences given for practice are intended, in general, to offer no difficulty too great for the average learner, but with here and there an example to try the ingenuity of the brightest. If any should prove too hard, let them be omitted without hesitation: there are enough left, and to spare. At the same time, it is these very difficulties, much more than the facilities, that test and develop the learner's capacity, and help his real progress in the language. If the practice of reading at sight, with the teacher's direction and help, is followed from a very early stage, most of them will disappear of themselves. In such practice, the method indicated in pages 133-138 should be followed, subject, however, to the teacher's judgment and experience.

INTRODUCTION.

I. — PRONUNCIATION.

THERE is at present a strong tendency, among the best scholars, to pronounce Latin (as well as Greek) *phonetically*, giving to each letter of the alphabet the one sound which by the best authority most nearly represents that given it by Romans of the classic ages. These sounds are given in the first Lesson (p. 1). Observing the rules of accent, it is only necessary to give each letter its proper enunciation. This is by far the easiest and simplest way. It may be acquired by any intelligent person, with a good ear, in ten minutes; though practice will be required to make the reading fluent and agreeable.

Many persons, however, prefer to retain the English Method, so called; that is, the practice which has prevailed, with some variation, in England and among ourselves, for the last two or three centuries. In general, the following direction is sufficient. *Read a Latin sentence just as if the words were English, observing the rules of accent (p. 2), and bearing in mind that there are no silent letters.* This single precept would probably give a pronunciation as correct and about as uniform as can be had from any number of arbitrary rules. A few special points necessary to be observed are given in the grammar (§ 2, 2). To read Latin easily and well is an accomplishment which must be taught orally, and acquired by practice. The directions which follow, accordingly, are *not intended to be studied by the pupil*, but to serve as a guide in cases of doubt.

1. The chief difference between Latin (pronounced as in English) and English is that the former has no silent letters. *Every vowel makes a syllable*; except in the combinations *ae, oe, au, eu, ei, ui*, and *u* before a vowel, and these are separate when marked with the diæresis. Thus *dî-es, ma-re, pau-pe-ri-ê-i*.

2. The vowels always have their English sounds : —

a as in <i>mane</i> or <i>man</i> .	ae } as e.
e „ <i>be</i> or <i>bed</i> .	oe }
i „ <i>find</i> or <i>fin</i> .	au as <i>aw</i> in <i>awe</i> .
o „ <i>note</i> or <i>not</i> .	eu as <i>ew</i> in <i>hew</i> .
u „ <i>tune</i> or <i>tun</i> .	ei } as i.
y as i.	ui }

3. An unaccented *i* before another vowel is in almost all cases changed into its semivowel *y*. In the same cases as in English this *y* blends with the preceding consonant, making the sound of *sh*, as in *Maia* (Ma-ya), *Pompēius* (Pom-pé-yus), *Harpyia* (Harpf-ya), *socius* (so-shus), *vitium* (vish-yum), *Asia* (A-shya).

Except such words as *Fabius* (Fá-be-us), where the *y* is less distinct; so *Sextius*, *flectier*, where it is hardly distinguishable at all. Practice must be the guide in these cases.

4. Of the two sounds of the vowels above given the long sound (so called) ends a syllable, the short (“stopped”) sound is followed by a consonant: as *pater* (pay-ter), *mag-nus* (mag-nus), *de-dit* (de-dit), *reg-num* (reg-num). But *a* at the end of an unaccented syllable has an obscure sound as in the word *America: stella* (stelläh).

5. The combinations *quad* and *quart* are pronounced as in the English *quart*; *arr* is pronounced as in *Harry*; *es* at the end of all words, and *os* at the end of plural words have the long sound: *pes* (pease), *pares* (pay-reze), *nos* (noce); *post* (with its compounds) is pronounced like the same word in English.

6. The consonants are pronounced as in English. Thus, *c* is soft (*s*) before *e, i, y, ae, oe, eu*. Elsewhere it is hard (*k*), and it blends with *u* in nearly the same cases as in English, as *socius*, *consci-us* (pronounced *shus*); *ch* is always *k*, as in *charta*, *máchina*; *g* is soft (*j*) and hard in the same situations respectively as *c*.

7. *ß* is usually hard (sharp as in *saw*). It is sonant (soft, *z*) at the end of a word, after *e, ae, au, u, r*, as *pes*, *audes*, *mons*, *pars*, *trans* (even in composition). A few other words have also sonant *ß* (*z*), as *causa*, *rosa*.

8. *Ξ* has the sound of *z* at the beginning and of *ks* at the end of syllables: as, *Xerx-es*, *par*.

Since many of the sounds depend upon the open or close syllables, the following rules for the division of syllables may be observed, which are, however, the regular rules in English.

9. A vowel *not accented* and a penultimate vowel in any case *complete their syllables without* a following single consonant or mute with *l* or *r*, as *socius*, *ratio*. (This rule applies when the number of syllables is reduced by rule 3 above.)

10. A vowel *accented*, not penultimate, requires the following single consonant, or divides the combination of mute with *l* or *r*.

11. But a following *i* and *e* attract a consonant rather than an accented *ā*, *ē*, *ō*, preceding; as *me-di-ā-tor*, *hæ-re-o pá-tri-us*. — *u*, on the other hand, repels a following consonant, as *lú-ci-dus*, *dú-ri-us*.

12. A single consonant after any accented vowel except the penultimate is joined with that vowel. A mute and liquid in this position are separated. In other cases a single consonant or a mute and liquid belong to the following vowel.

13. Two consonants (except a mute and *l* or *r* as above) are divided: as, *mag-nus*, *cor-pus*.

14. Of three or more consonants, the last (or a mute with *l* or *r* as above) is given to the following syllable.

15. A compound word is divided between the parts if the first ends in a consonant, otherwise it follows the rules for single words: as, *prod-est*, *circum-esse*, *prae-sto*, *ego-met*, *pro-sum*.

2. — ELEMENTARY DEFINITIONS.

1. GRAMMAR treats of the different forms of words (ETYMOLOGY), and the mode of connecting them in speech (SYNTAX).

2. Words are either Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, or Interjections. These are called PARTS OF SPEECH.

3. Words like *Cæsar*, *consul*, *temple*, *virtue*, which are names of persons, things, or ideas, are called NOUNS.

Names of Persons and Places are called PROPER NOUNS; other names are COMMON (as *temple*) or ABSTRACT (as *virtue*).

4. Words like *brave*, *loud*, *strong*, which express qualities, are called ADJECTIVES.

5. Words which indicate any person or thing, without either naming or describing, are called PRONOUNS. These include PERSONAL, as *I, thou, we, he, they*; and ADJECTIVE, as *these, those* (Demonstrative), *my, your* (Possessive), *who, which* (Relative or Interrogative).

6. Words like *build, fight, stand, be, suffer*, which express actions or conditions, are called VERBS.

7. Words like *conquering, going, gone, beaten*, which describe by means of actions or conditions, are called PARTICIPLES.

8. Words like *nobly, well, very, here, now, to-day*, which define an action or quality in manner, place, time, or the like, are called ADVERBS.

9. Words like *for, with, by, against*, which show the relation between a noun and other words in the sentence, are called PREPOSITIONS.

10. Words like *and, or, if, but, then*, which connect words or sentences together, are called CONJUNCTIONS.

11. Some words as *where, while, till, nevertheless*, both define as adverbs and connect as conjunctions. These are called ADVERBIAL CONJUNCTIONS.

12. Words like *ah! ho! alas!* are mere exclamations, and are not strictly parts of speech, but are called INTERJECTIONS.

3. — THE ORDER OF WORDS.

THE order of words in Latin is comparatively free ; but the following rules may serve as a guide to the beginner.

1. In general, put the Subject first and the Verb last. But —
2. Any very emphatic word may be first or last.
3. An Adjective, except for emphasis, follows the noun ; but may precede the preposition with its noun : as, *multis in locis*.
4. The verb *inquam* (in quotations), and the conjunctions *autem, enim, quoque, vero*, always follow one or more words in their clause.
- 5 The order is very often determined by Emphasis or Contrast.
6. Observe carefully and imitate the form of the sentences given as examples. (For special rules of arrangement, see Gr. § 76)

PART FIRST.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS.

Lesson I.

Pronunciation and Accent.

NOTE. — Pronunciation should be taught orally by the teacher. The pronunciation of Latin is different in different countries. Among us, it usually follows one of two ways, which may be called the *Roman* (or *Phonetic*) and the *English*.

1. By the Roman (or Phonetic) method, *every letter has always the same sound*, as follows:—

VOWELS: <i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i> ;	<i>ā</i> as in <i>fast</i> .
<i>ē</i> as in <i>rein</i> ;	<i>ē</i> as in <i>met</i> .
<i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i> ;	<i>ī</i> as in <i>pin</i> or <i>piano</i> .
<i>ō</i> as in <i>holy</i> ;	<i>ō</i> as in <i>obey</i> .
<i>ū</i> as in <i>rude</i> (<i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>); <i>ũ</i> as in <i>full</i> .	

N.B. — Vowels marked thus, *ā, ē, ī, ō, ū*, are *long*; marked thus, *ă, ě, ĭ, ȝ, ŭ*, are *short*. A long syllable is reckoned equal to two short ones.

DIPHTHONGS: *ae* like *ay*; ¹*oe* like *oy*; *au* like *ow* in *now*.
ei as in *eight*; *eu* as *ew*; ²*ui* as *we* (*oo'ee*).

CONSONANTS: *c* and *g* are always hard, as in *come*, *get*.
s is always sharp, as in *sea*, *lips*.
j is like *y*; *v* like *w* (or *v*); *qu* as in English.
bs is like *ps*; *ch* like *k*; *ph* like *f*.

2. By the English method, the letters have the same sound as in English; but—

a. There are no silent letters, each word having as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs.

b. Final *a* is pronounced as in *America*; but in the monosyllables *ā, dā, quā, stā*, the *long* sound is sometimes given.

¹ Particle of Affirmation.

² As in *few*.

c. The diphthongs *ae*, *oe*, are pronounced like *ee*; *au* like *aw*; *eu* like *ew*; *ei* and *ui* like *i* in *kite*; *es* and (in plural words) *os* at the end of a word, as in *disease*, *morose*.

d. The consonants *c* and *g* are made soft (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, *oe*, *eu*; *ch* is always hard, as in *chasm*, *chemist*.

3. The following are general Rules of Quantity:—

a. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: as in *vīa*, *nīhil*.

b. A diphthong is long: as in *aedēs*, *foedus*.

c. A syllable formed by contraction is long: as, *nīl* (*nihil*).

d. A syllable in which a vowel is followed by two consonants, or a double consonant (*x*, *z*), is long: as in *rēctus*, *rēxit*.

e. A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by a mute with *l* or *r* is common; i. e. it may be long in verse: as in *alacris*.

4. The following are Rules of Accent:—

a. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first syllable.

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult, if that is long: as, *amī'cus*; if it is short or common, then on the Antepenult: as, *do'mīnus*, *a'lacris*.

DEFINITION: The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two.

Lesson 2.

The Inflection of Nouns.

1. Nouns are of three Genders, masculine (M.), feminine (F.), and neuter (N.).

a. Names of *male beings*, *rivers*, *winds*, and *mountains* are Masculine.

b. Names of *female beings*, *cities*, *countries*, and *plants*, are Feminine.

c. Neuter nouns include *indeclinable nouns*, *terms* or *phrases used as nouns*, and *words quoted merely for their form*.

d. Many names of Things—as *lapis* (M.), *a stone*, *mēnsa* (F.), *a table*—are masculine or feminine.

e. Nouns which may be of either gender according to sex are said to be of Common gender (C.): as, *dux*, *leader*; *bōs*, *ox* or *cow*.

2. Nouns are declined in two Numbers, *singular* and *plural*; and in six Cases, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, *ablative*.

a. The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence (see Lesson 6).

b. The Genitive may generally be translated by the English Possessive, or with the preposition *OF*.

c. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object: it may usually be translated with the preposition *TO* or *FOR*; but sometimes corresponds to the English Objective.

d. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object (see Lesson 7): it is used with most of the Latin Prepositions.

e. The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

f. The Ablative may usually be translated with the prepositions *FROM*, *BY*, *WITH*, *IN*, or *AT*.

g. All the cases, except the nominative and vocative, may be used as object-cases; and are sometimes called *OBLIQUE CASES*.

N. B.—The meanings and uses of the Cases, which are very numerous, will be shown in the “Constructions of Syntax” (pages 75 to 99).

3. Nouns are inflected in five Declensions, which are thus distinguished:—

Decl.	1.	Gen.	sing.	ae	Characteristic	æ
”	2.	”	”	i	”	ō
”	3.	”	”	is	”	i or a Consonant.
”	4.	”	”	ūs (uis)	”	ū
”	5.	”	”	ei	”	ē

a. A syllable having a signification of its own, from which that of a word is derived, is called a *ROOT*: thus from the root *STA*, *stand*, is derived the word *unstable* (that which cannot stand).

b. The body of a word, to which the terminations are attached, is called a *STEM*: thus in *milit-is*, *of a soldier*, the stem is *milit-*.

c. The last letter of the stem is called the *stem-letter* or *characteristic*; when a vowel, it is often blended with the termination: as, *currūs* for *curru-is*.

NOTE.—In the following Lessons, and in the Vocabularies, only long vowels are, in general, marked. Those not marked, whether or not long by position, are to be considered short or common.

Lesson 3.

First Declension of Nouns.

1. LEARN the inflection of **stella** (F.), giving the name and meaning of all the Cases, as follows :—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOMINATIVE.	stellā , <i>a (or the) star.</i>	stellae , <i>stars.</i>
GENITIVE.	stellae , <i>of a star.</i>	stellārum , <i>of stars.</i>
DATIVE.	stellae , <i>to a star.</i>	stellīs , <i>to stars.</i>
ACCUSATIVE.	stellam , <i>a star.</i>	stellās , <i>stars.</i>
VOCATIVE.	stellā , <i>thou star!</i>	stellae , <i>ye stars!</i>
ABLATIVE.	stellā , <i>with a star.</i>	stellīs , <i>with stars.</i>

2. In like manner decline the following :—

Athēnae (F. plur.), <i>Athens.</i>	patria (F.), <i>native-land.</i>
cōpiae (F. plur.), <i>forces.</i>	porta (F.), <i>gate.</i>
dea (F.), <i>goddess (a).</i>	Rōma (F.), <i>Rome (b).</i>
filia (F.), <i>daughter (a).</i>	silva (F.), <i>wood, forest.</i>
insula (F.), <i>island.</i>	terra (F.), <i>earth, land.</i>
nauta (M.), <i>sailor.</i>	via longa (F.), <i>a long way (c).</i>

a. The dative and ablative plural of **dea**, **filia**, and a few other words, end in **abus** (§ 36. e).*

b. The singular form **Rōmae** is used to mean *at Rome*; and the plural form **Athēnis** to mean *at Athens* (2. c). These forms are called LOCATIVE (see Rule 36, p. 163).

c. Adjectives (as **longa**) are declined like nouns.

3. Decline the following Greek nouns :—

	<i>comet</i> (M.).	<i>laurel</i> (F.).	<i>Aeneas</i> (M.).	<i>Anchises</i> (M.).
NOM.	comētēs (a)	daphnē	Aenēās	Anchīsēs
GEN.	comētae	daphnēs (ae)	Aenēae	Anchīsae
DAT.	comētae	daphnē (ae)	Aenēae	Anchīsae
ACC.	comētēn (am)	daphnēn	Aenēān (am)	Anchīsēn
VOC.	comētā	daphnē	Aenēā (ā)	Anchīsē (ā)
ABL.	comētā (ē)	daphnē (ā)	Aenēā	Anchīsē (ā)

a. These nouns are inflected regularly in the plural.

b. Most nouns of the first declension are Feminine.

See EXERCISE, page 46.

* The References are to Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.

Lesson 4.

Second Declension of Nouns.

LEARN the inflection of the following :—

SINGULAR.

	<i>slave</i> (M.).	<i>boy</i> (M.).	<i>book</i> (M.).	<i>man</i> (M.).	<i>war</i> (N.).
NOM.	servŭs	puēr	libēr	vīr	bellum
GEN.	servī	puerī	librī	virī	bellī
DAT.	servō	puerō	librō	virō	bellō
ACC.	servum	puerum	librum	virum	bellum
VOC.	servē	puer	liber	vir	bellum
ABL.	servō	puerō	librō	virō	bellō

PLURAL.

NOM.	servī	puerī	librī	virī	bellā
GEN.	servōrum	puerōrum	librōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
DAT.	servīs	puerīs	librīs	virīs	bellīs
ACC.	servōs	puerōs	librōs	virōs	bellā
VOC.	servī	puerī	librī	virī	bellā
ABL.	servīs	puerīs	librīs	virīs	bellīs

a. Nouns of this declension ending in **us**, **er**, and **ir**, are masculine ; those in **um** are neuter. (For exceptions, § 39. a, b).

b. All Latin nouns in **um** are declined like **bellum** (N.). In all neuter nouns, the nom. acc. and voc. plural end in **ā**.

c. Notice that nouns in **us** of this declension are the only Latin nouns which have the vocative different from the nominative.

d. Proper names in **ius**, with **filius**, *son*, lose **e** in the vocative (so **mī** from **meus**, *my*): as, **mī fili**, *my son*.

e. The voc. of **deus**, *god*, is **deus**; the plural nom. and voc. are **deī**, **dīi**, or **dī**; dat. and abl. **deīs**, **dīis**, or **dīs**.

f. The Locative form is like the genitive in the singular: as, **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*; **humī**, *on the ground*; **vesperī**, *at evening*. In the plural it is like the ablative: as, **Gabīis**, *at Gabii*.

g. A few Greek nouns end in **os**, **on**, instead of **us**, **um**. Names ending in **eus** (like **Orpheus**) are declined thus (7. a):—

NOM.	Orpheus	DAT.	Orpheī	VOC.	Orpheu
GEN.	Orpheī (or eos)	ACC.	Orphea	ABL.	Orpheō

h. Decline together **servus bonus**, *a good slave*; **puēr miser**, *unhappy boy*.

See EXERCISE, page 46.

Lesson 5.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

PART FIRST.

LEARN the inflection of the following:—

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING. NOM.	bonus	bonā	bonum, Good.
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
VOC.	bonē	bonā	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLUR. NOM.	bonī	bonae	bonā
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bonā
VOC.	bonī	bonae	bonā
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Miser, wretched.</i>			<i>Niger, black.</i>		
N., V.	miser	miserā	miserum	niger	nigrā	nigrum
GEN.	miserī	miserāe	miserī	nigrī	nigrāe	nigrī
DAT.	miserō	miserāe	miserō	nigrō	nigrāe	nigrō
ACC.	miserum	miseram	miserum	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	miserō	miserā	miserō	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

The plural of these adjectives is declined like that of **bonus**.

Observe that the declension of Adjectives of this form is precisely the same as that of the corresponding nouns, **servus**, **puer**, **liber** (M.); **stella** (F.), **bellum** (N.).

RULE.—*Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Decline together the following, making the Adjective agree with the Noun in gender, number, and case:—

vir bonus, a good man; **hasta valida**, a strong spear;
taurus niger, a black bull; **bellum longum**, a long war;
servus miser, a wretched slave; **filius meus**, my son (d. p. 5).

ADVERBS are formed from these adjectives by changing the case-ending to **ē**: as, **validē**, strongly; **miserē**, wretchedly.

PART SECOND.

1. Decline the singular of the following : —

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	utrius	utrius	utrius
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utri	utri	utri
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altēra	alterum
GEN.	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
ACC.	aliūm	aliām	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

The plural is declined regularly, like that of **bonus**.

The following are declined as above : —

alius (N. **aliud**), *other*. **nullus**, *none*. **ullus**, *any* (with negatives).
alter, *other* (of two). **sōlus**, *alone*. **ūnus**, *one*.
neuter, *-trius*, *neither*. **tōtus**, *whole*. **ūter**, *-trius*, *which* (of two).

Observe that these, except **alius**, differ from the regular declension only in the genitive and dative singular, which end in **ius** and **ī** for all the genders. In the plural, all are declined like **bonus**. From their signification they are rarely or never found in the vocative.

Duo, *two*, and **ambo**, *both*, are thus declined : —

NOM.	duo	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

2. Many adjectives in the singular, and most adjectives in the plural, may be used as Nouns: thus,

liber, *a free man*. **bona**, *good things* (property).
amicus, *a friend*. **Latīnī**, *the Latins*.
Rōmānus, *a Roman*. **Sabīnae**, *the Sabine women*.

RULE. — *A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same thing, agrees with it in case: as,*

Homērus poēta, *Homer the poet*; **Gabiōrum oppidī**, *of the town Gabii*.
See EXERCISE, page 77.

Lesson 6.

Simple Sentence: 1. Subject and Predicate.

DEFINITION. — *The SUBJECT of a sentence is the person or thing spoken of: the PREDICATE is that which is stated of the subject.*

1. Every complete sentence must contain a Subject and a Verb. The Subject is in the **NOMINATIVE CASE** (§ 173, 2): as,

equus currit, the horse runs.

rēgīna sedet, the queen sits.

NOTE. — In certain constructions, a verb is put in the Infinitive mood, in which case its subject becomes the Accusative (Less. 21).

2. In Latin, the subject may be a personal pronoun contained in the termination of the verb itself: as,

aro, I plough (am ploughing); sedēmus, we sit; curritis, you run.

NOTE. — This is true, in general, only when the verb is of *the first or second person*. With the third person, a definite subject must be expressed, unless implied in what goes before or follows.

3. Learn the following forms of the verb **esse**, *to be*: —

PRESENT.

sum, I am.

es, thou art (you are).

est, he (she, it) is.

sumus, we are.

estis, you are.

sunt, they are.

IMPERFECT.

eram, I was.

erās, thou wast (you were).

erat, he (she, it) was.

erāmus, we were.

erātis, you were.

erānt, they were.

Upon comparing these forms, the learner will notice that the terminations are alike for each person: thus,

SINGULAR 1. - **m**

2. - **s**

3. - **t**

PLURAL 1. - **mus**

2. - **tis**

3. - **nt**

RULE. — *The case of the Predicate, after esse, is the same with that of the Subject.*

Examples.

1. Pueri sumus, *we are boys.*
2. Stellae lūcidae erānt, *the stars were bright.*
3. Parāti nōn erāmus, *we were not ready.*
4. Viri boni sunt,¹ *they are good men.*
5. Rōma patria est nōstra, *Rome is our native city.*
6. Prisci Rōmāni erānt agricolae, *the early Romans were farmers.*

¹ This sentence may be translated *they* (some persons previously referred to, and implied in the termination) *are good men*; or, *the men are good*; also (considering **sunt** as a substantive verb), *there are good men*. In the first case, **boni** and **viri** are both predicate; in the second, **viri** is subject and **boni** predicate; in the third, both are in the subject.

See EXERCISE, page 48.

Lesson 7.

Simple Sentence : 2. Object Accusative.

DEFINITION. — *The OBJECT of a verb is that on which its action is exerted.*

RULE. — *The Accusative is the case of the DIRECT OBJECT of a transitive verb.*

1. The action of many verbs (called Transitive verbs) *passes over* upon an object, which must be expressed to complete the sense: as,

vocat filium, *he calls (his) son.*

vidēmus lūnam et stellās, *we see the moon and stars.*

a. With certain verbs, the genitive, dative, or ablative may be used as an object-case, where the corresponding English verbs require the objective (see p. 75).

b. Many verbs transitive in Latin are translated in English by a verb requiring a preposition (intransitive): as,

pecūniam postulo, *I ask for (demand) money.*

petit aprum, *he aims at the boar.*

2. Learn the following verb-forms of the First and Second conjugations : —

I.	
voco , <i>I call.</i>	vocāmus , <i>we call.</i>
vocās , <i>you call (thou callest).</i>	vocātis , <i>you call.</i>
vocat , <i>he (she, it) calls.</i>	vocānt , <i>they call.</i>
II.	
video , <i>I see.</i>	vidēmus , <i>we see.</i>
vidēs , <i>you see (thou seest).</i>	vidētis , <i>you see.</i>
videt , <i>he (she, it) sees.</i>	vidēnt , <i>they see.</i>

Upon comparing these forms, the learner will notice that the first has *ā* and the second *ē* before the terminations. These vowels are characteristic of two different conjugations called the *first* and *second*. In the first person singular, **voca-o** has been contracted into **voco**.

Like **voco** inflect the following : —

amo , ¹ <i>love.</i>	do , ¹ <i>give.</i>	laudo , ¹ <i>praise.</i>
aro , ¹ <i>plough.</i>	juvo , ¹ <i>help.</i>	pugno , ¹ <i>fight.</i>

Like **video** inflect the following : —

doceo , ² <i>teach.</i>	noceo , ² <i>injure.</i>	timeo , ² <i>fear.</i>
habeo , ² <i>have.</i>	sedeo , ² <i>sit.</i>	valeo , ² <i>be strong.</i>

See EXERCISE, page 49.

Lesson 8.

Simple Sentence : 3. Special Forms.

I. **QUESTIONS.** — Questions in Latin are introduced by Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs, or Particles, and are not distinguished by the order of the words, as in English.

a. A Question of *simple fact*, requiring the answer *yes* or *no*, is formed in Latin by adding the syllable *-ne* (*enclitic*) to the emphatic word : as,

erāsne **Caesaris** **amicus** ? *were you (in fact) Caesar's friend?*
tūne **erās** **Caesaris** **amicus** ? *were YOU a friend of Caesar?*

NOTE. — Sometimes the interrogative particle is omitted, when no sign of a question appears except in the punctuation.

b. A Question asking of some circumstance about the fact is formed by prefixing to the sentence an interrogative word. Such words are —

quis? *who?* *ubi?* *where?* *quando?* *when?* *quārē?* *why?*
quōmodo? *how?* *quālis?* *of what sort?* *quantus?* *how great?*

NOTE. — A Question of this form becomes an exclamation by omitting the mark of interrogation, or (in speech) by changing the inflection of the voice.

c. When the syllable *-ne* is added to a negative word, — as *nōne*, — an affirmative answer is expected. The particle *num* implies a negative answer: as,

nōne erās Caesaris amicus? *were you not Caesar's friend?*
num erās Caesaris inimicus? *were you an enemy of Caesar's?*
 (surely not): i.e. *you were not, were you?*

d. A double or alternative question is usually asked by *utrum* and *an* (see § 211. *d*): as, *utrum amicus Caesaris an inimicus erās*, *were you a friend or an enemy of Caesar?*

e. There is no word in Latin meaning simply *yes* or *no*. Hence, in answering a question, the verb is generally repeated: as,

valēsne? *are you well?* *valeo*, *yes* ("I am well").
aderāsne? *were you there?* *nōn aderam*, *no*.

2. CONJUNCTIONS. — Two simple sentences are often connected by Conjunctions, and make a single sentence.

a. The commonest Conjunctions are the following: —

<i>et</i> , <i>and</i> .	<i>aut</i> , <i>vel</i> , <i>or</i> .	<i>nec</i> (<i>neque</i>), <i>nor</i> = <i>and not</i> .
<i>sed</i> , <i>but</i> .	<i>-que</i> (<i>enclitic</i>), <i>and</i> .	<i>atque</i> (sometimes <i>ac</i> before a
<i>at</i> , <i>but yet</i> .	<i>quoque</i> , <i>also</i> .	consonant), <i>and besides</i> .

b. The following are often repeated in the different parts of the sentence, for the sake of distinction or emphasis: —

et or *-que*, *both* . . . *and*. *nec* or *neque*, *neither* . . . *nor*.
aut (*vel*), *either* . . . *or* (compare *utrum* . . . *an*, *whether* . . . *or*).

c. It is very common, in sentences thus made up of two or more members, to express in one part what must be understood in the rest (*ellipsis*): as,

C. *Gracchus amicus plēbis erat, Scīpiōnēs inimīci* [*plēbis erānt*], *Caius Gracchus was a friend of the commons, the Scipios [were their] enemies.*

See EXERCISE, page 50.

Lesson 9.

Third Declension of Nouns.

PART FIRST.

1. Decline the following:—

SING.	<i>help</i> (F.).	<i>king</i> (M.).	<i>guide</i> (C.).	<i>soldier</i> (M.).	<i>head</i> (N.)
N., V.	[ops]	rēx	dux	mīles	caput
GEN.	opis	rēgis	ducis	militis	capitis
DAT.	opī	rēgī	ducī	militī	capitī
ACC.	opem	rēgem	ducem	militem	caput
ABL.	ope	rēge	duce	milite	capite
PLUR.	<i>wealth.</i>				
N., V.	opēs	rēgēs	ducēs	militēs	capita
GEN.	opum	rēgum	ducum	militum	capitum
DAT.	opibus	rēgibus	ducibus	militibus	capitibus
ACC.	opēs	rēgēs	ducēs	militēs	capita
ABL.	opibus	rēgibus	ducibus	militibus	capitibus

2. In like manner decline:—

princeps, ipis (C.), *chief.*apex, icis (M.), *peak.*custōs, ōdis (M.), *guard.*cōr, cordis (N.), *heart.*aestās, ātis (F.), *summer.*poēma, atis (N.), *poem.*a. In these nouns, the Stem ends in a *mute consonant*.b. The nominative singular of masculine and feminine nouns is formed *by adding s to the stem*; sometimes (as in *mīles*) with a change of vowel.c. The letter *t* or *d* is lost before *s*; *c* or *g* is joined with *s* and becomes *x*.d. In Neuter nouns, *the accusative is always the same as the nominative*.e. In a few Greek nouns (as *lampas*), the genitive singular ends in *ōs*, and the accusative in *a*; and the accusative plural in *ās*.

Examples (for analysis).

1. Opēs¹ amplās philosophus habet.

2. Nōn est vērā voluptās sine virtūte.

3. Fāta nullae precēs commovēnt.

4. Nōn hospes ab hospite tūtus erat.

¹ The singular (meaning *help*) is not used in the Nominative.

PART SECOND.

I. Decline the following : —

SING.	<i>consul</i> (M.), <i>lion</i> (M.).	<i>maiden</i> (F.).	<i>name</i> (N.).	<i>body</i> (N.):
N., V.,	cōnsul	leo	virgo	nōmen corpus
GEN.	cōsulis	leōnis	virginis	nōminis corporis
DAT.	cōsulī	leōnī	virginī	nōminī corporī
ACC.	cōsulem	leōnem	virginem	nōmen corpus
ABL.	cōsule	leōne	virgine	nōmine corpore
PLUR.				
N., V.	cōsulēs	leōnēs	virginēs	nōmina corpora
GEN.	cōsulum	leōnum	virginum	nōminum corporum
DAT.	cōsulibus	leōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus corporibus
ACC.	cōsulēs	leōnēs	virginēs	nōmina corpora
ABL.	cōsulibus	leōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus corporibus

2. In like manner decline : —

homo, inis (M.), <i>man.</i>	ōrātio, ōnis (F.), <i>discourse.</i>
mulier, eris (F.), <i>woman.</i>	fulgur, uris (N.), <i>lightning.</i>
pulvis, eris (M.), <i>dust.</i>	fulmen, inis (N.), <i>thunderbolt.</i>
honor (ōs), ōris (M.), <i>honor.</i>	genus, eris (N.), <i>race, birth.</i>
pater, tris (M.), <i>father.</i>	iter, itineris (N.), <i>journey.</i>

a. In these nouns the Stem ends in a *liquid* (l, n, r).

b. The nominative is *the same as the stem* (sometimes changing the vowel) ; but **n** in masculine and feminine nouns is dropped in the nominative, and some *apparently* r-stems have **s** (§ 48. d).

c. Nouns in **o, ōnis** (as *leo*), are Masculine. Those in **io, iōnis**, are also masculine in many names of *visible objects*, as *scīpio, a staff*; but when *abstract* or *collective* — as *prōditio, treason*; *legio, legion* — they are Feminine.

d. These four, *imber, linter, ūter, venter*, with **glis, mās, mūs, rēn**, have the genitive plural in **tum** (see page 14).

Examples.

1. Hominēs vāna glōriæ imāgo tenet.
2. Nēmo vērē aestimat tempus.
3. Genus ex altō sanguine deōrum habēmus.
4. Mira fulminis opera sunt. Fulmina fātōrum ordinem nuntiānt ; olei et unguenti tēter post fulmen odor est.

PART THIRD.

1. Decline the following : —

SING.	<i>tower</i> (F.).	<i>cloud</i> (F.).	<i>sea</i> (N.).	<i>animal</i> (N.).	<i>city</i> (F.).
N., V.	turris	nūbēs	mare	animal	urbs
GEN.	turris	nūbis	maris	animālis	urbis
DAT.	turri	nūbī	marī	animālī	urbī
ACC.	turrem (im)	nūbem	mare	animal	urbem
ABL.	turre (i)	nūbe	marī	animālī	urbe
PLUR.					
N., V.	turrēs	nūbēs	maria	animālia	urbēs
GEN.	turrium	nūbium	marium	animālium	urbium
DAT.	turribus	nūbibus	maribus	animālibus	urbibus
ACC.	turrēs (is)	nūbēs (is)	maria	animālia	urbēs (is)
ABL.	turribus	nūbibus	maribus	animālibus	urbibus

2. In like manner decline : —

ovis, is (F.),	sheep.	calcar, āris (N.),	spur.
clādēs, is (F.),	disaster.	pars, partis (F.),	part.
imber, bris (M.),	rain-storm.	mūs, mūris (M.),	mouse.

a. Nouns of this class are called *vowel* or *i-stems*. They are,
 1. Those in *is, ēs* (mostly F.), with neuters in *e, al, ar*; 2. Monosyllables with *stem ending in two consonants*; 3. Most nouns in *ns* or *rs*, some in *ās*, with a few of one syllable. They are thus distinguished : —

1. All have the gen. plur. in *ium*; 2. Neuters have nom. and acc. plur. in *ia*;
 3. The acc. plur. (M. or F.) is often written *ī*; 4. A few in the acc. sing. end in *im*;
 5. The abl. sing. of all neuters, and of many M. or F., ends in *i*.

b. Masculine endings of this declension are *o, or, ōa, er, ēs*; feminine are *ās, ēa, ia, ya, x*; do, go, io, ūs; neuter are *a, e, i, y*; *c, t, l*; *men, ar, ur, ūs*.

3. Decline the following, of peculiar inflection : —

SING.	<i>ox, O.</i>	<i>old man, M.</i>	<i>flesh, F.</i>	<i>bone, N.</i>	<i>force, F.</i>	<i>swine, C.</i>
N., V	bōs	sēnex	caro	ōs	vis	sūs
GEN.	bōvis	senis	carnis	ossis	vīs (rare)	suis
DAT.	bovī	senī	carnī	ossi	—	sui
ACC.	bovem	senem	carnem	os	vim	suem
ABL.	bove	sene	carne	osse	vī	sue
PLUR.	cattle.				strength.	
N., A., V.	bovēs	senēs	carnēs	ossa	virēs	sues
GEN.	boum	senum	—	ossium	virium	suum
DAT., ABL.	bōbus	senibus	carnibus	ossibus	viribus	sūbus
	(bābus)					(suibus)

See EXERCISE, page 51.

Lesson 10.

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

PART FIRST.

LEARN the following inflections :—

SING.	M., F. <i>light</i> .	N.	M. <i>keen</i> .	F.	N.
N., V.	lēvis	lēve	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	levīs	levīs	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	levī	levī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	levem	leve	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	levī	levī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
PLUR.					
N., V.	levēs	levia	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	levium	levium	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	levibus	levibus	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	levēs (īs)	levia	ācrēs (īs)	ācrēs (īs)	ācria
ABL.	levibus	levibus	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Adjectives declined like *levīs* are called *adjectives of two terminations*.

Twelve adjectives, — *ācer*, *alācer*, *campester*, *celeber*, *equester*, *palūster*, *puter*, *salūber*, *silvester*, *terrester*, *volūcer*, with *celer*, *celeris*, *celere* — are declined like *levīs*, except that the masculine nominative and vocative singular end in *er*. They are called *adjectives of three terminations*.

PART SECOND.

I. Decline the following :—

SING.	M., F. <i>fierce</i> .	N.	M., F. <i>needy</i> .	N.
N., V.		atrōx		egēns
GEN.		atrōcis		egentis
DAT.		atrōcī		egenti
ACC.	atrōcem	atrōx	egentem	egēns
ABL.	atrōce or atrōcī		egente or egenti	
PLUR.				
N., V.	atrōcēs	atrōcia	egentēs	egentia
GEN.		atrōcium		egentium
DAT.		atrōcibus		egentibus
ACC.	atrōcēs (īs)	atrōcia	egentēs (īs)	egentia
ABL.		atrōcibus		egentibus

SING.	M., F. <i>rich</i> .	N.	M., F. <i>fertile</i> .	N.	M., F. <i>old</i> .	N.
N., V.	dīves		ūber		vetus	
GEN.	dīvītis		ūberis		veteris	
DAT.	dīvītī		ūberī		veterī	
ACC.	dīvitem	dīves	ūberem	ūber	veterem	vetus
ABL.	dīvite (ī)		ūbere (ī)		vetere (ī)	
PLUR.						
N., V.	dīvītēs	[dītia]	ūberēs	ūbera	veterēs	vetera
GEN.	dīvītum		ūberum		veterum	
DAT.	dīvītibus		ūberibus		veteribus	
ACC.	dīvītēs	[dītia]	ūberēs	ūbera	veterēs	vetera
ABL.	dīvītibus		ūberibus		veteribus	

a. These are called *adjectives of one termination*, having only one form in the nominative singular.

b. When used as nouns, they have the ablative singular in *e*; otherwise more commonly in *ī*.

c. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension with the ending *ter* or *iter*; as, *leviter*, *lightly*; *atrōciter*, *fiercely*.

2. Decline the following Comparatives:—

SING.	M., F. <i>better</i> .	N.	M., F. <i>more</i> .	N.
N., V.	melior	melius	—	plūs
GEN.	meliōris		—	plūris
DAT.	meliōrī		—	—
ACC.	meliōrem	melius	—	plūs
ABL.	meliōre or ī		—	plūre
PLUR.				
N., V.	meliōrēs	meliōra	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	meliōrum			plūrium
DAT.	meliōribus			plūribus
ACC.	meliōrēs	meliōra	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	meliōribus			plūribus

a. The singular **plūs** is used only as a neuter noun; the genitive (rarely ablative), as an expression of value.

b. The neut. sing. acc. of comparatives is used as an adverb: as, *levius*, *more lightly*; *atrōcius*, *more fiercely*.

Examples.

1. Viri fortēs pericula nōn timēt.
2. Nōn omnis via brevis est facilis.
3. Custōs es pauperis horti.

See EXERCISE, page 53.

Lesson II.

Comparison of Adjectives.

1. The Comparative is formed by adding **ior**, and the Superlative by adding **issimus**, to the stem of the positive: as,

altus, *high*; **altior**, *higher*; **altissimus**, *highest*.

levis, *light*; **levior**; **levissimus**.

atrōx, *fierce*; **atrōcior**; **atrōcissimus**.

egēns, *needy*; **egēntior**; **egēntissimus**.

N. B. If the stem ends in a vowel, this vowel is dropped before these terminations. For the inflection of comparatives, see p. 16.

a. Adjectives in **er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus**: as,

miser, **miserior**, **miserrimus**;

ācer, **ācrior**, **ācerrimus**;

b. The following form the superlative by adding **-limus**: **facilis**, **difficilis**, **similis**, **dissimilis**, **gracilis**, **humilis**: as,

similis, *like*; **similior**, **simillimus**.

c. The following are compared irregularly:—

bonus, **mellior**, **optimus**, *good, better, best*.

malus, **pēior** (**pēior**), **pessimus**, *bad, worse, worst*.

magnus, **māior** (**māior**), **maximus**, *great, greater, greatest*.

parvus, **minor**, **minimus**, *small, smaller, smallest*.

multum (N.), **plūs**, **plūrimus**, *much, more, most*.

multī, **plūrēs**, **plūrimī**, *many, more, most*.

For other irregular and defective forms, see Grammar, pp. 39, 40.

2. Adverbs formed from adjectives are compared as follows:—

altus, *high*: **altē**, **altius**, **altissimē**.

miser, *wretched*: **miserē**, **miserius**, **miserrimē**.

levis, *light*: **leviter**, **levius**, **levissimē**.

similis, *like*: **similiter**, **similius**, **simillimē**.

bonus, *good*: **benē**, **melius**, **optimē**.

malus, *bad*: **malē**, **pējus**, **pessimē**.

RULE.— *The comparative degree may be followed by the ablative*: as,

ēloquentior **Cicerōne**, *more eloquent than Cicero*.

See EXERCISE, page 54.

Lesson 12.

Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

1. Decline the following :—

SING.	<i>hand</i> (F.).	<i>lake</i> (M.).	<i>house</i> (F.)	<i>knee</i> (N.).	<i>day</i> (M.).
N., V.	manus	lacus	domus	genū	diēs
GEN.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	genū (ūs)	diēi
DAT.	manūi	lacui	domui	genū	diēi
ACC.	manum	lacum	domum	genū	diem
ABL.	manū	lacū	domō	genū	diē
PLUR.					
N., V.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	genua	diēs
GEN.	manuum	lacuum	domōrum	genuum	diērum
DAT.	manibus	lacubus	domibus	genibus	diēbus
ACC.	manūs	lacūs	domōs	genua	diēs
ABL.	manibus	lacubus	domibus	genibus	diēbus

a. The following nouns of the fourth declension have the dative and ablative plural in **-ubus**: *artus*, *partus*, *portus*, *tribus*, *veru*; with dissyllables in **-cus** (as *lacus*). Most in **us** are masculine.

b. **Domus**, *house*, has all the forms of the fourth declension; but the most usual are those given above. It has also the locative **domi** (sometimes **domui**), *at home*.

c. Most nouns of the Fifth Declension want the plural. The only ones complete in their inflection are **diēs**, *day*, and **rēs**, *thing*. All are feminine except **diēs**, (generally masc.), and **meridiēs** (M.).

See EXERCISE, page 56.

Lesson 13.

Pronouns: 1. Personal and Demonstrative.

PART FIRST.

The Personal Pronouns are thus declined :—

	FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.	
NOM.	ego , <i>I</i>	nōs , <i>we</i>	tū , <i>thou</i>	vōs , <i>ye or you</i>
GEN.	mei , <i>of me</i>	nōstrum , trī = <i>of us</i>	tui	vestrum , trī
DAT.	mihi , <i>to me</i>	nōbis , <i>to us</i>	tibi	vōbis
ACC.	mē , <i>me</i>	nōs , <i>us</i>	tē	vōs
VOC.	—	—	tū	vōs
ABL.	mē , <i>by me</i>	nōbis , <i>by us</i>	tē	vōbis

a. These are also used reflexively: as, **tē laudās**, *you praise yourself*.

b. The pronouns of the Third Person — *he, she, it, they* — are wanting in Latin; a demonstrative being sometimes used.

c. The Reflexive pronoun of the third person is the same in the singular and plural: viz.,

GEN.	sui,	of himself, herself, themselves.			
DAT.	sibi,	to	"	"	"
ACC.	sē or sēsē	"	"	"	"
ABL.	"	"	with	"	"

N. B. — The Reflexive pronoun should not be confounded with the intensive *ipse*; thus, *ipse sē laudat*, *he* [himself] *praises himself*.

d. The genitives *nōstrum*, *vēstrum*, are used *partitively*: as, *ūnus nōstrum*, *one of us*; while *meī*, *tui*, *sui*, *nōstri*, *vēstri*, are used *objectively*: as, *memor es nōstri*, *be mindful of us*.

e. For the genitive of *possession*, the adjectives *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *nōster*, *vēster*, are always used. They may stand in apposition with a genitive in any case: as,

nōstra omnium patria, *the country of us all*.

f. The preposition *cum*, *with*, is joined *enclitically* with the ablative of the personal pronouns: as,

vōbiscum loquitur, *he speaks with you*.

g. The personal or demonstrative pronouns are in general used only for the sake of distinction or emphasis: as,

tē voco, *I call you*; but —

quis mē vocat? ego tē voco: *who calls me? it is I*.

PART SECOND.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are thus declined: —

	<i>this.</i>			<i>that.</i>		
SING.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	hic	haec	hōc	is	ea	id
GEN.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	ejus	ejus	ejus
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	eī	eī	eī
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hōc	eum	eam	id
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	eō	eā	eō
PLUR:	<i>these.</i>			<i>those.</i>		
NOM.	hi	hae	haec	īi (eī)	eae	ea
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	his	his	his		eīs or īis	
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	his	his	his		eīs or īis	

	<i>that.</i>			<i>self.</i>		
SING.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
GEN.	illius	illius	illius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
VOC.	—	—	—	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Like *ille* decline *iste, ista, istud, that (yonder).*

The Plural of these words is regular, like that of *bonus*: as,
illī, illae, illa, those, &c.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>the same.</i>					
N.	<i>idem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>iidem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
G.	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D.	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eisdem or iisdem</i>		
A.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
A.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eisdem or iisdem</i>		

The demonstrative pronouns are often used in the oblique cases as personal pronouns of the third person (see p. 19, *δ*): as,
eum et frātreū ejus video, I see him and his brother.

See EXERCISE, page 57.

Lesson 14.

Pronouns: Relative, Interrogative, &c.

I. The Relative Pronoun is thus declined: —

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>who, which.</i>					
NOM.	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
GEN.	<i>cūjus</i>	<i>cūjus</i>	<i>cūjus</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
ACC.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
ABL.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

a. The affix *-cumque* (or *-cunque*), *-soever*, may be added to any relative word: as, *quicumque, whoever*; *ubicumque, wherever*; *quālisicumque, of whatever sort*.

b. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablative of *quī* as to the personal pronouns: as, *quōcum, quibuscum, with whom*.

c. The forms of the Relative are also Interrogative, as in English; but when used *substantively*, *quis* is used for *quī*, and *quid* for *quod*: as,

quis vocat? who calls? quid vidēs? what do you see? but — quī (or quis) homo vocat? quod templum vidēs?

2. COMPOUNDS of *quī* or *quis* are thus declined :—

a. In the compounds *quīdam*, *some one* ; *quicumque*, *whoever* ; *quīvis*, *quīlibet*, *quispiam*, *quisquam*, *any one* ; the former part is declined like *quī* or *quis*.

b. The compounds *aliquis*, *some* ; *siquis*, *if any* ; *nēquis*, *lest any* ; *ecquis*, *numquis*, *whether any*, are declined as follows :—

	SINGULAR.		<i>some.</i>	PLURAL.	
N.	<i>aliquis</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquid</i>	<i>aliqui</i>	<i>aliquae aliqua</i>
G.		<i>alicujus</i>		<i>aliquōrum</i>	<i>aliquārum aliquōrum</i>
D.		<i>alicui</i>			<i>aliquibus</i>
A.	<i>aliquem</i>	<i>aliquam</i>	<i>aliquid</i>	<i>aliquōs</i>	<i>aliquās aliqua</i>
A.	<i>aliquō</i>	<i>aliquā</i>	<i>aliquō</i>		<i>aliquibus</i>

c. Of *quisquis*, *whoever*, both parts are declined ; but the feminine and most plural forms are wanting.

3. CORRELATIVES. — Many *pairs of words*, demonstrative and relative, are used in corresponding parts of a sentence (see the lists in § 106) : as,

tantus . . . quantus, as *great . . . as*.

tālis . . . quālis, such . . . as.

tot . . . quot, as *many . . . as*.

RULE. — *A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER and NUMBER ; but its CASE depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.*

See EXERCISE, page 59.

Lesson 15.

Numerals.

The following list of Cardinal and Ordinal numbers should be gradually committed to memory :—

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN NUMERALS.
1. <i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one.</i>	<i>primus, a, um, first.</i>	I.
2. <i>duo, duæ, duo, two.</i>	<i>secundus (alter), second.</i>	II.
3. <i>trēs, tria, three, &c.</i>	<i>tertius, third, &c.</i>	III.
4. <i>quattuor</i>	<i>quartus</i>	IV.
5. <i>quinque</i>	<i>quintus</i>	V.
6. <i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>	VI.
7. <i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>	VII.
8. <i>octo</i>	<i>octāvus</i>	VIII.
9. <i>novem</i>	<i>nōnus</i>	IX.
10. <i>decem</i>	<i>decīmus</i>	X.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN NUMERALS.
11. undĕcim	ūndecimus	XI.
12. duodecim	duodecim	XII.
13. tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII.
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus	XIV.
15. quindecim	quintus decimus	XV.
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI.
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII.
18. duodēvigintī (octōdecim)	duodēvicēsimum	XVIII.
19. ūndēvigintī (novendecim)	undēvicēsimum	XIX.
20. vigintī	vicēsimum (vigēsimum)	XX.
30. trigintā	tricēsimum	XXX.
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimum	XL.
50. quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimum	L.
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimum	LX.
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimum	LXX.
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimum	LXXX.
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimum	XC.
100. centum	centēsimum	C.
200. ducentī, æ, a	ducentēsimum	QC.
300. trecentī	trecentēsimum	CCC.
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimum	CCEC.
500. quingentī	quingentēsimum	IC, or D.
600. sexcentī	sexcentēsimum	DC.
700. septingentī	septingentēsimum	DCC.
800. octingentī	octingentēsimum	DCCC.
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimum	DCCCC.
1000. mille	millēsimum	CIC, or M.

a. The inflection of **ūnus** and **duo** will be found in Lesson 5. That of **trēs** is like the plural of **levis**. The other Cardinal numbers, up to 100, are not declined; the hundreds, up to 1000, are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

b. **Mille**, a *thousand*, is not declined; **millia** (**mīlia**), *thousands*, is declined as a noun, like the plural of **mare**. Thus we say —

cum mille hominibus, *with a thousand men*; but —
cum duōbus millibus (**mīlibus**) **hominum**; or,
cum bis mille hominibus, *with two thousand men*.

c. The following are called **DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS**, and are inflected like the plural of **bonus** : —

1. singulī, <i>one by one</i> .	5. quīnī	9. novēnī
2. binī, <i>two-and-two</i> .	6. sēnī	10. dēnī
3. ternī, trinī, <i>by threes</i> .	7. septēnī	11. ūndēnī
4. quaternī, <i>by fours, &c.</i>	8. octōnī	12. duodēnī

For the use of Distributives, see § 95.

d. The following are **Numeral Adverbs** : —

1. semel , <i>once</i> .	3. ter	5. quinq̄uies (ēs)
2. bis , <i>twice</i> .	4. quater	6. sexies (ēs), etc.

Lesson 16.

Verbs: 1. Moods and Tenses.

1. There are four MOODS of the Latin verb: —

a. The INDICATIVE is used for *direct assertions or interrogations*: as, **vēnī, vidī, vici**, *I came, saw, conquered*.

b. The SUBJUNCTIVE is used chiefly in *commands, conditions, and dependent clauses*: as, **eāmus**, *let us go*; **sī adessēs**, *if you were here*; **adsum ut videam**, *I am here that I may see*.

N. B. — For the special uses of the Subjunctive, see “Constructions of Syntax,” pages 99–119.

c. The IMPERATIVE is used for *exhortation or command*: as, **adeste puerī**, *come, boys!* but its place is often supplied by the Subjunctive; in *prohibitions*, the perf. subj. is used with **nō**.

d. The INFINITIVE is used chiefly as the subject or object of another verb; as, **hūmānum est errāre**, *to err is human*; **volo vidēre**, *I wish to see*; **jubeo tē venīre**, *I bid you come*.

2. There are four PARTICIPLES: —

a. The PRESENT participle ends in **āns** or **ēns**: as, **vocāns**, *calling*; **legēns**, *reading*.

b. The FUTURE participle ends in **ūrus**, and is used to express purpose: as, **vēnit auditūrus**, *he came to hear*. As an adjective, it expresses what is likely or about to happen: as, **urbs est cāsūra**, *the city is about to fall*.

c. The PERFECT participle ends in **tus** or **sus**: as, **tectus**, *sheltered*. It is chiefly used with **esse** to form certain tenses in the passive: as, **vocātus est**, *he has been called, or was called*.

d. The GERUNDIVE ends in **ūsus**, and is used in the oblique cases in such phrases as —

pācis petendae causā, *for the sake of seeking peace*.

As an adjective, it expresses that which ought to be or must be done: as, **dēlēnda est Karthāgo**, *Carthage must be destroyed*.

3. The verb has also the following noun-forms: —

a. The GERUND is a verbal noun, in **dī, dō, dum**, corresponding to the English participial noun in **-ing**: as, **loquendī causā**, *for the sake of speaking*.

b. The SUPINES are verbal nouns ending in **um** and **ū**, usually translated by the English infinitive: as, **vēnit spectātum**, *he came to look*; **mirābile dictū**, *wonderful to tell*.

4. There are six TENSES; three of *incomplete* and three of *completed action*: viz.,

a. PRESENT: as, *adsum, here I am; diū aegrōto, I am* [and have long been] *sick*.

b. The IMPERFECT is used chiefly for *description*, or for *continued or repeated action*; as, *dicēbat, he said, was saying, or used to say; mōns impendēbat, a mountain overhung*.

c. FUTURE: as, *veniet, he will come*.

d. The PERFECT is either *definite* or *historical*: as, *vocāvit, he has called* (definite); or, *he called* (historical).

e. PLUPERFECT: as, *vēnerat, he had come*.

f. FUTURE PERFECT: as, *cum vēnero scribam, when I come* (shall have come), *I will write*.

NOTE.—The Future and Future Perfect are wanting in the Subjunctive; but are sometimes supplied by the future participle with the tenses of *esse*.

Lesson 17.

Verbs: 2. The verb **ESSE**, to be.

PRESENT. INFIN. PERF. FUT. PART.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum esse fui futūrus**

INDICATIVE. PRESENT. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SING. 1.	sum, I am.	sim, may I be! ¹ (<i>I am, may or</i>
2.	ēs, thou art (you are).	sīs, may you be. [<i>would be, &c.</i>]
3.	est, he (she, it) is.	sit, let him be (may he be).
PLUR. 1.	sumus, we are.	sīmus, let us be.
2.	estis, you are.	sītis, may ye be.
3.	sunt, they are.	sīnt, let them be (may they be).

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1.	eram, I was.	essem, I should be. ²
2.	erās, you were.	essēs, you would be.
3.	erat, he (she, it) was.	esset, he would be.
PLUR. 1.	erāmus, we were.	essēmus, we should be.
2.	erātis, you were.	essētis, you would be.
3.	erānt, they were.	essēnt, they would be.

1. **si sim, if I should be; cum sim, since I am.**
2. **si essem, if I were; cum essem, when (or since) I was.**
3. **si fuerim, if I should have been; cum fuerim, since I was.**
4. **si fuissem, if I had been; cum fuissem, when (or since) I had been.**

FUTURE.

SING. 1.	<i>ero, I shall be.</i>	[<i>futūrus sim</i>]
2.	<i>eris, thou wilt be (you will be).</i>	
3.	<i>erit, he will be.</i>	
PLUR. 1.	<i>erimus, we shall be.</i>	
2.	<i>eritis, you will be.</i>	
3.	<i>erunt, they will be.</i>	

PERFECT.

SING. 1.	<i>fuī, I was (have been).</i>	<i>fuērim, I may have</i>
2.	<i>fuisti, you were.</i>	<i>fuēris</i> [<i>been.</i> ³]
3.	<i>fuit, he was.</i>	<i>fuērit</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>fuimus, we were.</i>	<i>fuērimus</i>
2.	<i>fuistis, you were.</i>	<i>fuēritis</i>
3.	<i>fuērunt, they were.</i>	<i>fuērint</i>
	<i>or fuēre.</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	<i>fuēram, I had been</i>	<i>fuissē, I should have</i>
2.	<i>fuērās, you had been.</i>	<i>fuissēs</i> [<i>been.</i> ⁴]
3.	<i>fuērat, he had been.</i>	<i>fuisset</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>fuērāmus, we had been.</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
2.	<i>fuērātis, you had been.</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
3.	<i>fuērānt, they had been.</i>	<i>fuissēnt</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1.	<i>fuero, I shall have been.</i>
2.	<i>fuēris, you will have been.</i>
3.	<i>fuērit, he will have been.</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>fuērimus, we shall have been.</i>
2.	<i>fuēritis, you will have been.</i>
3.	<i>fuērint, they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	<i>ēs, be thou.</i>	<i>este, be ye.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>esto, thou shalt be.</i>	<i>estōte, ye shall be.</i>
	<i>esto, he shall be.</i>	<i>sunto, they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	<i>esse, to be.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>fuisse, to have been.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>fōre or futūrus esse, to be about to be.</i>
FUTURE PARTICIPLE.	<i>futūrus, a, um, about to be.</i>

The verb **esse** is joined with the adjective **potis**, *able*, making the compound **possum**, *I can (am able)*. It is also compounded with **prō** (**prōd**), *for*, in **prōsum**, *I benefit or help*, and with several other prepositions. These compounds are inflected as follows : —

PRESENT.			
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
possum , <i>I can.</i>	possim	prōsum , <i>I help.</i>	prōsim
potes , <i>you can.</i>	possis	prōdes	prōsis
potest , <i>he can.</i>	possit	prōdest	prōsit
possumus , <i>we can.</i>	possimus	prōsumus	prōsimus
potestis , <i>you can.</i>	possitis	prōdestis	prōsitis
possunt , <i>they can.</i>	possint	prōsunt	prōsint
IMPERFECT.			
poteram , <i>I could.</i>	possem	prōderam	prōdessem
FUTURE.			
potero , <i>I shall be able.</i>		prōdero , <i>I shall help.</i>	
PERFECT.			
potui , <i>I could.</i>	potuerim	prōfui , <i>I helped.</i>	prōfuerim
PLUPERFECT.			
potueram	potuissem	prōfueram	prōfuissem
FUTURE PERFECT.			
potuēro , <i>I shall have been able.</i>		prōfuēro , <i>I shall have helped.</i>	
IMPERATIVE.			
—		prōdes , prōdesto , &c.	
INFINITIVE.			
PR. posse	PERF. potuisse	PR. prōdesse	PERF. prōfuisse
PARTICIPLES.			
potēns (adj.), <i>powerful.</i>		prōfutūrus , <i>about to help.</i>	

Lesson 18.

Verbs : 3. The Four Conjugations.

1. VERBS are inflected in four regular Conjugations, distinguished by the vowel before **-re** in the Infinitive : viz., 1. **āre**; 2. **ēre**; 3. **ěre**; 4. **ire**.

2. The Principal Parts of the verb, from which all the others are found, are —

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. The PRESENT INDICATIVE ; | 3. The PERFECT INDICATIVE ; |
| 2. The PRESENT INFINITIVE ; | 4. The SUPINE. |

a. The regular forms of conjugation are these : —

1. **amo, amāre, amāvī, amātum, to love.**
2. **dēleo, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, to destroy.**
3. **carpo, carpēre, carpsī, carptum, to pluck.**
4. **audio, audire, audīvī, auditum, to hear.**

b. In the second conjugation, a more common form is the following (omitting ē in the perfect and supine) : —

moneo, monēre, monuī, monitum, to warn.

c. The Perfect stem is sometimes the same as the present ; but it is usually changed in one of the following ways : —

1. By lengthening the vowel : as, **lego, lēgī ; capio, cēpī.**
2. By reduplication : as, **cado, cecidī ; tondeo, totondī.**
3. By adding **s** : as, **carpo, carpsī ; dūco, dūxī ; tego, texī.**
4. By adding **u** : as, **domo, domuī ; aperio, aperuī.**
5. By adding **v** (u) preceded by the vowel of conjugation (see page 10) : as, **amo, amāvī ; audio, audīvī.** This is found in almost all verbs of the first and fourth conjugations ; but the **v** is often dropped and the syllable contracted : as, **amārat, audierat,** for **amāverat, audiverat ; amāsse, audisse** (or **audiisse**), for **amāvisse, audīvisse.**

d. The Supine stem is generally formed by adding **t** or **s** : as, **dīco, dictum ; cado, cāsum ; flecto, flexum** (see p. 12, c).

e. The SYNOPSIS of a verb consists of the *first person singular* of each tense, with infinitive and participles, given in regular order : as of **āmo, I love** —

<i>(Present Stem.)</i>		ACTIVE VOICE.	<i>(Perfect Stem.)</i>
INDIC.	amo, amābam, amābo		amāvī, amāveram, amāvero
SUBJ.	amem, amārem		amāverim, amāvissem
IMPER.	amā, amāto		—
INFIN.	amāre		amāvisse
		PASSIVE VOICE.	<i>(Supine Stem.)</i>
INDIC.	amor, amābar, amābor		amātus sum, — eram, — ero
SUBJ.	amer, amārer		amātus sim, — essem
IMPER.	amāre, amātor		—
INFIN.	amārī		amātus esse, amātum īrī
PARTICIPLES.			
ACT.	amāns		amātūrus
PASS.	amāndus		amātus

Lesson 19.

Regular Verb ; First Conjugation.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT. INFIN. PERFECT. SUPINE.

PRINCIPAL - PARTS : **amo amāre amāvī amātum**

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *I love, or am loving.* *May I love* (see p. 24).

SING. 1.	amo, I love.	amem
2.	amās, you love.	amēs
3.	amat, he (she, it) loves.	amet
PLUR. 1.	amāmus, we love.	amēmus
2.	amātis, you love.	amētis
3.	amānt, they love.	amēnt

IMPERFECT, *I loved (used to love).* *I should love.*

SING. 1.	amābam, I loved.	amārem
2.	amābās, you loved.	amārēs
3.	amābat, he loved.	amāret
PLUR. 1.	amābāmus, we loved.	amārēmus
2.	amābātis, you loved.	amārētis
3.	amābānt, they loved.	amārēnt

FUTURE, *I shall love.*

SING. 1.	amābo, I shall love,
2.	amābis, you will love.
3.	amābit, he will love.
PLUR. 1.	amābimus, we shall love.
2.	amābitis, you will love.
3.	amābunt, they will love.

PERFECT, *I loved (have loved.)**I may have loved.*

SING. 1.	amāvī, I loved.	amāverim
2.	amāvisti, you loved.	amāveris
3.	amāvit, he loved.	amāverit
PLUR. 1.	amāvimus, we loved.	amāverimus
2.	amāvistis, you loved.	amāveritis
3.	amāverunt (ēre), they loved.	amāverint

PLUPERFECT, *I had loved.**I should have loved.*

SING. 1.	amāveram, I had loved.	amāvissem
2.	amāverās, you had loved.	amāvissēs
3.	amāverat, he had loved.	amāvisset
PLUR. 1.	amāverāmus, we had loved.	amāvissēmus
2.	amāverātis, you had loved.	amāvissētis
3.	amāverānt, they had loved.	amāvissēnt

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have loved.*

- SING. 1. *amāvero, I shall have loved.*
 2. *amāveris, you will have loved.*
 3. *amāverit, he will have loved.*
 PLUR. 1. *amāverimus, we shall have loved.*
 2. *amāveritis, you will have loved.*
 3. *amāverint, they will have loved.*

SINGULAR.

IMPERATIVE.

PLURAL.

- PRES. 2. *amā, love thou.* *amāte, love ye.*
 FUT. 2. *amāto, thou shalt love.* *amātōte, ye shall love.*
 3. *amāto, he shall love.* *amānto, they shall love.*

Noun and Adjective Forms.

INFINITIVE.

- PRESENT. *amāre, to love.*
 PERFECT. *amāvisse, or amāsse, to have loved.*
 FUTURE. *amātūrus esse, to be about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

- PRESENT. *amāns, āntis, loving.*
 FUTURE. *amātūrus, a, um, about to love.*

GERUND.

- G. *amāndī, of [the act or state of] loving.*
 D. *amāndō, for loving (with adjectives).*
 Ac. *amāndum, loving (with ad and inter).*
 Ab. *amāndō, by loving.*

SUPINE.

- ACC. *amātum, to love (with verbs of motion).*

First Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- PRES. *amātūrus sum . . . sim, I am about to love.*
 IMPERF. *amātūrus eram . . . essem, I was about to love.*
 FUT. *amātūrus ero*
 PERF. *amātūrus fui . . . fuerim*
 PLUP. *amātūrus fueram . . . fuisset*

Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

- PRES. *amāndus sum . . . sim, I am to be loved.*
 IMPERF. *amāndus eram . . . essem, I was to be loved.*
 FUT. *amāndus ero*
 PERF. *amāndus fui . . . fuerim*
 PLUP. *amāndus fueram . . . fuisset*

See EXERCISE, page 60.

Lesson 20.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation.

2. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT. INFINITIVE. PERFECT.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **amor** **amārī** **amātus sum**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT, *I am loved.*

- SING. 1. **amor**, *I am loved.*
 2. **amāris (re)**, *you are loved.*
 3. **amātur**, *he is loved.*
- PLUR. 1. **amāmur**, *we are loved.*
 2. **amāmini**, *you are loved.*
 3. **amāntur**, *they are loved.*

IMPERFECT, *I was loved.*

- SING. 1. **amābar**, *I was loved.*
 2. **amābāris (re)**, *you were loved.*
 3. **amābātur**, *he was loved.*
- PLUR. 1. **amābāmur**, *we were loved.*
 2. **amābāmini**, *you were loved.*
 3. **amābāntur**, *they were loved.*

FUTURE, *I shall be loved.*

- SING. 1. **amābor**, *I shall be loved.*
 2. **amāberis (re)**, *thou wilt (you will) be loved.*
 3. **amābitur**, *he will be loved.*
- PLUR. 1. **amābimur**, *we shall be loved.*
 2. **amābimini**, *you will be loved.*
 3. **amābuntur**, *they will be loved.*

PERFECT, *I was (have been) loved.*

- SING. 1. **amātus sum**, *I was loved.*
 2. **amātus es**, *you were loved.*
 3. **amātus est**, *he was loved.*
- PLUR. 1. **amāti sumus**, *we were loved.*
 2. **amāti estis**, *you were loved.*
 3. **amāti sunt**, *they were loved.*

PLUPERFECT, *I had been loved.*

- SING. 1. **amātus eram**, *I had been loved.*
 2. **amātus erās**, *you had been loved.*
 3. **amātus erat**, *he had been loved.*
- PLUR. 1. **amāti erāmus**, *we had been loved.*
 2. **amāti erātis**, *you had been loved.*
 3. **amāti erānt**, *they had been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE. ~

May I be loved.

- amer**
amēris (re)
amētur
amēmur
amēmini
amēntur

I should be loved.

- amārer**
amārēris (re)
amārētur
amārēmur
amārēmini
amārēntur

- amātus sim**
amātus sis
amātus sit
amāti simus
amāti sitis
amāti sint

- amātus essem**
amātus essēs
amātus esset
amāti essemus
amāti essētis
amāti essent

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been loved.*

- SING. 1. amātus ero, *I shall have been loved.*
 2. amātus eris, *you will have been loved.*
 3. amātus erit, *he will have been loved.*
 PLUR. 1. amātī erimus, *we shall have been loved.*
 2. amātī eritis, *you will have been loved.*
 3. amātī erunt, *they will have been loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

- | | SINGULAR. | IMPERATIVE. | PLURAL. |
|----------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|
| PRES. 2. | amāre, <i>be thou loved.</i> | amāmini, <i>be ye loved.</i> | |
| FUT. 2. | amātor, <i>thou shalt be loved.</i> | — | |
| 3. | amātor, <i>he shall be loved.</i> | amāntor, <i>they shall be loved.</i> | |

Noun and Adjective Forms.

INFINITIVE.

- PRESENT. amārī, *to be loved.*
 PERFECT. amātus esse, *to have been loved.*
 FUTURE. amātum iri (amātus fore), *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

- PERFECT. amātus, *loved (beloved, or having been loved).*
 GERUNDIVE. amandus, a, um, *to-be-loved (lovely).*

SUPINE.

ABL. amātū, *to love or to be loved (with adjectives).*

a. In the tenses of *completed action* in the passive, — the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, — the participle (amātus, &c.) is treated as an adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the verb : as,

bellum parātum est, *war has been prepared.*

Galli domitī erānt, *the Gauls had been subdued.*

nāvēs dēpressae sunt, *the ships were sunk.*

b. In the passive construction, the object of the action becomes subject, while the subject (or agent), if a person, or treated as a person (personified), is put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *ab*, *BY* ; if not a person, in the ablative alone : as,

Caesar domuit Gallōs, *Cæsar subdued the Gauls ;*

Gallī ā Caesare domitī sunt, *the Gauls were subdued by Cæsar ;*

famēs necat hominēs, *hunger destroys men ;*

hominēs famē necantur, *men are destroyed by hunger.*

c. An Intransitive verb may be used *impersonally*, in the third person singular of the passive : as,

pugnātum est, *there was fighting ;* lit. *it [a battle] was fought.*

See EXERCISE, page 62.

Lesson 21.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation.

3. NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

1. The following are the uses of the Infinitive:—

a. The Infinitive is used with verbs where the sense would be incomplete without another action *of the same subject*: as,
cōsilia nōn possum mūtāre, *I cannot change [my] plans.*

Such verbs are *to be able, dare, begin, cease, wish*, and the like.

b. The Infinitive is used *like the nominative of a neuter noun*, in such sentences as—

scribere est ūtile, *to write (writing) is useful.*

c. It is used *like the accusative of a neuter noun*, in such sentences as—

hostēs parānt expugnāre oppidum, *the enemy prepare to storm the town.*

d. In either of these uses, it may take as subject the accusative of a noun or pronoun: as,

senem saltāre indecōrum est, *for an old man to dance is unbecoming.*

video tē esse claudum, *I see that you are lame.*

Here the object of **video**, i.e. the thing seen, is really the substantive clause **tē esse claudum**, not the simple accusative **tē**.

RULE.—*The infinitive with subject-accusative is used with verbs or other expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, or perceiving*: as,

rūmor erat Catilinam servōs armāsse, *there was a report that Catiline had armed the slaves* (see page 114. a).

2. The following are special participial uses:—

a. The participle is often used to describe some circumstance: as,
arāntem L. Quinctium lēgātī salūtāvērunt, *the envoys saluted Lucius Quinctius while ploughing (at the plough).*

b. A noun and participle are used together in the ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action (*ablative absolute*): as,

hostibus fugātis Caesar suōs revocāvit, *when the enemy were put to flight, Cæsar called back his men* (see p. 121).

For the Participles, Gerund, and Supine, see page 23. 2, 3.

See EXERCISE, page 63.

Lesson 22.

Regular Verb : Second Conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ACT. **moneo monēre monuī monitum**

PASS. **moneor monērī monitus sum**

INDIC. ACTIVE. SUBJ.	INDIC. PASSIVE. SUBJ.
PRESENT, <i>I warn.</i>	<i>I am warned.</i>
moneo, I warn.	moneor
monēs, you warn.	monēris (re)
monet, he warns.	monētur
monēmus	monēmur
monētis	monēmini
monēt	monēntur
monēam	monear
monēās	monēāris (re)
moneat	monēātur
monēāmus	monēāmur
monēātis	monēāmini
monēant	monēāntur

IMPERFECT, <i>I warned (was warning).</i>	<i>I was warned.</i>
monēbam	monēbar
monēbās	monēbāris (re)
monēbat	monēbātur
monēbāmus	monēbāmur
monēbātis	monēbāmini
monēbānt	monēbāntur
monērem	monērer
monērēs	monērēris (re)
monēret	monērētur
monērēmus	monērēmur
monērētis	monērēmini
monērēt	monērēntur

FUTURE, <i>I shall warn.</i>	<i>I shall be warned.</i>
monēbo	monēbor
monēbis	monēberis (re)
monēbit	monēbitur
monēbimus	monēbimur
monēbitis	monēbimini
monēbunt	monēbuntur

PERFECT, <i>I warned (have warned).</i>	<i>I was (have been) warned.</i>
monuī	monitus sum
monuisti	monitus es
monuit	monitus est
monuimus	moniti sumus
monuistis	moniti estis
monuerunt (re)	moniti sunt
monuerim	monitus sim
monueris	monitus sis
monuerit	monitus sit
monuerimus	moniti simus
monueritis	moniti sitis
monuerint	moniti sint

PLUPERFECT, <i>I had warned.</i>	<i>I had been warned.</i>
monueram	monitus eram
monuerās	monitus erās
monuerat	monitus erat
monuerāmus	moniti erāmus
monuerātis	moniti erātis
monuerānt	moniti erānt
monuissē	monitus essem
monuissēs	monitus essēs
monuisset	monitus esset
monuissēmus	moniti essēmus
monuissētis	moniti essētis
monuissēnt	moniti essēnt

FUT. PERF., <i>I shall have warned.</i>	<i>I shall have been warned.</i>
monuero	monitus ero
monueris	monitus eris
monuerit	monitus erit
monuerimus	moniti erimus
monueritis	moniti eritis
monuerint	moniti erunt

ACTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
PR. monē, <i>warn.</i>		monēte	monēre	monēmini	
F. monēto		monētōte	monētor	—	
monēto		monēnto	monētor	monēntor	
INFINITIVE.					
PR. monēre	Pf. monuisse	PR. monērī	Pf. monitus esse		
F. monitūrus esse		F. monitum irī (monitus fore)			
PARTICIPLES.					
PR. monēns	FUT. monitūrus	Pf. monitus	GER. monēndus		
G. monēndī, dō, dum		SUP. monitum	monitū		

See EXERCISE, page 65.

Lesson 23.

Regular Verb: Third Conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ACT. **tego tegere texī tectum**
PASS. **tegor tegi tectus sum**

INDIC. ACTIVE. SUBJ.	INDIC. PASSIVE. SUBJ.
PRES., <i>I cover.</i>	<i>I am covered (covering myself).</i>
tego, <i>I cover.</i>	tegor
tegis, <i>you cover.</i>	tegeris (re)
tegit, <i>he covers.</i>	tegitur
tegitur, <i>we cover.</i>	tegitur
tegitis, <i>you cover.</i>	tegitur
tegitur, <i>they cover.</i>	tegitur
IMP., <i>I covered (was covering).</i>	<i>I was covered (covering myself).</i>
tegēbam	tegerem
tegēbās	tegerēs
tegēbat	tegeret
tegēbāmus	tegerēmus
tegēbātis	tegerētis
tegēbant	tegerēnt
FUT., <i>I shall cover.</i>	<i>I shall be covered.</i>
tegam	tegar
tegēs	tegeris (re)
teget	tegetur
tegemus	tegemur
tegetis	tegemini
tegent	tegentur
PERF., <i>I covered (have covered).</i>	<i>I was (have been) covered.</i>
texī	texus sum
texistī	tectus es
texit	tectus est
teximus	tecti sumus
texistis	tecti estis
texērunt (re)	tecti sunt

INDIC. ACTIVE. SUBJ.	INDIC. PASSIVE. SUBJ.
PLUP., <i>I had covered.</i>	<i>I had been covered.</i>
texeram	tectus eram
texerās	tectus erās
texerat	tectus erat
texerāmus	tecti erāmus
texerātis	tecti erātis
texerānt	tecti erānt
	tectus essem
	tectus essēs
	tectus esset
	tecti essēmus
	tecti essētis
	tecti essēnt
FUT. PERF., <i>I shall have covered.</i>	<i>I shall have been covered.</i>
texero	tectus ero
texeris	tectus eris
texerit	tectus erit
texerimus	tecti erimus
texeritis	tecti eritis
texerint	tecti erunt
IMPERAT. Sing.	Plur.
Pr. 2. tege, cover	tegite
Fut. 2. tegito	tegitōte
3. tegito	tegunto
INFIN. Pr. tegere	Perf. texisse
Fut. tectūrus esse	Pres. tegī
PART. Pr. tegēns	Pf. tectus esse
GER. tegendī, -dō, -dum	Fut. tectum iri (tectus fore)
	Perf. tectus Ger. tegendus
	SUP. tectum, tectū

Verbs in io.

capio, capere, cēpī, captum; capior, capī, captus sum

Pr. capio, <i>I take.</i>	capiam	capior	capiar
capis	capīās	caperis (re)	capīāris (re)
capit	capiat	capitur	capīātur
capimus	capīāmus	capimur	capīāmur
capitis	capīātis	capimini	capīāmini
capiunt	capīānt	capiuntur	capīāntur
Imp. capiēbam	caperem	capiēbar	caperer
Fut. capiam, iēs, iet, &c.		capiar, iēris (re), &c.	
Perf. cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
Plup. cēperam	cēpissem	captus eram	captus essem
F. P. cēpero		captus ero	
IMPERAT. cape	capite	capere	capimini
capito	capitōte	capitor	—
capito	capiunto	capitor	capiuntor
IMP. Pr. capere	Pf. cēpisse	Pr. capī	captus esse
Fut. captūrus esse		captum iri	
Part. capiēns	captūrus	captus	capendus
Ger. capiendī, dō, dum	Sup. captum		captū

See EXERCISE, page 66.

Lesson 24.

Regular Verb: Fourth Conjugation.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ACT. audio audire audīvī audītum
 PASS. audior audīrī audītus sum

INDIC. ACTIVE. SUBJ.	INDIC. PASSIVE. SUBJ.
PRES., I hear.	I am heard.
audio, I hear.	audior
audīs, you hear.	audīris (re)
audit, he hears.	audītur
audīmus, we hear.	audīmur
audītis, you hear.	audīmini
audiunt, they hear.	audiuntur
IMPERF., I heard (was hearing).	I was heard.
audiēbam	audiēbar
audiēbās	audiēbāris (re)
audiēbat	audiēbātur
audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur
audiēbātis	audiēbāmini
audiēbānt	audiēbāntur
FUT., I shall hear.	I shall be heard.
audiam	audiar
audiēs	audiēris (re)
audiet	audiētur
audiēmus	audiēmur
audiētis	audiēmini
audiēnt	audiēntur
PERF., I heard (have heard).	I was (have been) heard.
audīvī	audītus sum
audīvisti	audītus es
audīvit	audītus est
audivimus	audītī sumus
audivistis	audītī estis
audiverunt (re)	audītī sunt
PLUP., I had heard.	I had been heard.
audiveram	audītus eram
audiverās	audītus erās
audiverat	audītus erat
audiverāmus	audītī erāmus
audiverātis	audītī erātis
audiverānt	audītī erānt
FUT. PERF., I shall have heard.	I shall have been heard.
audivero	audītus ero
audiveris	audītus eris
audiverit	audītus erit
audiverimus	audītī erimus
audiveritis	audītī eritis
audiverint	audītī erunt

ACTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.		PASSIVE.
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
PR. 2. <i>audi, hear.</i>		<i>audite</i>	<i>audire</i>	<i>audimini</i>
F. 2. <i>audito</i>		<i>audītōte</i>	<i>auditor</i>	—
3. <i>audito</i>		<i>audiunto</i>	<i>auditor</i>	<i>audiuntor</i>
INFINITIVE.				
PR. <i>audire</i>	PF. <i>audivisse</i>	PR. <i>audiri</i>	PF. <i>auditus esse</i>	
F. <i>auditūrus esse</i>		F. <i>auditum iri</i>	(<i>auditus fore</i>).	

PARTICIPLES.			
PR. audiēns	FUT. auditūrus	PF. auditus	GER. audiendus
GER. audiendī, dō, dum		SUP. auditum, auditū	

See EXERCISE, page 68.

Lesson 25.

Deponent Verbs.

1. DEPONENT Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice, with an active or reflexive signification: as,

1. *mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus, admire;*
2. *vereor, verērī, veritus, fear;*
3. *sequor, sequī, secūtus, follow;*
4. *potior, potirī, potītus, possess.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES. <i>mīror</i>	<i>vereor</i>	<i>sequor</i>	<i>potior</i>
IMP'T. <i>mīrābar</i>	<i>verēbar</i>	<i>sequēbar</i>	<i>potiēbar</i>
FUT. <i>mīrābor</i>	<i>verēbor</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>potiar</i>
PERF. <i>mīrātus sum</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>	<i>potītus sum</i>
PLUP. <i>mīrātus eram</i>	<i>veritus eram</i>	<i>secūtus eram</i>	<i>potītus eram</i>
F. P. <i>mīrātus ero</i>	<i>veritus ero</i>	<i>secūtus ero</i>	<i>potītus ero</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. <i>mīrer</i>	<i>verear</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>potiar</i>
IMP'T. <i>mīrārer</i>	<i>verērer</i>	<i>sequerer</i>	<i>potīrer</i>
PERF. <i>mīrātus sim</i>	<i>veritus sim</i>	<i>secūtus sim</i>	<i>potītus sim</i>
PLUP. <i>mīrātus essem</i>	<i>veritus essem</i>	<i>secūtus essem</i>	<i>potītus essem</i>
IMP. <i>mīrāre, ātor</i>	<i>verēre, ētor</i>	<i>sequere, itor</i>	<i>potīre, itor</i>
INFIN. <i>mīrārī</i>	<i>verērī</i>	<i>sequī</i>	<i>potirī</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. <i>mīrāns</i>	<i>verēns</i>	<i>sequēns</i>	<i>potiēns</i>
FUT. <i>mīrātūrus</i>	<i>veritūrus</i>	<i>secūtūrus</i>	<i>potītūrus</i>
PERF. <i>mīrātus</i>	<i>veritus</i>	<i>secūtus</i>	<i>potītus</i>
GER. <i>mīrāndus</i>	<i>verēndus</i>	<i>sequendus</i>	<i>potiendus</i>

- a. Deponents have the participles of both voices ; as,
sequēns, *following* ; **secūtūrus**, *about to follow* ;
secūtus, *having followed* ; **sequendus**, *to-be-followed*.
- b. The future infinitive is always to be given in the active form :
thus of **sequor** it is **secūtūrus esse**, not **secūtum iri**.
- c. The gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in
transitive verbs, or neuter verbs used impersonally : as,
potienda est tellūs, *the land must be won* ;
moriendum est omnibus, *all must die*.
- d. The perfect participle is sometimes also passive : as, **mercātus**, *bought* ; **adeptus**, *gained* (or, *having gained*).
- e. The following verbs have no perfect active, but form the perfect, &c., like deponents, and are called *semi-deponents* :
- audeo**,² **ausus**, *dare* ; **gaudeo**,² **gāvīsus**, *rejoice* ;
fīdo,³ **fīsus**, *trust* ; **soleo**,² **solitus**, *be accustomed*.

See EXERCISE, page 70.

Lesson 26.

Irregular and Defective Verbs.

PART FIRST.

Several verbs are irregular in *the tenses of the present stem*. The most common of these are —

1. **volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, *to wish*.
2. **nōlō** (**nōn volō**), **nōlle**, **nōluī**, *to be unwilling*.
3. **mālō** (**magis volō**), **mālle**, **māluī**, *to wish rather*.

These three are inflected as follows : —

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT.					
volō	velim	nōlō	nōlim	mālō	mālim
vis	vellis	nōnvis	nōlis	māvis	mālis
vult	velit	nōnvult	nōlit	māvult	mālit
volumus	velimus	nōlumus	nōlīmus	mālumus	mālīmus
vultis	velitis	nōnvultis	nōlītis	māvultis	mālītis
volunt	velint	nōlunt	nōlīnt	mālunt	mālīnt
IMPERFECT.					
volēbam	vellem	nōlēbam	nōllem	mālēbam	māllem
FUTURE.					
volam		nōlam		mālam	
PERFECT.					
voluī	-erim	nōluī	-erim	māluī	-erim
PLUPERFECT.					
volueram	-issem	nōlueram	-issem	mālueram	-issem
FUTURE PERFECT.					
voluero		nōluero		māluero	

IMPERATIVE.

nōlī, nōlīte, *do not.*
 nōlīto, nōlītōte, *thou shalt not, ye shall not.*
 nōlīto, nōlunto, *he shall not, they shall not.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. velle voluisse nōlle nōluisse malle māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. volēns, *willing.* nōlēns, *unwilling.*
 GERUND. volendī, volendō nōlendī

4. fero, ferre, tulī, lātum,* *to bear.*

	INDIC. ACTIVE.	SUBJ.	INDIC. PASSIVE.	SUBJ.
PRES.	fero fers fert ferimus fertis ferunt	feram ferās ferat ferāmus ferātis ferānt	feror feris fertur ferimur ferimini feruntur	ferar ferāris (re) ferātur ferāmur ferāmini ferāntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
FUTURE.	feram		ferar	
PERFECT.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
PLUPERF.	tuleram	tulisse	lātus eram	lātus essem
F. PERF.	tulero		lātus ero	
IMPER. PR.	fer	ferre	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	ferto ferto	fertōte ferunto	fertor fertor	feruntor
INFIN.	ferre, tulisse, lātūrus esse		ferri, lātus esse, lātum iri	
PART.	ferēns, lātūrus		lātus, ferendus	

5. eo, ire, ivī (iī), itum, *to go.*

IND., PRES. S.	eo, is, it	SUBJ.	eam, eās, eat
P.	imus, itis, eunt		eāmus, eātis, eānt
IMP.	ibam, ibās, ibat		irem, irēs, irēt
FUT.	ibo, ibis, ibit		
PERF.	ivī (iī)		iverim (ierim)
PLUP.	iveram (ieram)		ivissem (isse)
FUT. P.	ivero		
IMPERAT.	i, ito; ite, itōte, eunto		
INFIN. PRES.	ire	PERF.	ivisse (isse)
PART. PRES.	iēns, euntis	FUT.	itūrus

6. fio, fieri, factus:† used as passive of facio,³ *to make.*

PRES. S.	fio, fīs, fit	fiam, fiās, fiat
P.	fīmus, fītis, fiunt	fiāmus, fiātis, fiānt
IMP.	fīēbam	fierem
FUT.	fiam, fiēs, &c.	

* Regular of 3d Conjugation, omitting the connecting vowel in *fers*, &c.

† Regular of 4th Conjugation, except *fieri* and *fierem*.

PERF.	factus sum	factus sim
PLUP.	factus eram	factus essem
FUT. P.	factus ero	
IMPERAT.	fi, fite; fīto, fītōte, fiunto	
INFIN. PRES.	fieri	PERF. factus esse
PART. PERF.	factus	GER. faciendus

PART SECOND.

1. The following verbs are defective —

a. coepī, I began (for the present, use *incipio*; and with the passive infinitive, the form *coeptus sum*).

b. ōdī, I hate, with the participles *ōsus, ōsūrus*.

c. meminī, I remember; imperative *memento*.

The above are found only in the tenses of the Perfect.

d. āio, I say, āis, āit, āiunt, āiōbam, etc.

e. inquam, said I; inquit, said he (only in quotations). A few other forms are rarely used.

f. queo, I can; nequeo (or *nōn queo*), *I cannot*. These are inflected like *eo, ire*; but only a few of their forms are in use.

For other forms of defectives, see Gr. § 144.

2. The following are Impersonal : —

a. pluit, it rains; grandinat, it hails; ningit, it snows; fulgurat, it lightens.

b. miseret, it grieves; paenitet, it repents; piget, it disgusts; pudet, it shames; taedet, it wearies. These take an accusative of the person with a genitive or infinitive: as,

miseret mē tuī, I pity you;

paenitet mē hōc fēcisse, I repent of having done this.

c. libet, it pleases; licet, it is allowed, used with the dative of the person: as, *licet mihi loquī, I am permitted to speak*; also *oportet, there is need*: as, *oportet mē scribere, I must write*. These have the regular synopsis in the third person: as, *licet, licēbat, licēbit, licuit, &c.*; also *libitum* and *licitum est, &c.*

d. The third person passive of intransitive verbs (see Lesson 20): as, *pugnātur, there is fighting; mihi invidētur, I am envied*.

e. Several verbs are used impersonally in special meanings: as, *certum est, it is resolved; cōstat, it is clear; placet, vidētur, it seems good; decet, it is becoming; praestat, it is better; interest, rēfert, it concerns* (with genitive); *vacat, there is leisure*; with verbs of *happening* and the like.

See EXERCISE, page 72.

Lesson 27.

Particles.

1. The regular Adverbs of manner are formed from Adjectives, as follows : —

a. Adjectives of the first and second declensions (ending in **us** or **er**) form the adverb in **ē** : as,

callidus (*cunning*), **callidē**; **dexter** (*skilful*), **dextrē**.

b. Those of the third declension form the adverb in **-ter** : as, **fortis** (*brave*), **fortiter**; **prūdēns** (*prudent*), **prūdentē**.

c. Many case forms of adjectives are used as adverbs : as, **multum**, *much*; **falsō**, *falsely*; **rectā**, *straightway*.

For the comparison of adverbs, see Lesson 11; for their classification, see Gr. § 149.

2. The more common prepositions in the following lists should be committed to memory : —

a. The following Prepositions require the *accusative* : —

ad , <i>to</i> .	ergā , <i>towards</i> .	post , <i>after</i> .
adversus , or	extrā , <i>outside</i> .	praeter , <i>beyond</i> .
adversum , <i>towards</i> .	infrā , <i>below</i> .	prope , <i>near</i> .
ante , <i>before</i> .	inter , <i>among</i> .	propter , <i>on account of</i> .
apud , <i>at, near</i> .	intrā , <i>inside</i> .	secundum , <i>next to</i> .
circā , or	juxtā , <i>near</i> .	suprā , <i>above</i> .
circum , <i>around</i> .	ob , <i>on account of</i> .	trāns , <i>across</i> .
circiter , <i>about</i> .	penes , <i>in the power</i> .	ultrā , <i>on the farther side</i> .
cis , citrā , <i>this side</i> .	per , <i>through</i> .	
contrā , <i>against</i> .	pōne , <i>behind</i> .	versus , <i>towards</i> .

b. The following require the *ablative* : —

ā , ab , abs , <i>from, by</i> .	ē , ex , <i>out of</i> .
absque , <i>but for, without</i> .	prae , <i>in comparison with</i> .
cōram , <i>in presence of</i> .	prō , <i>in front of, for</i> .
cum , <i>with</i> .	sine , <i>without</i> .
dē , <i>from</i> .	tenu , <i>up to, or as far as</i> .

c. The following may take either case : —

in, *into, in*; **sub**, *under*; **subter**, *beneath*; **super**, *above*.

In and **sub**, when followed by the Accusative, signify *motion to*, when by the Ablative, *rest in*, a place.

Lesson 28.

Formation of Words: 1. Verb Stems.

1. The parts of a word which most commonly determine its meaning are: 1. the **ROOT**; 2. the significant ending found in the **STEM**; 3. the **INFLECTION**; 4. (in compounds) the **PREFIX**.

For example, the noun **flūmen**, *river*, is formed from the root **FLU**, *flow*, and the termination **men**, denoting *act, means, or result*. In the verb **conjēcerat**, *he had hurled*, we find: 1. the root **JAC**, *throw* (lengthened in the perfect to **jēc**); 2. the inflectional ending **erat** of the pluperfect third person (being the imperfect of **esse** added to the perfect stem); 3. the prefix **con**, signifying here the *force or vigor* of an action.

NOTE. — Many words (as most Particles) are primitive; and many others, though derivative, are simple, and do not apparently come under the rules of derivation.

2. The **ROOT** gives a word its *radical* meaning. Roots consist of a single syllable, and have a short vowel. Verb-stems are formed from roots in one of the following ways: —

1. By lengthening the vowel: as, **DIC**, **dīco**.
2. By reduplication: as, **GEN**, **gigno**; **STA**, **sisto**.
3. By inserting **m** or **n**: as, **CUB**, **-cumbo**; **FID**, **findo**.
4. By adding **d** or **n**: as, **TEN**, **tendo**; **TEM**, **temno**.
5. By doubling final **l** or **r**: as, **FAL**, **fallo**; **VER**, **verro**.
6. By adding **sc** (inceptive): as, **DIC**, **disco** (= **dicisco**).
7. By adding **t**: as, **MIT**, **mitto**; **PEC**, **pecto**.
8. By adding a vowel: as, **JAC**, **jacio**; **CAP**, **capio**.

N. B. — The added vowel, **a, e, i**, becomes the vowel of conjugation (characteristic or connecting vowel) in **amo** (= **amao**), **moneo**, **audio**.

For the formation of the Perfect and Supine stems, see Lesson 18.

3. Give the principal parts of the verbs which follow (consulting the Vocabulary), tracing the formation of the different stems from the root, and comparing the appended derivatives: —

N. B. — The small figures 1, 2, 3, 4, represent the conjugations.

1. **voco**¹ (VOC), *call*; **vōx**, *voice*.
2. **seco**¹ (SEC), *cut*; **segmentum**, *slice*.
3. **do**¹ (DA), *give*; **dōnum**, *gift*.
4. **augeo**² (AUG), *increase*; **augustus**, *august*.
5. **suādeo**² (SVAD), *make pleasant*; **suāvis**, *sweet*.
6. **cado**³ (CAD), *fall*; **cāsus**, *accident*.
7. **sisto**³ (STA), *stand* (compare **sto**, **stāre**).
8. **nosco**³ (GNO), *know*; **nōmen**, *name*.
9. **crē-do**³ (DHA), *trust* (*place confidence*).
10. **finio**⁴ (from **fini**-, stem of **finis**), *end*.
11. **sali**-⁴ (SAL), *leap*; **salto**, *dance*.
12. **eo** (1), *go* (compare **ven-eo**, *to be sold*); **iter**, *way*.

Lesson 29.

Formation of Words: 2. Nouns and Adjectives.

1. The following are some of the more important *significant endings*: —

1. **tor** (M.), **trix** (F.), DOER OR AGENT: **as**, **arātor**, *ploughman*; **victrix**, *she that conquers*.

This form is often used as an adjective: **as**, **victor exercitus**, *a victorious army*; **victricia arma**, *conquering arms*.

2. **men**, **mentum**, **bulum**, **culum** (N.), MEANS: **as**, **tegmen**, *covering*; **frumentum**, *corn* (**fruor**, *enjoy*).

3. **ulus** (**olus**, **ellus**), **a**, **um**, DIMINUTIVE: **as**, **rivulus**, *a brook*; **filiolus**, *a little son*; **capella**, *a she-goat*; **mūnusculum**, *a trifling gift*; **catellus**, *a young puppy* (**catulus**).

4. **āx**, **idus**, **bundus**, ACTIVE VERBAL: **as**, **pugnāx**, *apt to fight*; **lūcidus**, *shining*; **vagābundus**, *wandering*.

5. **ilis**, **bilis**, **ivus**, **mnus**, PASSIVE VERBAL: **as**, **fragilis**, *frail* (**frango**); **nōbilis**, *well-known* (**nōsco**); **captivus**, *prisoner* (of war); **alumnus** (**alo**), *foster-child*.

6. **ia**, **io**, **tās**, **tūdo** (F.), QUALITY: **as**, **prūdentia**, *prudence*; **cāritās**, *deariness*; **lātītūdo**, *breadth*.

7. **ālis**, **āris**, **ārius**, **ācius**, **ilis** (adj.), BELONGING TO: **militāris**, *of a soldier*; **hostilis**, *of the enemy*; **ovile**, *sheep-fold*; **būbile** (N.), *a stall for cattle*; **argentārius**, *silversmith or money-lender*.

8. **eus**, **āceus**, **ōsus**, **ilus**, denoting MATERIAL OR ABUNDANCE: **as**, **aureus**, *golden*; **aerumnōsus**, *full of grief*.

9. **ium, ētum**, OFFICE OR GROUP : as, **servitium**, *slavery*, or the *servile class*; **quercētum**, *oak-forest*.

10. **ātus, itus, ūtus**, PARTICIPIAL : as, **galeātus**, *helmeted*; **auritus**, *long-eared*; **cornūtus**, *having horns*.

11. **idēs, adēs**, (M.), as, **is, ēis** (F.), PATRONYMIC : as, **Priamidēs**, *son of Priam*; **Tyndaris**, *daughter of Tyndarus*.

12. **ānus, ēnsis**, PATRIAL : as, **Romānus**, *Roman*; **Athēniēnsis**, *Athenian*.

2. Give the meaning of the following derivatives, as shown by the termination : —

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. vēnātrix : vēnor , ¹ <i>hunt</i> . | 15. facilis : facio , ³ <i>to do</i> . |
| 2. nūbilus : nūbēs , <i>cloud</i> . | 16. edāx : edo , ⁸ <i>to eat</i> . |
| 3. mōbilis : moveo , ² <i>move</i> . | 17. migrātio : migro , ¹ <i>emigrate</i> . |
| 4. fertilitās : fero , <i>bear</i> . | 18. dūmētum : dūmus , <i>bramble</i> . |
| 5. flāmen : flo , ¹ <i>to blow</i> . | 19. arbustum : arbor , <i>tree</i> . |
| 6. puerulus : puer , <i>boy</i> . | 20. cantor : cano , ⁸ <i>sing</i> . |
| 7. misellus : miser , <i>wretched</i> . | 21. hospitium : hospes , <i>host</i> . |
| 8. moribundus : morior , ³ <i>to die</i> . | 22. civilis : civis , <i>citizen</i> . |
| 9. castrēnsis : castra , <i>camp</i> . | 23. urbānus : urbs , <i>city</i> . |
| 10. calidus : caleo , ² <i>to be hot</i> . | 24. nōdōsus : nōdus , <i>knot</i> . |
| 11. fortitūdo : fortis , <i>brave</i> . | 25. absentia : absēns , <i>absent</i> . |
| 12. levitās : levis , <i>light</i> . | 26. Crētēnsis : Crēta (<i>an island</i>). |
| 13. levāmen : levo , ¹ <i>lift</i> . | 27. Atridēs : Atreus . |
| 14. mercātor : mercor , ¹ <i>trade</i> . | 28. Nērēis : Nēreus (<i>a sea-god</i>). |

Lesson 30.

Formation of Words : 3. Derivatives and Compounds.

1. The following are the forms of the *derivative verbs* : —

1. **sco**³ (*inceptive or inchoative*), BEGINNING : as, **flōresco**, *to put forth flowers*; **caleasco**, *to grow warm*.

2. **esso**,³ **isso**³ (*intensive*), ATTEMPT : as, **capesso**, *lay hold on*; **facezzo**, *to do* (with energy); **petizzo**, *seek* (eagerly).

3. **to**,¹ **ito**¹ (*intensive, frequentative*), FORCE OR REPETITION : as, **jacto**,¹ *to hurl*; **dictito**,¹ *to keep on saying*.

4. **illo**¹ (*diminutive*), FEEBLENESS : as, **cantillo**¹, *to chirp or warble*.

5. **urio**⁴ (*desiderative*), DESIRE : as, **ēsurio**,⁴ *I am hungry* (from **edo**,² *eat*). [The last three are added to the Supine stem.]

6. Many verbs of the first conjugation are formed from nouns or adjectives : as, *milito*,¹ *to serve as a soldier* ; *caeco*,¹ *to make blind* ; *vigilo*,¹ *to keep watch* ; *dominor*,¹ *to be master, or tyrant*.

2. COMPOUNDS are formed in two ways : —

a. By joining two or more words in one, each retaining its own meaning : as, *armiger*, *armor-bearer* ; *maledico*,³ *to speak ill* ; *magnanimus*, *great-hearted* ; *tubicen* (*tuba, cano*), *trumpeter* ; *multiformis*, *of many shapes* ; *suōvetaurilia* (*sūs, ovis, taurus*), a ceremony including the sacrifice of a *hog*, a *sheep*, and a *bull*.

b. By prefixing a Particle : most frequently a Preposition to a Verb. The meaning of the most common prefixes is seen in the following : —

1. *ā, ab*, AWAY : as, *aufero* (*abfero*), *take away*.
2. *ad*, TO, TOWARDS : as, *affero* (*adfero*), *bring*.
3. *ante*, BEFORE : as, *antefero*, *prefer* ; *antecello*,³ *excel*.
4. *circum*, AROUND : as, *circummūnio*,⁴ *fortify completely*.
5. *con*, TOGETHER OR FORCIBLY : as, *cōfero*, *bring together* ; *colloco*,¹ *to set firm*.
6. *dē*, DOWN, UTTERLY : as, *dēspicio*,³ *despise (look down on)* ; *dēstruo*,³ *destroy*.
7. *dī* or *dis*, ASUNDER : as, *dīdūco*,³ *draw apart* ; *disjungo*,³ *unbind*.
8. *ē, ex*, OUT : as, *effero* (*ecfero*), *carry forth, uplift*.
9. *in* (with nouns or adjectives), NOT : as, *īnfinitus*, *boundless*.
10. *in* (with verbs), IN, ON, AGAINST : as, *īfero*, *bear against*.
11. *inter*, BETWEEN, TO PIECES : as, *interrumpo*,³ *interrupt*.
12. *ne, nec*, NOT : as, *nequeo*, *cannot* ; *necopinātus*, *unlooked for*.
13. *ob*, TOWARDS, TO MEET : as, *offero*, *offer* ; *obvenio*,⁴ *meet*.
14. *per, prae*, VERY : as, *permagnus*, *very great* ; *praeclārus*, *glorious*.
15. *por*, FORWARD : as, *porrectus*, *outstretched*.
16. *re, red*, BACK, AGAIN : as, *refero*, *report* ; *redeo*, *return*.
17. *sē*, APART : as, *sēparo*,¹ *separate* ; *sēcerno*,³ *put aside*.
18. *sub*, UNDER, in LOW DEGREE : as, *subdolus*, *crafty* ; *substruo*,³ *build beneath*.
19. *super*, UPON, OVER AND ABOVE : as, *superfluo*,³ *overflow* ; *superstes*, *a survivor*.

See EXAMPLES, pp. 126–128.

PARALLEL EXERCISES

ON THE FOREGOING LESSONS.

LESSON 3.

First Declension of Nouns.

Vocabulary.

<i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> , <i>from</i> (with abl.).	<i>in</i> , <i>in</i> (with abl.).
<i>ad</i> , <i>to</i> (with acc.).	<i>in</i> , <i>into</i> (with acc.).
<i>cum</i> , <i>with</i> (with abl.).	<i>inter</i> , <i>between</i> , <i>among</i> (acc.).
<i>ē</i> or <i>ex</i> , <i>out of</i> (with abl.).	<i>per</i> , <i>through</i> (with acc.).
<i>āla</i> , <i>ae</i> (F.), <i>wing</i> .	<i>nympha</i> , <i>ae</i> (F.), <i>nymph</i> .
<i>aquila</i> , <i>ae</i> (F.), <i>eagle</i> .	<i>umbra</i> , <i>ae</i> (F.), <i>shadow</i> .
<i>et</i> or <i>-que</i> , <i>and</i> ; <i>sed</i> , <i>but</i> ; <i>nōn</i> , <i>not</i> .	

Translate into English.

1. Via per silvās. — 2. Ex Italiā in Galliam. — 3. Gallia est (*is*) inter Germāniam et Hispāniam. — 4. Ex Italiā per Galliam in Hispāniam. — 5. Ad portās Rōmae. — 6. Insula inter Italiam et Hispāniam. — 7. Alis aquilārū. — 8. Nauta cum filiābus. — 9. Longa via inter Rōmam et Athēnās. — 10. Italiam, terram deārum. — 11. Nōn Rōmae, sed Athēnis. — 12. Comētēn inter stellās video (*I see*). — 13. Ad rēginae filiās.

Write in Latin.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. The queen's ¹ daughter. | 4. Between Rome and Athens. |
| 2. The wings of eagles. | 5. To the gates of Rome. |
| 3. A way through the wood. | 6. From the island to the land. |

¹ Genitive: observe that "queen's" is the same as "of the queen."

LESSON 4.

Second Declension of Nouns.

Vocabulary.

<i>argentum</i> , <i>i</i> (N.), <i>silver</i> .	<i>mūrus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>wall</i> .
<i>ager</i> , <i>grī</i> (M.), <i>field</i> .	<i>oculus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>eye</i> .
<i>folium</i> , <i>i</i> (N.), <i>leaf</i> .	<i>somnus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>sleep</i> .
<i>hortus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>garden</i> .	<i>taurus</i> , <i>i</i> (M.), <i>bull</i> .
<i>multum</i> , <i>i</i> (N.), <i>much</i> .	<i>templum</i> , <i>i</i> (N.), <i>temple</i> .

Translate into English.

1. Servī filius. — 2. Magistrōrum librī. — 3. Taurī oculus. —
 4. Cum Marcō puerō. — 5. Marce fili. — 6. Corinthī mūrōs.
 7. In somnō somnia. — 8. In librīs magistrī. — 9. Bella Rō-
 mānōrum cum Gallis. — 10. Magister cum pueris. — 11. Nauta
 cum filiis. — 12. Multum argenti.¹ — 13. Bellī pericula.

14. Via ad oppidum. — 15. Ager inter silvam et oppidum.
 — 16. Sicilia est insula inter Italiam et Africam. — 17. In tem-
 plis deōrum. — 18. Umbrae foliōrum in silvis. — 19. Pueri in
 magistrī hortō. — 20. Menelāus, Atrei filius.

Write in Latin.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. In the gardens. | 7. Into the town. |
| 2. Into the master's fields. | 8. To the walls of the town. |
| 3. The queen's slaves. | 9. Among the leaves of the |
| 4. The walls of Rome. | forest. |
| 5. In the wars of the Romans. ² | 10. In the temples of the |
| 6. Between land and water. | gods. |

¹ Words of Quantity, as *much, more, less*, are in Latin used with the genitive: thus, *much silver* is *much* (a great deal) *of silver*. — ² *Rōmānus*.

LESSON 5.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Vocabulary.

collum , i (N.), <i>neck</i> .	angustus , a, um, <i>narrow</i> .
pōmum , i (N.), <i>apple, fruit</i> .	fūnestus , a, um, <i>fatal</i> .
socius , i (M.), <i>companion</i> .	mātūrus , a, um, <i>ripe</i> .
tenebrae , ārum (F.), <i>gloom</i> .	sanctus , a, um, <i>holy</i> .
noster , tra, trum, <i>our</i> .	pulcer , ¹ cra, crum, <i>beautiful</i> .

Translate into English.

1. In magnō fūnestōque bellō. — 2. Templā sanctārum
 deārum. — 3. Cum sociis et filiō et magnīs dīs.² — 4. Via
 angusta inter silvam et oppidum. — 5. In viā angustā.

6. Niger equus in agrō. — 7. Multa folia in silvis. — 8.
 Sancte deus! — 9. Rōma patria nōstra. — 10. Tenebrae sub
 foliis silvārum. — 11. Neutrius filiōrum. — 12. Unī sōlique
 amicō meō. — 13. Cum duōbus filiis duābusque filiābus.

¹ Later and commoner form, *pulcher*.

² *deus*: see page 5. *e*.

Write in Latin.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. My friend (voc.). | 5. Shadows of the dense forests. |
| 2. The long neck of the swan. | 6. A long way through fields and forests. |
| 3. Many gifts in the temples of the gods. | 7. Italy our native-land. |
| 4. Ripe apples in the master's garden. | 8. Seven ¹ black bulls (acc.). |

¹ septem.

LESSON 6.

Simple Sentence: 1. Subject and Predicate.

Vocabulary.

ancōra, ae (F.), *anchor*.cōstāntia, ae (F.), *firmness*.dominus, i (M.), *master, lord*.sōlātium, i (N.), *comfort*.acūtus, a, um, *keen*.apertus, a, um, *open*.arduus, a, um, *difficult*.curvus, a, um, *crooked*.fidus, a, um, *faithful*.serēnus, a, um, *clear, still*.

Translate into English.

1. Filia rēginae est pulcra. — 2. Ancorae curvae sunt. —
 — 3. Portae sunt apertae. 4. In silvis multae erant ferae.
 — 5. Oculi nautarum sunt acuti. — 6. Agricola erat in agrō.
 7. Lūcida est lūna in caelō serēnō. — 8. Pueri sumus, nōn viri. — 9. Magna sunt pericula belli. — 10. Nihil viris bonis arduum (*too hard*) est. — 11. Miseri semper sumus sine beneficiis deōrum. — 12. Maximis cūris remedium est patientia. —
 13. In mediō templō sedet rēgina.

Fable.

In prātō erānt trēs bovēs in maximā concordiā. Sed dissidiō
meadow three oxen greatest harmony discord
 inter eōs ortō, singuli ā feris petiti et laniati sunt.
them arising one-by-one wild-beast attacked torn

Write in Latin.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. The son of Aeneas was Ascanius. | 5. Great men [are] the gift of the gods. |
| 2. Anger is a great fault. | 6. The moon and stars were bright in the clear sky. |
| 3. Athens was the native-city of many great men. | 7. You are men, not boys. |
| 4. Few slaves were faithful to [their] masters (dat.). | 8. The forces of the Romans were great. |

LESSON 7.

Simple Sentence: 2. Object-Accusative.

Vocabulary.

fugo,¹ drive.fulgeo,² shine.

garrulus, a, um, chattering.

impleo,³ fill.intro,¹ enter.

libum, i (N.), cake.

liquidus, a, um, transparent.

magis, more, (adv.).

mico,¹ glitter.

minus, less.

moveo,² move.

placidus, a, um, calm.

tener, era, erum, tender.

turbo,¹ disturb.

unda, ae (F.), wave.

ventus, i (M.), wind.

Translate into English.

1. Lūnam et stellās vidēmus in caelō serēnō. 2. Ignāvus nauta ventōs et undās culpat. — 3. Bona cōsilia dās filiō. — 4. Bonōs laudāmus, improbōs vituperāmus. — 5. Aquam liquidam agnus nōn turbat. — 6. Rōmānī castra movent ē campō.

7. Saevus lupus agnam teneram lacerat. — 8. Servi pōcula magna vinō implent. — 9. Fessī nautae fretum angustum intrant. — 10. Puellae garrulae multa inter sē¹ narrant.

11. Poētae antīquī sapientiam docent. — 12. Agricola lupōs ex agris suis fugat. — 13. Lūdī magister puerōs vocat. — 14. Unus ē decemvirīs, Appius Claudius, puellam plēbēiam raptat. — 15. Silvam magnam, ātram tenebrīs, intrāmus.

Fable.

Corvus caseum forte reperit, et gaudium suum altā vōce
crow cheese by-chance finds joy his loud voice
 significat. Sonō allectī, multī corvī famēlicī advolānt, et cibō
declares sound attracted famished fly-up food
 opīmō prīmum spoliānt.
rich the-first rob

Write in Latin.

1. Slaves fear a cruel master.
2. The black² darkness of the forest terrifies⁵ small boys.
3. We give cakes to children.³
4. The queen is walking in [the] garden with⁴ [her] two daughters.

¹ among themselves (to one another). ² ater. ³ puer. ⁴ cum.

⁵ Plural.

5. We owe a great [sum of] money to the jeweller.
6. Few [men] love glory more than life.¹
7. We often see wolves in the forest.
8. We praise the good less than we blame the bad.
9. The Tyrians² praise the beautiful queen.
10. We have riches [as] a gift of the bountiful gods.
11. The son of Anchises enters the shades of Avernus.³

³ *Avernus, i.*¹ Accusative.² *Tyrii.*

LESSON 8.

Simple Sentence: 3. Special Forms.

Vocabulary.

caecus, a, um, *blind.*canōrus, a, um, *melodious.*cygnus, i (M.), *swan.*ergā (with acc.), *towards.*frigidus, a, um, *cold.*ignāvus, a, um, *lazy.*impiger, gra, um, *vigorous.*invideo,² *envy* (with dat.).noceo,² *do harm* (dat.).potius, *rather.*stultus, a, um, *foolish.*valeo,² *prevail, be strong.*

Translate into English.

1. Num tū laudās stultum? nōne potius ridēs? — 2. Cur pericula bellī timētis? — 3. O quam frigida est aqua! — 4. Quanta sunt tua ergā mē beneficia! — 5. Quando erās tū Rōmae aut Corinthī? — 6. Et stultōs et caecōs saepe vidēmus multōs. — 7. Alter puerōrum impiger est, alter ignāvus.

Dialogue.

Quid est illud? — Aliquid incidit in oculum meum. — In
that something has-fallen eye
 utrum oculum incidit? — In dextrum: ecquid vidēs? — Video
which right anything
 aliquid minūtum. — Quid est? — Est mica pulveris. — Exime,
little speck of-dust take-out
 quaeso, sī potes. — Exēmī. — Maximās tibi grātiās dēbeo.
I beg if you can I have greatest to-you thanks I-owe

Write in Latin.

1. Do you see a narrow road in the forest? Yes ("I see").
2. How-great are the gifts of the gods!
3. We were both¹ weary and frightened.

¹ *et.*

4. We do not see wholly either with the eyes or with the mind (use *neque . . nec*).

5. The queen has two slaves, the one² tall, the other² stout.

6. We have neither riches nor glory.

7. Does a good man ever envy the bad?

8. The perils of war frighten cowards, but not strong men.

9. How-many fingers have-you on³ the right-hand? how many on the left?

10. Pompey was an honest man, no-doubt,⁴ and a good general; but proud, jealous, sullen, and-not⁵ a true friend.

² *alter* (acc.).

³ *in*.

⁴ *quidem*.

⁵ *neque*.

LESSON 9.

Third Declension of Nouns.

Vocabulary.

cōram (abl.), *in presence of*.

hirundo, inis (F.), *swallow*.

iter, itineris (N.), *journey, march*.

jūcunditās, ātis (F.), *delight*.

latro, ōnis (M.), *robber*.

mē (acc. or abl.), *mē*.

mūtatio, ōnis (F.), *change*.

quiēs, ētis (F.), *rest*.

sōl, sōlis (M.), *the sun*.

sōlum, i (N.), *soil, land*.

tempus, oris (N.), *time*.

vēnātor, ōris (M.), *hunter*.

vēr, vēris (N.), *spring*.

vulnus, eris (N.), *wound*.

Translate into English.

1. *Milites Rōmānī in hostium finibus pugnāt.* — 2. *Hirundinēs vēris tempore vidēmus.* — 3. *Nōbilitās sōla est atque ūnica virtūs.* — 4. *Inter hērōas¹ veterēs Herculem, Thēsea,² Persea,² Iāsona, Bellerophonta memorāmus.* — 5. *Somnus est mortis imāgo.* — 6. *Subita formido occupat corda Rōmānōrum.* — 7. *Rectōrēs civitātis boni strenuīque erant multī.* — 8. *Hostēs vim legiōnum atque equitum nōn sustinent.*

9. *Fontem liquidum agnus nōn turbat.* — 10. *Lampadas facēsque dextris tenēmus.* — 11. *Fortūna spondet multa multis; praestat nēminī.* — 12. *Senex bubulcus libertātem frustrā ōrat.* — 13. *Post equitem sedet ātra Cūra.* — 14. *In sōlis defectiōnibus, sōli lūna obstat.* — 14. *Habet multum jūcunditātis sōli caelique mūtatio.*

¹ page 12. *e*.

² page 5. *g*.

16. Vēr praebet flōrēs, formōsa est messibus aestās.

17. Vēnātor ferās canibus agitat. — 18. Labor et requiēs sunt pariter necessariā. — 19. Itinere et frigore et vulneribus fessus erat miles. — 20. Senum multōrum cōsilia sunt sāna, corpora infirma. — 21. Pallida Mors aequō pulsāt pede pauperum tabernās, rēgumque turrēs.

22. Nāvita dē ventis, dē tauris narrat arātor ;

Enumerat miles vulnera, pastor ovēs.

23. Homo sum, hūmāni nihil ā mē aliēnum puto.

Fables.

1. In faucibus lupī os inhaeserat. Hōc grūs, māgnis prōmis-
jaw wolf bone had-stuck this crane promise
 sis adductus, longitūdine collī facile attinet et extrahit. Mercē-
induced length easily reaches pulls-out pay
 dem autem frustrā postulat ; nam lupus subridēns et dentibus
however in-vain demand for grinning tooth
 infrendēns, " Num hōc," inquit, " parvam mercēdem existimās,
gnashing says small think
 quodd caput incolume ex lupī faucibus habēs ? "

2. In eōdem prātō erant quondam plūrēs ānserēs et gruēs.
same once many geese
 Hominum vōcibus territi, gruēs facile āvolant ; sed anserēs,
voice alarmed easily fly-off
 corporum gravitāte impediti, dēprehēnsi et mactātī sunt.
weight hindered caught killed

Write in Latin.

1. The ramparts¹ of the city are high and long.
2. The boy is in the garden with [his] father and mother.
3. The hunter's dogs are-hastening to the woods.
4. Riches, honor, [and] beauty are uncertain.
5. The enemy (plur.) puts-to-flight³ the Roman legions.
6. A fox and a lion were once partners⁸ in the chase.⁴
7. The virtue of [one's] parents is a great dower.⁵
8. A constant dropping wears-away⁶ a stone.
9. The mind of man (plur.) is ignorant of future destiny.

¹ moenia.

² fugo.¹

⁸ socius.

⁴ venatio.

⁵ dos (F.).

⁶ cavo.¹

10. The broad tree of Jove furnishes acorns for swine.⁷
11. The nymphs are guards of the fountains.
12. Vulcan furnishes thunderbolts to-Jove.
13. A thousand shining fishes are-swimming⁸ in the stream.

⁷ page 14, 3.

⁸ *nato*.¹

LESSON 10.

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

Vocabulary.

<i>adhibeo</i> , ² <i>apply</i> .	<i>ingēns, tis, vast, mighty</i> .
<i>aequor, ōris</i> (N.), <i>level, sea</i> .	<i>iners, tis, idle, inefficient</i> .
<i>civitas, ātis</i> (F.), <i>state</i> .	<i>mergus, i</i> (M.), <i>sea-gull</i> .
<i>fallāx, ācis, treacherous</i> .	<i>pauper, eris, poor</i> (not destitute).
<i>fidēlis, e, faithful</i> .	<i>paupertās, ātis</i> (F.), <i>poverty</i> .
<i>ferēns, tis, bringing</i> .	<i>recēns, tis, fresh</i> .
<i>ferōx, ōcis, fierce</i> .	<i>revolo</i> , ¹ <i>fly back</i> .
<i>fortis, e, brave</i> .	<i>scelerātus, a, um, wicked</i> .
<i>impleo</i> , ³ <i>fill</i> .	<i>torqueo</i> , ² <i>hurl</i> .

Translate into English.

1. *Silvam veterem in montibus vidēmus*. — 2. *Inertēs semper maximē labōrant*.¹ — 3. *Amicōrum omnia*² *sunt communia*. — 4. *Semper gravis est ira rēgum*. — 5. *Filius sapiēns laetificat patrem*. — 6. *Fortūna fortēs*³ *juvat*. — 7. *Ignis aurum probat, miseria fortēs virōs*. — 8. *Paupertās omnēs artēs docet*. — 9. *Alteri*⁴ *divitiae, alteri ingentēs opēs sunt*.

10. *Timeo hostēs et*⁵ *dōna ferentēs*. — 11. *Ferōx leō agnum asperis lacerat dentibus*. — 12. *Voluptās fallāx est, et inimica virtūti*. — 13. *Salūs civitātis est civium virtūs*. — 14. *Virēs virōrum sunt inter sē disparēs*. — 15. *Terribilia sunt fulmina Jovis, et scelerātis inimica*.

16. *Gravibus morbis cūratiōnēs adhibēmus periculōsās*. — 17. *Nāvi fragili omnēs ventī sunt contrārii*. — 18. *Senex est dēbilis et annis et morbo*. — 19. *Servi fidēlēs pōcula vinō recentī implent*.

¹ i.e. *take most trouble*.

² *all things (every thing)*.

³ "*the brave*," i.e. *brave men*. ⁴ "*to the one are*," i.e. *the one has*. ⁵ *even*.

Fable.

Leō annis cōfectus morbum simulat. Tum ad rēgem aegrō-
worn sickness pretend then sick
 tum complūrēs conveniunt bestiae, quās omnēs dēvorat. Vulpēs
many gather beast which all devour fox
 autem procul ante speluncam stat, rēgem salūtāns. “Cur nōn
far-off before den saluting why
 intrās?” inquit leō. Respondet vulpēs, “Quōd video multa
answer because
 intransium vestigia, nulla exeuntium.”
going-in track going-out.

Write in Latin.

1. The lion's strength (plur.) is vast.
2. In the tomb the poor [man] is equal to the rich.
3. With mighty force¹ the soldier hurls [his] spear.
4. The wicked fear the dreadful thunderbolts of Jove.
5. The valor² of general and soldiers is the safety of the state.
6. All good citizens call-on³ the gods with humble prayers.
7. A wise father often has a foolish son.
8. Why do-you-fear the tiger?⁴ Because he has mighty teeth and dreadful claws.
9. The horseman pricks-up⁵ [his] horse with sharp spurs.
10. We fill the bowls daily with fresh milk.
11. In a short time the enemy (plur.) move [their] camp from the plain.

¹ vis. ² virtus. ³ invoco.¹ ⁴ tigris (§ 11, iii. 6. b). ⁵ stimulo.¹

LESSON II.

Comparison of Adjectives.

Vocabulary.

aequālis, e, of one's own age.	jūcundus, a, um, pleasant
aequitās, ātis (F.), justice.	plōrique, aequē, aque, most.
egēns, tis, needy.	posterī, ōrum, posterity.
facētus, a, um, cheerful, funny.	sagāx, ācis, sagacious.
fēlix, icis, fortunate.	validus, a, um, strong.
gravis, e, heavy.	vēlōx, ōcis, swift.

Translate into English.

1. Quid est in ōtiō jūcundius quam sermo facētus? — 2. Argentum vilius est aurō, virtūtibus aurum. — 3. Nihil est prae-stantius sapientiā. — 4. Liberī saepe parentibus sunt simillimi.

5. P. Clōdius erat nequissimus omnium aequālium. —
 6. Hieme pauperēs sunt egentissimī.
 7. Senem sapientissimum omnēs Catōnem vocant. — 8. Magister nōster omnium est doctissimus. — 9. Lupi ferōciōres sunt quam canēs. — 10. Omnium animālium ferōcissimus est tigris, sagācissimus elephantus, callidissima vulpēs.

Italy.

Italia ab Alpibus usque ad fretum Siculum pertinet, inter
even strait Sicilian extend
 mare Tuscum et Adriaticum. Multō longior est quā lātior.
sea long wide
 Nōbilissima regio ob fertilitātem solī, caelique salūbritātem.
famous for -ty soil -ty
 Plūrimos habet portūs; neque ulla regio tot tamque pulcrās
very-many ports so
 urbēs habet, inter quās Rōma longē praeclārissima est.
which far famous

Fēlicissima in Italiā regio est Campānia. Multī ibi vītiferī
Fertile vine-bearing
 collēs, ubi nōbilissima sunt vīna; calidī hīc fontēs salūberrimī.
hill where wine hot here spring wholesome
 Nusquam generōsior olea.
nowhere abundant (pred.) olive.

Write in Latin.

1. No one of the Romans was more eloquent than Cicero, no one more wise than Cato.
2. It was a very-heavy¹ load.
3. Care is swifter than the winds.
4. The glory of the Roman people was greatest in war.
5. The deeds of brave men are often very obscure.
6. Dogs are more sagacious than cats.
7. A queen is often the most wretched of all women.
8. Cornelia was the elder of the [two] sisters.
9. Men often dread even the smallest evils.
10. In the forest are very-many fierce animals, among others boars, wolves, and bears.
11. The children were more fortunate than [their] parents.
12. The farmer's servant is-giving very poor fodder² to his cattle.³

¹ Superlative.² *malum pabulum*.³ *boves* (see page 14, 3).

LESSON 12.

Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

Vocabulary.

aciēs, ēi (F.), <i>edge, line-of-battle.</i>	orno, ¹ <i>adorn.</i>
adventus, ūs (M.), <i>coming.</i>	partus, a, um, <i>gotten.</i>
caesariēs, ēi (F.), <i>hair, locks.</i>	pendeo, ² <i>hang, depend.</i>
contrā, <i>against.</i>	posterus, a, um, <i>the next.</i>
fluctus, ūs (M.), <i>billow.</i>	praeclārus, a, um, <i>glorious.</i>
glaciēs, ēi (F.), <i>ice.</i>	roscidus, a, um, <i>dewy.</i>
male, <i>ill, badly.</i>	sūdo, ¹ <i>sweat, distil.</i>
mināx, ācis, <i>threatening.</i>	unguis, is (M.), <i>claw.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Ex parvis rēbus saepe magnae pendent. — 2. Est mihi domi pater, est optima māter. — 3. Altās quercūs in silvis vidēmus. — 4. In altō lacū plūrimī sunt piscēs. — 5. Puerum minācia tauri cornua terrent. — 6. Plūrimās nāvēs in portū vidēmus. — 7. In magnis fluctibus maris natant pueri.

8. Validis arcubus Persae pugnant, longissimis hastis Macedōnēs. — 9. Circiter meridiem militēs ad castra festinant. — 10. Posterō diē Caesar cum omni equitātū confertissimā aciē pugnat. — 11. Spēs victōriae militēs dēlectat.

12. Tauri contrā leōnēs cornibus pugnant. — 13. Fortūna est domina rērum hūmānarum. — 14. Sōlis occāsū Caesar aciem Gallōrum militibus suis mōnstrat. — 15. Cantibus avium parvārum magnopere gaudēmus.

Germany.

Trāns Rhēnum Germānī habitānt usque ad Vistulam, quae
dwell which
finis est Germāniae ad orientem. Ad meridiem sunt Alpēs,
boundary east south
ad septentrionem mare Britannicum et Balticum. Incolae cor-
north inhabitant
porum prōcērītātē ēminent. Bella gerunt cum finitimis, nōn
tallness excel wage neighbor
finium prōlātandōrum causā, aut cupiditātē imperiī, sed pug-
extending for-the-sake ambition empire fight-
nandī amōre adductī. Domōs aedificant nōn lapidibus aut
ing love led build stone
lateribus coctis, sed lignis quae frondibus tegunt.
brick baked wood leaf cover

Write in Latin.

1. The father's coming delights the children.
2. The face of the goddess was most beautiful.
3. Caesar, with all his cavalry, fights against the line-of-battle of the Gauls.
4. We see very-hard ice upon¹ the lake.
5. A good man always keeps his promise.⁵
6. Bulls fight with [their] horns, boars with their tusks, lions with their claws.
7. In the most wretched case,² hope sustains³ [our] minds.
8. About sunset the enemy (plur.) hasten towards⁴ the city.
9. Of all things the sun is most glorious.

¹ *in* (with abl.).² *status*.⁴³ *sustento*.¹⁴ *ad*.⁵ *fides*.

LESSON 13.

Pronouns: Personal and Demonstrative.

Vocabulary.

artifex, icis (M.), *craftsman*.**collēga, ae** (M.), *colleague*.**formica, ae** (F.), *ant*.**frūgī** (indecl. § 17, 2), *thrifty*.**mandātum, i** (N.), *command*.**nonnullus, a, um, some** (§ 41, 2 e, R.).**occāsus, ūs** (M.), *setting*.**ortus, ūs** (M.), *rising*.**pār, paris, equal** (§ 16, 3. a),**poēma, atis** (N.), *poem*.**respondeo, 2** *answer*.**rīdeo, 2** *laugh, laugh at*.**seges, etis** (F.), *standing corn*.**vehementer, exceedingly**.

Translate into English.

1. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. — 2. Cur stulta ista rāna bovī magnitudinem¹ invidet? — 3. Pastor canisque ejus sunt fessī. — 4. Ego et tū et frāter tuus unā ambulāmus. — 5. Formica cibum sibi aestāte parat.
6. Illa seges vōtis respondet frūgī agricolae. — 7. Nēmo hostis nobiscum² paribus armīs pugnat. — 8. Ille diēs erat tristissimus; haec nox est laetissima. — 9. Omnia mea³ mēcum porto. — 10. Vōs vōbiscum⁴ pugnātis. — 11. Stultus sibi est inimicus. — 12. Virtūs et vitium semper inter sē⁵ pugnant.

¹ *envy to the ox his size, i.e. envy the ox for his size.*² See p. 19. f.³ *my possessions.*⁴ Less. 13. a.⁵ *together.*

13. Ista poēmata nōbīs sunt grāta. — 14. Nōn omnēs eadem laudāmus. — 15. Saepe eadem mandāta servis suis dat artifex.

FABLE. — Rānae stultae rēgem ā Jove ōrant. Pater deōrum ridet, atque eis dat parvum tigillum.

Peloponnesus.

Cum hāc parte Graeciae cohaeret ingēns peninsula, platani
join large plane-tree
 foliō simillima. Angustus ille trames inter Aegēum mare et
narrow passage
 Iōnium, per quem cum Megaride cohaeret, Isthmus appellātur.
which Megaris is-called
 In eō templum Neptūni est, ubi lūdī celebrantur Isthmici. In
Neptune where games are-celebrated Isthmian
 ipsō Peloponnēsī aditū Corinthus sita est, urbs antiquissima,
approach situated ancient
 ex cūjus summā arce utrumque mare cōspicitur.
of-which top-of citadel each (both) is-seen

Write in Latin.

1. Fools and the impatient are always fighting with themselves.¹

2. These apples are sweet, those [are] sour.

3. We are wretched, you are happy.

4. Covetous [men] are hostile to themselves.

5. You² praise yourself too-much.

6. These songs are most pleasing to us.

7. I am a shepherd, you are a robber.

8. He has his brother with him at-home.

9. One of these boys is diligent, the other lazy.

¹ *secum, or inter se.*

² *ipse.*

LESSON 14.

Pronouns: Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite.

Vocabulary.

aestus, ūs (M.), *tide.*

aliquamdiū, *for some time.*

auctōritās, ātis (F.), *authority.*

cruor, ōris (M.), *blood (when shed).*

finitimus, a, um, *neighboring.*

insto,¹ *to be at hand.*

maritimus, a, um, *of the sea.*

obtineo,² *hold, keep.*

ōra, ae (F.), *shore.*

postulo,¹ *claim, demand.*

quivis (§ 21, 2. c), *any, every.*

sanguis, inis (M.), *blood.*

tolero,¹ *endure.*

tumultus, ūs (M.), *confusion.*

1. Miles quem laudās fidem nōn servat. — 2. Quem deōrum nōn invocāmus? — 3. Omnia animālia quae sanguinem habent, habent etiam cōr. — 4. Diēs instat, quō diē populus Rōmānus magistrātūs quotannis creat. — 5. Bestiae in quō locō nātae sunt, sē ex eō¹ nōn commovent.

6. Erāt lūna plēna, quō diē maximī sunt aestūs maritimī. — 7. Sunt nōnnullī, quōrum auctōritās apud² plēbem plūrimū valet. — 8. Militēs, quibus rēx grātissimus erat, maestum aliquamdiū silentium obtinent.

9. Hic quoque sunt mātres miserōrum et parvulī liberī, quōrum utrōrumque³ aetās labōrem meum postulat. — 10. Quō⁴ mājor exercitus, eō⁴ gravior cladēs est. — 11. Quibus prēcibus virginēs sanctae Vestam fatigant! — 12. Tū, quae⁵ tua est fortitūdo, adversam fortūnam facillimē tolerās.

13. Estne quisquam (*or*, num quis est) omnium mortālium jūstior ac fortior quam hic, quem meritō laudās? — 14. Quemcumque⁶ vidēmus amicum, eum grātum habēmus. — 15. Cuivīs dolōri remedium est patientia. — 16. Num quod⁷ eloquentiae vestigium in Numā Pompiliō appāret?

17. Thēbae ipsae, quod Boeōtiae caput est, in magnō tumultū erant.⁸ — 18. Ibi vidēs quicquid habeo cōpiārum. — 19. Quem virum aut hērōa lyrā celebrāmus? — 20. Quae caret⁹ ōra cruōre nōstrō? — 21. Rēs Rōmāna cuilibet finitimārum civitātum pār erat.

¹ Supply *locō*, and translate before *in quō*. ² *with*. ³ *of both of whom*.

⁴ *the . . . the*.

⁵ *such is, &c.*

⁶ See p. 20. a.

⁷ *any*.

⁸ Translate *was*, as to us the name *Thebes* is singular.

⁹ *is without*, i.e. *is clear from the stain*.

Caesar's Description of Gaul.

Gallia est omnis divīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam [ii] quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae; proximique sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquos Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt,

reason

also

rest-of

valor

excel

quòd ferē quotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt;
because almost daily battle contend
 cū aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus
while their-own keep-away
 bellum gerunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The boys whom you praise are very idle.
2. What was the cause¹ of the war? Who is-tending the wounded² soldiers?
3. Those are good citizens who adorn the state by their warlike³ glory, and their own homes by their virtues.
4. Whatever I have of riches, I give all to you.
5. We honor Rome, which⁴ is the head of all Italy.
6. There was war between the Romans and Samnites, both of whom⁵ were brave and warlike people.⁶
7. Anybody⁷ enters the town in-the-day-time.⁸
8. Which do you consider the greatest general, Cæsar, Scipio, or Hannibal? Which the better⁹ orator, Cicero or Demosthenes?

¹ *causa.*² *vulneratus*³ *bellicus.*⁴ *Neuter.*⁵ *Nominative.*⁶ *Plural.*⁷ *quisvis.*⁸ *interdiu.*⁹ § 17, 5. a.

LESSON 19.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation (*Active*).

Vocabulary.

āvoco,¹ *call away.*cānus, a, um, *gray, hoary.*colōnus, i (M.), *farmer (colonist).*ēgregius, a, um, *remarkable.*foedus, a, um, *disgraceful.*gēns, gentis (F.), *race, nation.*illūstro,¹ *make famous.*lītus, oris (N.), *shore.*lūctus, ūs (M.), *grief.*lūstro,¹ *purify.*nex, necis (F.), *death.*occupo,¹ *seize.*quondam, *once, formerly.*vehementer, *exceedingly.*

Translate into English.

1. In mediō campō errābant timidae ovēs.
2. Ferōx lupus agnum nece injūstā lacerāvit; nam fontem liquidum agnus miser nōn turbāverat.

3. Laudā mare : litus amā. — 4. Et tū et nōnnulli collēgae tui vehementer errāvistis. — 5. Nihil sine magnō labōre vita dedit mortālibus.

6. Magna fuit quondam capitis reverentia cāni.

7. Luctus filiī mortuī animum patris agitābat. — 8. Cum hostēs agrōs devastāverint, urbem ipsam oppugnābunt.

Early Kings of Italy.

Post Saturnum, Latinus in illis regiōnibus regnāvit. Hic
after Saturn region reign
 filiam suam Lavīniam Aenēae, Anchisae filiō, in mātirimō-
mar-
 nium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam in honōrem
riage give built honor
 conjugis Lavīnium appellāvit. Post Aenēae mortem, Ascanius,
wife call death
 filius ējus, regnāre coepit. Hic urbem in monte Albānō locā-
began place
 vit, eamque Albam Longam nuncupāvit. Ejus posterī omnēs,
name descendant
 usque ad Romam conditam, Albae regnāvērunt.
built

Write in Latin.

1. The enemy had seized¹ the camp by night.
2. You had asked, I refused.
3. If the enemy are-holding² the woods, they will easily drive our cavalry.
4. The soldiers carry ladders with them,³ and easily enter the town.
5. Let⁴ the soldiers carry⁴ corn with them into the camp.
6. A stag praised his branching horns, but blamed the extreme thinness⁵ of his legs.
7. Citizen (plur.) strove with citizen in valor.⁶
8. Do not carry all the corn with you.
9. Let us take-a-walk⁷ in the garden.
10. The farmer sailed-over⁸ the fields which he lately ploughed.

¹ *occupo.*

² *teneo.*

³ *secum.*

⁴ Present subj.

⁵ *nimia tenuitas.*

⁶ *virtus.*

⁷ *deambulo.*

⁸ *navigo.*

LESSON 20.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation (*Passive*).

Vocabulary.

appello, ¹ <i>call, address.</i>	oppugno, ¹ <i>attack.</i>
domo, ¹ <i>ui, itum, subdue.</i>	perturbo, ¹ <i>alarm.</i>
effēmino, ¹ <i>enfeeble.</i>	repudio, ¹ <i>reject.</i>
extrā, <i>outside of.</i>	trepido, ¹ <i>tremble.</i>
fautor, ōris (M.), <i>partisan.</i>	voluntās, ātis (F.), <i>will.</i>
honōrificus, a, um, <i>honorable.</i>	vulnero, ¹ <i>wound.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Agnus miser nece injūstā lacerātus est ā lupō. — 1. Mōnstrum ingēns ā virgine domitum est. — 3. Diū ā Gallis ācerrinē pugnābātur. — 4. Illis locis extrā moenia nōn habitātur.

5. Haec urbs nōstra ā Gallis oppugnāta est. — 6. Rēgiō imperiō² duo sunt, iique cōsulēs appellāntor. — 7. Cur tantum perturbāminī, civēs? — 8. Dē agrō cum rēgis lēgātis disceptātum est. — 9. Ab omnibus prōmissa perpetuō servantor. — 10. A dīs quoque habitābuntur silvae.

¹ *in, &c.*² *of royal power.*

A Snake Story.

In primō Pūnicō bellō, ad flūmen Bāgradam, serpēns centum vigintī pedum ā Rēgulō, imperātōre Rōmānō, ballistis et tormentis expugnāta-est. Pellis ējus et maxillae diū Rōmae in templō quōdam asservātae-sunt.

In Indiā serpētēs perpetuum bellum cum elephantis gerunt. Ex arboribus sē in praetereuntēs praecipitant, gressūsque ligant nōdis. Hōs nōdōs elephantī manū resolvunt.

Write in Latin.

1. All the soldiers will be wounded.
2. The faithful¹ guards were praised by all the citizens.

¹ *fidus.*

3. The nightingale² is charmed³ by her-own songs.
4. Wreaths had been given to the victorious⁴ soldiers.
5. Let the mountain be occupied⁵ by our [men].
6. [A battle] will be fought to-morrow.⁶
7. Between the wolf and dog there was a long⁷ dispute.⁸
8. Are you alarmed, Romans, at⁹ the dangers of war?
9. There was-terror⁸ throughout¹⁰ the city.

² *luscinia*. ³ *delecto*. ⁴ *victor*. ⁵ *occupo*. ⁶ *cras*.
⁷ *diu*. ⁸ Verb, impers. passive. ⁹ Ablative. ¹⁰ *totus*.

LESSON 21.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation (*Noun and Adjective Forms*).

Vocabulary.

<i>aedifico</i> , ¹ <i>build</i> .	<i>quamvis</i> , <i>however</i> .
<i>apto</i> , ¹ <i>fit</i> .	<i>redundo</i> , ¹ <i>overflow</i> .
<i>calco</i> , ¹ <i>tread</i> .	<i>vacat</i> , ¹ <i>there is leisure</i> .
<i>dēbeo</i> , ² <i>owe, ought</i> .	<i>vasto</i> , ¹ <i>ravage</i> .
<i>jubeo</i> , ² <i>jussi, command</i> .	<i>veto</i> , ¹ <i>ui, itum, forbid</i> .
<i>maneo</i> , ² <i>wait, await</i> .	<i>virilis</i> , <i>e, manly</i> .
<i>numero</i> , ¹ <i>count</i> .	<i>volo</i> , ¹ <i>fly</i> .

Translate into English.

1. Turpe est terga¹ hostibus dare in armis. — 2. Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo potest. — 3. Sine pennis volāre haud facile est. — 4. Ciconiae, in aliēnās terrās migrātūrae, in ūnum locum congregantur. — 5. Ager quamvis fertilis sine culturā fructuōsus esse nōn potest. — 6. Arandi an² navigandi ars ūtilior est? — 7. Animō cupidō nihil satis festinātur.³

8. Summae dēmentiae⁴ est in vitiis persevērāre. — 9. Aequam memento rēbus in arduis servāre mentem. — 10. Divitem mē esse vicinī falsō existimant. — 11. Lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā magistrātūs creārī vetuērunt. — 12. Contrā libidinēs est pugnandum.⁵ — 13. Ancō regnante,⁶ Lūcūmo Rōmam⁷ comigrāvit. — 14. Hannibal ad vastandam Italiam parātus erat.

¹ *give back to*, i.e. *retreat before*. ² *or*. ³ i.e. *goes fast enough*.

⁴ [a mark] *of*, &c. ⁵ i.e. *we must*, &c. ⁶ *in the reign of Ancus*

⁷ *to Rome*.

Horatius.

Tullō regnante, bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs exortum-
 est. Forte in duōbus exercitibus erant trigemini¹ frātrēs, nec
 aetāte nec viribus disparēs, apud Rōmānōs Horātii, apud
 Albānōs Curiātii. Cum his agunt rēgēs, ut prō suā quisque
 patriā dīmicent ferrō. Arma igitur capiunt, et in medium inter
 duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Datur signum, infestisque armis terni²
 juvenēs, magnōrum exercituum animōs gerentēs, concurrunt.
 Ut primō concursū increpuere arma, horror ingēns spectantēs
 perstrinxit. Statim duo Rōmāni alius super alium expirantēs
 cecidērunt; trēs Albāni vulnerāti-sunt.

¹ three born at one birth.² three on each side.

Write in Latin.

1. We are good men if we help¹ those² whom³ we can help.
2. Cæsar denies that he³ can⁴ give to any a way⁵ through the province.
3. No-one beholding the whole⁶ earth will doubt of⁷ divine providence.
4. While fighting,⁸ keep an even temper.
5. I see that you are of a cheerful temper (gen. or abl.).
6. No one [when] about-to-sail ought to think of storms.
7. Can any-one⁹ be a good commander without knowledge of soldiership?
8. For a soldier¹⁰ to refuse obedience is disgraceful.¹¹
9. The Germans were prepared to ravage Gaul.¹²
10. The ancient laws forbade a plebeian¹³ to be elected consul.
11. We are about-to-remove into the city.

¹ *prosum*.² Dative.³ *se*.⁴ Infinitive.⁵ *iter*.⁶ *universus*.⁷ *de*.⁸ *inter* with acc. of gerund.⁹ *num quis*.¹⁰ Accusative.¹¹ *turpis* (neut.).¹² *Gallia*.¹³ *plebeius*.

LESSON 22.

Regular Verb: Second Conjugation.

Vocabulary.

afflicto , ¹ <i>dash about.</i>	pendeo , ² <i>pependi, hang.</i>
coetus , ūs (M.), <i>assembly.</i>	principium , i (N.), <i>beginning.</i>
dēlectus , ūs (M.), <i>a levy (of troops).</i>	sentēs , ium (M.), <i>thorns.</i>
habeo , ² ui, itum, <i>have, hold.</i>	stipula , ae (F.), <i>stubble.</i>
improbus , a, um, <i>wicked.</i>	sustineo , ² ui, tentum, <i>sustain.</i>
inrideo , ² risi, risum, <i>deride.</i>	tondeo , ² totondi, tōnsum, <i>cut, mow.</i>
mītis , e, <i>gentle.</i>	vehementer , <i>vigorously.</i>
pāreo , ² ui, itum, <i>obey (with dat.).</i>	vigeo , ² ui, <i>thrive, flourish.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Urbem Rōmam ā principiō rēgēs habuēre. — 2. Hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum non sustinēbant. — 3. Nē invīderis¹ frātri tuō. — 4. Necessitāti pārēre sapientis² est. — 5. Nullum ad nocendum tempus angustum³ est improbis. — 6. Nōn modo nōn invīdētur jūventūti, vērūm etiam favētur. — 7. Bonus homo civibus suis grātum sē vidēri studet.

Horatius (continued).

Rōmānōs jam spēs dēserēbat. Unum Horātium trēs Curi-
forsake
 atii circumsteterant. Is, quamvis integer, quia tribus impār
surround although unhurt because unequal
 erat, fugam simulāvit. Jam aliquantum spatii ex eō locō ubi
flight feign something distance place
 pugnātum-est, aufugerat, cū respiciēs videt ūnum Curiātium
had-fled looking-back
 haud procul ab sē esse. Hōc interfectō, alterum deinde occi-
not far killed slew
 dit. Jam singulī supererant, sed nec spē nec viribus parēs.
single survived
 Alterius erat intactum ferrō corpus, et geminātā victōriā ferōx
untouched steel redoubled victory fierce
 animus. Alter fessum vulnere fessum cursū trahēbat corpus.
weary wound running drag
 Nec illud proelium fuit. Curiātium, male sustinentem arma,
hardly holding-up
 Romānus exsultāns conficit, jacentemque spoliāt.
exulting despatch prostrate strip

¹ See p. 23, l. c.² wise, i.e. the act of a wise man.³ too-short.

Write in Latin.

1. You seem to me to be of a very cheerful mind.
2. The enemy kept themselves hidden in the woods.
3. The consul forbade the army to move from winter-quarters.¹
4. We shall always obey the laws of the country.
5. Here the soldiers stood, and stoutly² sustained the attack of the enemy.
6. Carthage was destroyed by the younger³ Scipio Africanus.
7. It is difficult for a coward⁴ to appear brave.⁴
8. No one should⁵ envy anybody.⁶
9. Gaul is bounded by the river Rhine and the ocean.
10. The power of the Romans was feared by all nations.
11. Our friends were warned in vain.
12. The frogs were frightened by the sound of the log.
13. A monkey sat [as] judge between a wolf and a fox.

¹ Ablative. ² fortiter. ³ minor. ⁴ Accusative. ⁵ debet.
⁶ quisquam.

LESSON 23.

Regular Verb: Third Conjugation.

Vocabulary.

ago, ³ ēgi, actum, <i>pass, act.</i>	peto, ³ petivi (ii), itum, <i>seek.</i>
cēspea, itis (M.), <i>turf.</i>	rector, ōris (M.), <i>ruler.</i>
cinis, eris (M.), <i>ashes.</i>	rumpo, ³ rūpi, ruptum, <i>break.</i>
exsisto, ³ stiti, stitum, <i>arise.</i>	tango, ³ tetigi, tactum, <i>touch.</i>
mitto, ³ misi, missum, <i>send.</i>	tolerābilis, e, <i>passable.</i>
nātus, a, um, <i>born.</i>	traho, ³ xi, ctum, <i>drag, bring.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Ex ducentis viginti nāvibus trigintā fūgērunt, nōnāgintā cum pugnātōribus captae sunt, dēmersae cēterae. — 2. Rānae ab Jove rēgem petiēre.¹ Pater deōrum risit, atque illis dedit parvum tigillum. — 3. Hominēs amplius oculis quam auribus crēdunt. — 4. Vita omnis Germānōrum in vēnātiōnibus atque in rēbus militāribus agitur.

¹ See p. 27. c³.

7 we must not.

Digitized by Google

4. Antony married⁶ Octavia, the sister of Octavianus.
5. Octavia, the sister of Octavianus, married⁶ Antony.⁷
6. The mischievous⁸ boys were-running through my garden.
7. The forces of the Romans were led by Crassus.
8. The [commander's] tent⁹ had been set-on-fire by the barbarians.
9. Two stags of vast size¹⁰ were caught by the hunters.
10. The women weeping threw¹¹ themselves at¹² Cæsar's¹³ feet.
11. After the log, Jupiter sent a water-snake¹⁴ to the wretched frogs, which devoured them daily.
12. The senate decreed rewards to the soldiers who had not betrayed the town.

⁵ *duco*. ⁶ *nubo*. ⁷ *Dative*. ⁸ *improbis*. ⁹ *praetorium*.
¹⁰ *corpus* (abl.). ¹¹ *projicio*. ¹² *ad*. ¹³ *Dative*. ¹⁴ *hydrus*.

LESSON 24.

Regular Verb: Fourth Conjugation.

Vocabulary.

<i>athēneus</i> , a, um, of-brass.	<i>nūtrio</i> , ⁴ feed, nourish.
<i>aperio</i> , ⁴ ui, apertum, open.	<i>palūs</i> , ūdis (F.), marsh.
<i>catēna</i> , ae (F.), chain.	<i>salio</i> , ⁴ ui, saltum, leap.
<i>coerceo</i> , ² ui, itum, check.	<i>sentio</i> , ⁴ si, sum, feel, judge.
<i>cōnscio</i> , ⁴ be-conscious.	<i>ūro</i> , ³ uasi, ustum, burn.
<i>invenio</i> , ⁴ vēni, ventum, find,	<i>urtica</i> , ae (F.), nettle.
discover.	<i>vincio</i> , ⁴ vinxi, vinctum, bind.
<i>maestus</i> , a, um, sorrowing.	<i>vineā</i> , ae (F.), trellis (for vines).

Translate into English.

1. Ubinam in terris cygnum nigrum inveniēmus? — 2. Ad rivum eundem lupus et agnus vēnerant. — 3. Nūtritur ventō, ventō restinguitur ignis. — 4. Aliud¹ est audire, aliud intellegere. — 5. Athēnis summa dicendī vis et inventa est et perfecta. — 6. Famē coacta² vulpēs ūvam altā in vineā pendentem appetēbat, summīs saliēns viribus. — 7. Lūdibriō frātris Rēmus novōs trānsiliit mūrōs. Inde ab irātō Rōmulō interfectus est.

¹ one thing.

² cōgo.

8. Jugurtha, Numidārum rēx, rēgiē vestitus et vinctus catēnīs, cum duōbus filiis, currum victōris antecessit. — 9. Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito neve ūrito. — 10. In montibus castellum erat ingēns, naturā mūnitum. — 11. Summō labōre urbs erat mūnita. — 12. Cornēliae filiī maximā curā ā mātrem eruditī erant. — 13. Militum corpora a sociis sepulta sunt.

14. Vēre collēs arvaque flōribus vestiuntur. — 15. Asinus rudit, bōs mūgit, canis latrat, catulus gannit, equus hinnit, gallus canit, corvus crocit, leo rugit, ovis bālat, serpēns sibilat, sūs gruunit, infāns vāgit. — 16. Hostēs urbem victōribus Rōmānis aperuērunt.

The Death of Caesar.

Conjūrātum-est in Caesarem ā sexāgintā amplius viris,
conspire sixty more (than)
 Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus cōnjūrātiōnis. Cū igitur Caesar
conspiracy when
 idibus Martiis in senātum vēnisset, assidentem speciē officii
ides of-March senate come as-he-sat show duty
 circumstetērunt, illicōque ūnus ē conjūrātis, quasi aliquid rogā-
stand-round at-once conspirator as-if ask
 tūrus, propius accessit, renuentique togam ab utrōque humerō
nearer advanced as-he-refused mantle both shoulder
 apprehendit. Deinde clāmantem *Ista quidem vīs est*, Casca
catch then (him) crying-out force
 vulnerat paulō infrā jugulum. Caesar Cascae brāchium arrep-
wound little below throat. arm caught
 tum graphiō¹ trājēcit, cōnātusque prōsilire, aliud vulnus
style pierce attempting leap-forward
 accēpit. Ubi autem Marcum Brūtum, quem locō filiī habēbat,
receive when
 in sē irruentem vidit, *Tū quoque* inquit *fili mī!* Deinde, ubi
rushing
 animadvertit undique sē strictis pugiōnibus peti, togā caput
perceive on-all-sides drawn dagger attack
 obvolvīt, atque ita tribus et viginti plāgis cōfossus-est.
wrap so blow stab

¹ A pointed instrument for writing.

Write in Latin.

1. The body of Cæsar was buried by his sorrowing friends.
2. The Roman camp had been fortified by Labienus with great labor.

3. The Helvetii had now¹ arrived-at² the territory³ of the Sequani.

4. A great crash is heard in the woods, from falling trees.⁴

5. The Britons⁵ were clothed with skins, and lived⁶ in the woods and marshes.

6. Those scoundrelly⁷ robbers were severely punished.

7. Let the gates of the city be opened to the conquering army.

8. In spring the trees are clad with blossoms, in summer are laden⁸ with fruits.

9. The soldiers bound the prisoner with chains.

10. In punishing,⁹ anger is by-no-means¹⁰ to-be-admitted.¹¹

11. Let the voice of justice be-heard.¹²

¹ jam.

² pervenio in.

³ fines.

⁴ Genitive.

⁵ Britannus.

⁶ habito.¹

⁷ scelestus.

⁸ onero.¹

⁹ Gerund.

¹⁰ minime.

¹¹ adhibendus.

¹² Pres. subjunctive.

LESSON 25.

Deponent Verbs.

Vocabulary.

adipiscor,³ adeptus, gain, get.

adsequor,³ secūtus, gain, reach.

aggredior,³ aggressus, attack.

arx, arcis (F.), tower.

classis, is (F.), fleet.

ēgredior,³ ēgressus, go out.

frōns, tis (F.), brow.

fruor,³ fructus, enjoy.

irascor,³ irātus, be angry.

loquor,³ locūtus, speak.

māternus, a, um, of a mother.

mentior,⁴ speak falsehood.

nascor,³ nātus, be born.

polliceor,² itus, promise.

pōpuleus, a, um, of the poplar.

queror,³ questus, bewail.

sequor,³ secūtus, follow.

ūtor,² ūsus, use, employ.

Translate into English.

1. Testis fidēlis nōn mentitur. — 2. Nunquam sapiēns irāscitur. — 3. Dē multis rēbus locūtī-sumus. — 4. Subita tempestās morābātur classem. — 5. Sine studiō et ardōre quōdam amōris nihil ēgregium quisquam adsequētur. — 6. Cur stulta ista rāna bovem imitātur? — 7. Frōns, oculi, vultus, saepe mentiuntur. — 8. Nox atque praeda hostēs remorāta sunt. — 9. Sine ullō vulnere victōriā Caesar potitur.

10. Deōs deāsque omnēs nē ēveniat¹ precāmur. — 11. Aliquando oculi suō mūnere nōn funguntur. — 12. Omnibus in vitā commodis² unā cum amicis frueretur.³ — 13. Improbis plūrima pollicētur, pauca perficit. — 14. Nēmo potentēs aggreditur tūtus.⁴ — 15. Omnia vetustāte lābuntur, nec quicquam tūtum ā senectūte est.

16. Deōs sōlōs venerābantur Germāni Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam. In flūminibus saepe lavābantur, et pellibus aut parvis tegimentis utēbantur.

¹ that it may not happen.

² advantages (see p. 163, 31).

³ Imperative.

⁴ i.e. safely.

Augustus and the Crow.

Cū post Actiacam victōriam Augustus Rōmam ingrederē-
at-Actium enter
 tur, occurrit ei inter grātulantēs opifex quidā corvum tenēs,
run-to-meet cheer mechanic a hold
 quem instituerat haec dicere: *Avē, Caesar victor, imperātor!*
train say hail! conqueror commander
 Augustus, avem officiōsam mirātus, eam vigintī millibus num-
bird dutiful admire
 mōrum ēmit. Socius opificis, ad quem nihil ex illā liberā-
pence buy partner liber-
 litātē pervēnerat, affirmāvit Augustō illum habēre et alium
ality came assure also
 corvum, quem afferri iussit. Adlātus corvus verba quae didi-
brought command brought words hid-
 cerat expressit: *Ave! Antōnī victor, Imperātor!* Nihil eā rē
learned utter not-at-all
 exasperātus, Augustus iussit tantummodo corvōrum doctōrem
enraged merely teacher
 dividere acceptam mercēdem cum contubernālī. Salūtātus
divide companion salute
 similiter ā psittacō, emī eum iussit.
likewise parrot

Write in Latin.

1. The Rauraci go-forth¹ along with the Helvetii into Gaul.

2. Many of² the Greeks, who had gone forth [to] Troy never returned³ home.

3. Orgetorix persuades Dumnorix to-attempt⁴ the same.

¹ proficiscor.² ² ex. ³ revertor,³ sus. ⁴ conor (use ut with pres. subj.).

4. Cato the elder died in the eighty-fifth year of his age.
5. On-every-side⁵ flowers sprang-up⁶ in the fields and meadows.
6. A violent storm delayed Cæsar [when] about-to-sail for⁷ Greece.
7. Speak little,⁸ promise with-caution,⁹ and remember always to keep [your] word.¹⁰
8. The lieutenant will measure-out¹¹ corn to the soldiers.
9. I entirely forgot myself.¹²
10. Pity me,¹³ pity our hardships.
11. My son has reached¹⁴ the same grades¹⁴ of honor.

⁵ *undique.* ⁶ *nascor.* ⁷ *in.* ⁸ *pauca* (N. plur.). ⁹ *caute.*
¹⁰ *servare fidem.* ¹¹ *metior.* ¹² Genitive. ¹³ *consequor.*
¹⁴ *gradus.*

LESSON 26.

Irregular, Defective, and Impersonal Verbs.

Vocabulary.

<i>cōspicio,</i> ³ <i>spexī, otum, behold.</i>	<i>prōfero, display.</i>
<i>dēmum, in short.</i>	<i>repentīnus, a, um, sudden.</i>
<i>finio,</i> ⁴ <i>put an end to.</i>	<i>retrō, backward.</i>
<i>īrācundus, a, um, passionāte.</i>	<i>supplex, icis, suppliant.</i>
<i>nemus, oris</i> (N.), <i>grove.</i>	<i>vēnor,</i> ¹ <i>hunt.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Acriōrēs fiēbant dux militēsque. — 2. Quid est tam rēgium quam opem ferre supplicibus? — 3. Idem¹ velle atque idem nōlle, ea dēmum vērā est amicitia. — 4. Nōlī esse amicus hominī īrācundō. — 5. Virtūtī retro ire nōn licet. — 6. Potest ex casā magnus vir exire ; virtūs omni locō nascitur. — 7. Magnās it Fāma per urbēs, virēsque acquirit² eundō.
8. Aut prōdesse volunt aut dēlectāre poētae.
9. Non cuivis hominī contingit adire Corinthum.
10. Famē coacta vulpēs ūvam altā in vineā pendentem adpetēbat, summīs saliēns viribus. Tangere autem nōn potuit. Tunc discēdēns, “Nōndum” inquit “est mātūra ; nōlo acerbam sūmere.”

¹ *alike.*² *acquires.*

The Sabine Wives.

Rōmānī Sabinīque in mediā valle redintegrārunt¹ proelium.
valley renew
 Tum Sabinae mulierēs, crīnibus passis² scissāque veste, ausae-
hair loose torn garment dare
 sunt sē inter tēla volantiā inferre, hinc patrēs hinc virōs
weapon flying throw here husbands
 ōrantēs. Movet rēs cūm multītūdinem tum ducēs. Silen-
pray both multitude and
 tium et repentina fit quīēs. Inde ducēs prōdeunt, nec pācem
sudden quiet advance peace
 modo sed civitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt, regnum cōnso-
city make kingdom ally
 ciant, imperium omne cōferunt Rōmam. Ex bellō tam tristi
power convey to sad
 laeta repente pāx cārīōrēs Sabinās viris ac parentibus, et ante
glad suddenly dear
 omnēs Rōmulō ipsī, fēcit.

¹ See p. 27. c³.² Participle of *pando*.

Write in Latin.

1. Many cannot bear the pain of sickness.
2. Bad citizens bore arms against [their] country.
3. The river Rhine flows¹ a long distance through the territory of the Germans.
4. The Helvetii wonder that Cæsar² has so-long borne² the wrongs brought on by them.
5. The sapling at length becomes a tree.
6. Do-not³ tell-a-lie.
7. What we wish we gladly believe.
8. Love others, if you wish to be loved yourself.
9. Many will hate you, if you love yourself alone.
10. We⁴ are-allowed⁴ to be free.⁵
11. Remember that you are mortal.
12. Then the god said : " Because you would-not⁶ bear your good, endure⁷ the evil."
13. At length Cæsar (acc.) was weary of the business.
14. While the greedy dog wishes to grasp the shadow, he lets-fall⁸ the meat from his mouth.

¹ Lit. "is borne."² Accus. and infin.³ nōli.⁴ licet.⁵ Dative.⁶ nōlo.⁷ perfero.⁸ omitto.

EXAMPLES IN POETRY.

1. Jam glacialis hiemps squalentia protulit ora,
Terraque marmoreo candida facta gelu est;
Nix jacet, et glaciem nec sol pluviaeve resolvunt,
Indurat Boreas, perpetuamque facit. — *Ovid.*
2. Jam satis terris nixis atque dirae
Grandinis misit Pater, et rubente
Dexterā sacras jaculatus arces
Terruit urbem. — *Horace.*
3. Diffugere nives, redeunt jam gramina campis,
Arboribusque comae;
Mutat terra vices, et decrescentia ripas
Flumina praetereunt;
Frigora mitescunt Zephyris; Ver proterit Aestas. — *Id.*
4. Molli paulatim flavescet campus aristā,
Incultis rubens pendebit sentibus uva,
Et durae quercus sudabunt roscida mella. — *Virgil.*
5. Cespes Tyrio mollior ostro
Solet impavidos ducere somnos:
Aurea rumpunt tecta quietem,
Vigilesque trahit purpura noctes;
Pectora pauper secunda gerit.
6. Beatus ille qui procul negotiis,
Ut prisca gens mortalium,
Paterna rura bubus exercet suis,
Solutus omni fenore;
Neque excitatur classico miles truci,
Neque horret iratum mare;
Forumque vitat, et superba civium
Potentiorum limina. — *Horace.*
7. Justum ac tenacem propositi virum
Non civium ardor prava jubentium,
Non vultus instantis tyranni,
Mente quatit solidā. — *Id.*

PART SECOND.

CONSTRUCTIONS OF SYNTAX.

NOTE. — It may be best to proceed at once from the foregoing lessons to the course of reading provided in Part Fourth, reserving the following section to be studied as the constructions occur in reading, and for systematic practice in writing Latin, once a week or oftener, at the convenience of the teacher. It should be compared with the "Synopsis of Constructions" given at the end of this volume. The letter R. refers to the short rules on pages 162, 163. Figures in brackets refer to the Revised Grammar.

A. — *Uses of Cases: 1. As Objects of Verbs.*

Notice that all of the four Oblique cases may be used in Latin with different classes of verbs, being represented alike in English by the Objective case. Thus, —

1. **hominem video**, *I see the man* (ACCUSATIVE).
2. **homini servio**, *I serve the man* (DATIVE).
3. **hominis misereor**, *I pity the man* (GENITIVE).
4. **homine amicō ūtor**, *I treat the man as a friend* (ABLATIVE).

I. *Accusative as Direct Object.*

[237, 238.]

LEARN § 52, 1. (Object-Accusative), with *a*, *b*, *d* (verbs of *feeling*, cognate accusative, and compounds).

a. The accusatives in *a* are usually rendered with a preposition in English, though sometimes a transitive verb may be supplied: as, **ridēre**, *to laugh at* or *ridicule*; **dolēre**, *to grieve at* or *lament*, &c.

b. With the compounds in *d* compare those of § 228, *d*; noticing that there is usually no difference in the translation of the two classes of verbs, which are generally transitive in English: as, **adire aliquem**, *to approach one*; **obstare alicui**, *to withstand one*.

Examples.

1. Africano¹ industria virtutem, virtus gloriam, gloria aemulos comparavit.
2. Tres jam copiarum partes Helvetii flumen traduxerant.
3. Saepe suas Liber² miratus est uvas.
4. Rastros non patietur humus.
5. Paulatim Germani Rhenum transire consueverant.
6. Posthac vitam³ tutiorem vivemus.
7. Joca tua plena facetiarum risimus satis.
8. Iram demetitur Deus suam ; clementiam profundit.
9. Suas quisque miseras dolet.
10. Nec te, juvenis memorande, silebo.

¹ Dative. ² A name of Bacchus. ³ Cognate accus. (§ 238).

Write in Latin.

1. A sudden tempest had delayed the ships.
2. A soft answer subdues¹ wrath.
3. Appius Claudius, the censor, brought² the Appian water into the city, and laid³ the Appian Way.
4. Hannibal had already crossed the Alps.
5. Cæsar led his forces across the Rhine.
6. They afterwards lived a safer life.
7. Poverty teaches all the arts.
8. My son complains⁴ [of] his fortune.
9. We shall go once [on] the last journey.
10. All men laugh-at folly : all men grieve-at misery.

¹ *frango.*

² *induco.*

³ *sterno.*

⁴ *queror.*³

2. Two Accusatives.

[239.]

§ 52, 2. with *a* and *c* (appositive and secondary object : R. 25) ; also *b* and *d* (compounds, and verbs of *hiding*).

Examples.

1. Te tua fata docebo.
2. Deos deasque omnes pacem oramus.
3. Quid me ista rogas ? Stoicos roga.
4. Iter omnes celabo.

5. Nonnulli utilia solum pueros docent, honesta negligunt.
6. Tu modo posce deos veniam.
7. Juvenes avum Numitorem regem salutabant.
8. Consul primus rogatus est sententiam.
9. Illud puer saepe admonitus erat.
10. Nos hoc diu celamur.
11. Helvetii pacem a Cæsare petierunt.

Write in Latin.

1. I will teach you your destiny.
2. We beseech^a peace [of] all the gods and goddesses.
3. I did not hide from you [my] friend's opinion.
4. Why do you ask me that? Ask your father.
5. The consul Nero¹ skilfully concealed his march [from] Hannibal.
6. The senate saluted Cicero [as] father of [his] country.
7. Lucius Junius Brutus was called the liberator of Rome.
8. The people elected Lucius Junius Brutus and Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus [as] first consuls.
9. An old herdsman in vain begged² [his] liberty [of] Vespasian.

¹ Put the name before the title.

² *oro*.

3. *Dative of Indirect Object.*

[225-230.]

§ 51, 1. and 2. with *a* and *d* (R. 14, 16); also *c*, *e*, *f*, reading carefully the classes of verbs in *a* and *b*.

a. These classes of verbs will be learned gradually, in the course of practice. Some of those in *a* (as *to favor*, *envy*, *serve*, &c.) seem to be transitive. In fact, however, the Latin retains a primary meaning which is lost in English: as, *invidere* (*to envy*) is *to look* [askance] *at one*; *servire* is *to be a slave*; *suadere* is *to make* [a thing] *pleasant to any one* (compare *suavis*, *sweet*). See Remark 1 (page 123), and the second paragraph of the Note on page 154 of the grammar.

b. The verbs in 2. *c* are to be compared with those of Giving, &c., in 1: though different in kind *as seen from the English point of view*, their construction in Latin is the same: thus in the sen-

tence *invidet mihi divitias*, *he envies me for my riches*, *divitiis* is the direct and *mihi* the indirect object of *invideo*, though the opposite is the case in English.

Examples.

1. Nil pictis timidus navita puppibus fedit.
2. Homines amplius oculis quam auribus credunt.
3. Nonnulli levissimam delectationem gravissimae utilitati anteponunt.
4. Dii immortales hoc tibi delictum ignoscent.
5. Servi dominis suis maledixerunt.
6. Milites integri et recentes fessis succurrunt.
7. Innocentiae nostrae, iudices, subvenite.
8. A bono filio matri semper parebitur.
9. A victore milite templis deorum parcendum est.
10. Uterque consul legioni illi indulserat.
11. Invidetur praestanti florentique fortunae.
12. Mihi numquam persuaderi potuit, animos esse mortales.

Write in Latin.

1. The ant gets itself food in summer-time.
2. The sun shall give thee signs.
3. You pardon yourself ; others you pardon not.
4. Men believe their eyes more than their ears.⁶
5. Patience heals¹ any² pain.
6. He told me every thing.
7. I mercifully spared the wretched man.
8. A faithful soldier serves the state.
9. The soldiers spared³ the temples of the gods.
10. Our men pressed-hard⁴ the flying Gauls.

(Passive.)

11. Your glory is envied.⁵
12. Liars are not believed.⁷
13. The temples of the gods were spared.
14. That age is not envied, but even favored.
15. The authority of the senate will be obeyed.
16. Clodius was distrusted by all good citizens.

¹ *medeor.*

² *quavis.*

³ *tempero.*

⁴ *insto.*

⁶ *auris.*

⁵ See Examples 10 and 19, on page 62.

⁷ *credo.*

4. *Genitive as Object.*

[219-223.]

§ 50, 4. *a, b, c* (verbs of *memory, feeling, &c.*), observing the peculiar genitives of *b*, and the construction of the Impersonals in *c*² and *d*; also *e* (*eg eo*).

Examples.

1. Senex veterum meminit dolorum.
2. Hunc puerum ignaviae suae neque pudet neque taedet.
3. Taedet me quotidianarum harum molestiarum.
4. At vos, Arcadii, caeci miserescite regis.
5. Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupidinis suae.
6. Suae quemque fortunae paenitet.
7. Arguitur Verres repetundarum.
8. Conjurati omnes capitis damnati sunt.
9. Reminiscere, inquit, pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.

Write in Latin.

1. Cato admonished the judges of the laws and of [their] oath.¹
2. We have-no-need² of your help.
3. I shall always remember this day and place.
4. The man is neither ashamed nor sorry for his cowardice.
5. The Athenians charged Socrates with impiety.
6. Forget slaughter and conflagration.
7. I lack not gold or silver.
8. You have charged me in-my-absence³ with a capital offence.⁵
9. Brutus condemned to death⁴ his two sons.

¹ religio.

² nihil indigere.

³ absens.

⁴ § 220, a.

⁵ res capitalis.

5. *Ablative as Object.*

[249.]

§ 54, 6. *d* (ablative with **utor**, &c. : R. 31).

Observe that these are in reality ablatives of *means*, and that they may generally be represented in English by a phrase with a preposition : as, **vescitur carne**, *he eats (feeds on) flesh*; **amicitiā meā abutuntur**, *they abuse (take advantage of) my friendship*.

Examples.

1. Impedimentis castrisque Romani potiti sunt.
2. Aliquando oculi suo munere non funguntur.
3. Omnibus in vita commodis unā cum amicis fruimur.
4. Frater meus omnibus vitae officiis fungitur.
5. Divitiis, nobilitate, viribus male utimini.
6. Britanni aere pro nummo utebantur.
7. Dii nec escis nec potionibus vescuntur.
8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescor, scribit Anacharsis Scythes.
9. Quo usque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientia nostra?

Write in Latin.

1. The ancient Germans fed¹ chiefly on milk and meat.
2. The Macedonian⁷ phalanx employed² very-long³ spears.
3. We deem⁴ Cicero worthy⁴ of the highest praise of eloquence.
4. A brave man bravely performs his duty.
5. A base man takes-advantage-of⁵ the ignorance or folly of others.
6. We enjoy the gifts of the earth, which therefore we call fruits and crops.
7. The soldiers of-the-legion⁶ used a shield, a javelin, and a short sword.

¹ vescor. ² utor. ³ praelongus. ⁴ dignor.¹ ⁵ abutor. ⁶ legionarius.
⁷ Macedonicus.

B.—Uses of Cases: 2. As Modifying Adjectives.

NOTE.—Some of the following are also to be classed among the adverbial uses of cases; but they are distinguished by being used to *complete the meaning* of the adjective on which they depend.

6. Genitive with Adjectives.

§ 50, 3. *b, c, d* (relative adjectives, genitive of *specification*, adjectives of *likeness*, &c.).

Compare the lists of adjectives in § 218, *d* with that in § 234, *d*. These adjectives, when followed by the genitive, have in fact become nouns (compare § 188: as, *cognatus Ciceronis*, *Cicero's kinsman*; *Ciceroni cognatus*, *kindred with Cicero*. [Compare such phrases as *meus aequalis*, *my contemporary*.])

Examples.

1. Galli sunt barbari, et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti.
2. Mens hominum nescia fati est, sortisque futurae.
3. Misi homines earum regionum peritissimos.
4. Habetis ducem memorem vestri oblitum sui.
5. Cassandrae inerat mens provida rerum futurarum.
6. Homini erat mens ferox, impotens irae.
7. Corpus patiens erat inediae, vigiliae, alioris.
8. Nostra vita insidiarum est et metus plena.
9. Nulla aetas virtutis feracior erat.
10. Orbus auxilii opumque ad te confugio.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is eager¹ for glory and greedy² of praise.
2. Most boys are careless³ about antiquities.
3. Catiline was able-to-endure⁴ fasting, watching, cold.
4. Gaul is full of Roman citizens.
5. Night alone was conscious of this deed.⁵
6. This boy is very like his father.
7. The consul was full of plans, sparing⁶ in words.
8. The river Rhine is common to Gaul and Germany.
9. Achilles, bravest of the Greeks, was ungovernable⁷ in wrath.

¹ cupidus.

² avidus.

³ negligens.

⁴ patiens.

⁵ facinus.

⁶ parcus.

⁷ impotens.

7. Dative of Nearness, &c.

[234.]

§ 51, 6. (words of *likeness, nearness, fitness, service or help*: R. 15), with *a, b* (use of prepositions), and *c* (*propior, &c.*).

Examples.

1. Amara sunt vitiosis, ac male viventibus, praecepta justitiae.
2. Auctumnus gravis est urbi agrisque.
3. Tyrannis aliena virtus semper formidolosa est.
4. Rex infidis consiliis semper est obnoxius.
5. Ista oratio dignitati tuae alienissima est.

6. Mantua, vae, miserae nimium vicina Cremonae.
7. Unicuique virtutum finitimum vitium est.
8. Ceteri filii superstites patri erant.
9. Is dolor communis erat tribus fratribus.
10. Haec virtus fructuosa vobis, mihi periculosa est.
11. Patres filiis suis nonnunquam sunt iniqui.
12. Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno.

Write in Latin.

1. Death is like a sleep.
 2. To a frail ship all winds are contrary.
 3. The death of Socrates was harmonious¹ with his life.
 4. I have noticed a harbor fit² for our ships.
 5. Livius was of-the-same-age³ with Ennius.
 6. Not even the gods — so they boast — are a-match-for⁴ the Swabians.⁵
 7. Radishes⁶ are bad⁷ for the teeth, says Pliny.⁹
 8. This thing is easy for me, [but] hard for you.
 9. Simple food is good⁸ for children.
 10. The speech of Marius was very pleasing to the people.
- ¹ *consentaneus*. ² *idoneus*. ³ *aequalis*. ⁴ *par*. ⁵ *Suevi*.
⁶ *raphanus*, i. M. ⁷ *inimicus*. ⁸ *utilis*.
⁹ *ait Plinius*.

8. Ablative of Want.

§ 54, 1. *c*, *d* (adjectives of freedom and want, with ^[243.] *opus* and *usus*: R. 28).

Examples.

1. Urbs nuda praesidio poscit opem.
2. Animus per somnum sensibus et curis vacuus est.
3. Nos plerique patriae, sed omnes famā atque fortunis expertes sumus.
4. Auctoritate tua mihi opus est.
5. Etiam sapienti amicis opus est.
6. Priusquam incipias consulto, et ubi consulueris mature facto opus est.
7. Exempla nobis opus sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. What Roman is free from this dishonor¹?
2. The army was in lack² of all necessities.
3. The common-people were-in-terror [when] deprived of tribunes.
4. Cato, said his friends, was clear³ of every human fault.
5. This counsel is foreign to⁴ the dignity of the empire.
6. The senate was bereft⁵ of counsel and authority.
7. I have need⁶ of your help.

¹ *dedecus.* ² *egens.* ³ *vacuus.* ⁴ *alienus a.* ⁵ *orbis.* ⁶ *opus.*

9. *Ablative of Source.*

§ 54, 2. *a* (participles of birth and origin : R. 29).
[244.]

Examples.

1. Ti. Gracchus, matre nobilissima genitus.
2. Nate deā, quae nunc animo sententia surgit?
3. Natus erat pulcra origine Cæsar.
4. Consul loco obscuro tenuique fortuna ortus.
5. Non sanguine humano sed stirpe divina satus es.

Write in Latin.

1. Æneas was son¹ of Anchises and Venus.
2. Thou art sprung² not from human blood, but from divine stock.
3. The youth was born of a most noble mother.
4. The consul Marius was sprung from an obscure place and slender fortune.

¹ *natus.*

² *ortus.*

10. *Ablative of Comparison.*

§ 54, 5 (ablative after comparatives : R. 32), with
[247.]
a, c (use of *quam*, construction of *plus, etc.*).

Examples.

1. Honesta mors turpi vitā potior est.
2. Quaedam remedia ipsis periculis sunt graviora.
3. Nihil inter homines rarius perfectō oratore inventum est.

4. Humana omnia inferiora virtute ducimus.
5. Non ego hac nocte longiorem vidi.
6. Punico bello secundo nullum neque majus neque periculosius Romani gessere.
7. Saepe dixi Graecam linguam locupletiore esse quam Latinam.
8. Hujus orationes exiliores sunt et redolentes magis antiquitatem quam aut Laelii aut Scipionis.
9. Hispanorum non plus quam quattuor milium effugerunt.
10. Plus septingenti aut in proelio aut in castris capti sunt.
11. Spatium est non amplius pedum DC.
12. Apes nunquam plus unum regem patiuntur.
13. Amplius sunt sex menses (*it is more than, &c.*).
14. Bella fortius quam felicius gerebat.
15. Consilium magis honestum quam utile.

Write in Latin.

1. The earth is larger than the moon, the sun than the earth.
2. Ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge.
3. From¹ the tongue of the old Nestor, says² Homer, flowed speech sweeter than honey.
4. A base escape from death³ is worse than any⁴ death.
5. All riches we hold inferior to wisdom.
6. These things are harder than-one-would-think.⁵
7. In this march the Romans suffered more than usual⁶ from hunger and cold.
8. You have rendered⁷ no man more kindnesses than to me.
9. This thing has in it more joy⁸ than grief.⁸
10. In the battle at-Cannæ the Romans lost more than 40,000 men.
11. The speech of the consul was more true than pleasing⁹ to the people.
12. A pestilence more threatening than destructive⁹ fell¹⁰ upon the city.
13. There is nothing stupider¹¹ than a stupid laugh.

¹ ex. ² ait. ³ Genitive. ⁴ omnis. ⁵ opinio. ⁶ solitum. ⁷ tribuo.
⁸ Comparative (§ 192). ⁹ perniciosus. ¹⁰ incido. ¹¹ ineptus.

11. Ablative of Means and Supply.

[248.]

§ 54, 6. (accompaniment, means, and instrument : R. 30), with *c* (words of *filling*, &c.).

a. All the words under § 248, *c* are either participles, like **abundans**, **completus**; or were originally participles, as **plenus**. When used as *pure adjectives*, they take the genitive under § 218.

b. The ablatives under Rule 30 (p. 163) are of various origin, and must be translated according to the English idiom: as, **dignus**, *worthy of*; **praeditus**, *gifted with*, &c.

Examples.

1. Verris domus plena erat raptis ornamentis.
2. Exercitum Ti. Sempronius domum reportavit plenissimum praeda.
3. Erant plena laetitia et gratulatione omnia.
4. Alveus Tiberis completus erat rudibus.
5. Pater ille tuus florebat omni genere virtutis.
6. Sum pecore et multā dives tellure.
7. Macte virtute diligentiaque esto.
8. Boni homines metuunt vitam plenam et confertam voluptatibus.

Write in Latin.

1. Twelve ships were laden¹ with the spoil.
2. The house of Cræsus was full of treasures.²
3. The city was full of grief and lamentation.³
4. Sulla advanced with his army into a region abounding⁴ in all good things.
5. Corinth was the richest city of Greece in pictures,⁵ statues,⁶ and gold.

¹ *onustus*. ² *divitiae*. ³ *luctus*. ⁴ *abundans*. ⁵ *tabula*. ⁶ *signum*.

12. Ablative of Difference.

[250.]

§ 54, 6. *e*, with Remark (degree of difference).

Notice that §§ 247, (ablative of comparison) and 250 (ablative of difference), expressing different relations, may be used together with the same adjective: as, **multo divitior Crasso**, *much richer than Crassus*.

Examples.

1. Quo occultius est periculum, hoc difficilius vitatur.
2. Recte non credis de numero militum : ipso dimidio¹ plus scripsit Clodia.
3. Hibernia dimidio minor est, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia.
4. Iter alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius.
5. Quanto diutius abest, magis cupio tanto.
6. Galli segnius sequebantur, quanto longius ab domo trahebantur.
7. Romani duobus milibus plures erant quam Sabini.
8. Decem post diebus pugnatum est.
9. Catilina paucis ante diebus eruperat ex urbe.
10. Sol multis partibus major atque amplior est, quam terra universa.

¹ full half.

Write in Latin.

1. Cicero was six years older than Cæsar.
2. The empire of Rome was much more powerful and lasting than [that] of Athens.
3. The more cautiously you go, the sooner⁷ you will arrive.
4. The greater severity he showed,¹ the more numerous² were the mobs.
5. Veii was³ about twenty miles distant⁴ from Rome.
6. The battle of Cannæ⁴ was fought seventeen years before⁵ [that] of Zama.⁶

¹ utor.² creber.³ abesse a.⁴ Cannensis.⁵ Insert quam.⁶ Zamensis.⁷ citius.

C. — Uses of Cases : Miscellaneous.

13. Adverbial Accusative.

[240.]

§ 52, 3. with *a*, *b*, *c* (use with intransitive verbs, adverbial phrases, Greek accusative : R. 24).

NOTE. — The accusatives under *a* are usually translated as adverbs (see examples). Those under *c* are mostly poetical, and should be avoided in writing Latin prose.

Examples.

1. Suevi maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt.
2. Tuam vicem magnopere gaudeo.
3. Nostram vicem indignaris.
4. Vir erat cetera egregius.
5. Id temporis eos venturos esse dixeram.
6. Cum esset illud aetatis, imperator factus est.
7. Dexterum genu lapide ictus est.
8. Os humerosque deo similis.
9. Feminae Germanorum nudae erant brachia et lacertos.

Write in Latin.

1. The Suevi live for-the-greatest-part¹ on milk and meat.
2. I am often sorry on your account.²
3. At that time Romulus was king.
4. A man at that age ought to be more discreet³ than daring.⁴
5. Hannibal was severely wounded right in the thigh⁵ with a dart.⁶
6. They bind their [own] heads with wreaths of-myrtle.
7. The commander exhorted his [men] at-length.⁷
8. The maidens put on a long robe.

¹ plurimum. ² vicis. ³ prudens. ⁴ audax (comparative).
⁵ adversum femur. ⁶ tragŭla. ⁷ multa.

14. Accusative of Exclamation.

§ 52, 4. a.

[240, d.]

Examples.

1. Heu dementia hominum !
2. Beatos quondam duces Romanos !
3. In balneis delituerunt : testes egregios !
4. Huncine¹ hominem ! hancine impudentiam, judices !
 hanc audaciam !
5. O fallacem hominum spem, fragilemque fortunam, et inanes nostras contentiones !

Write in Latin.

1. O the folly² of man, and [his] uncertain fortune, and our idle³ hopes !

¹ See Gr. p. 52, Note.

² dementia.

6. The name of this disease is avarice.
 7. In this man was a manly soul.²
 8. My letter will do³ you no good.³
 9. We used to give him the nickname⁴ of sluggard.
 10. Cæsar had been-present-at⁵ many battles.
- ² ingenium. ³ prosum. ⁴ cognomen. ⁵ intersum.

16. Dative of Service.

§ 51, 5 (purpose or end: R. 20).^[233.]

The Dative (of service) under § 51, 5. may sometimes be translated as *predicate nominative*; but more commonly with the preposition *OF*. It is sometimes called the *Predicate Dative*.

Examples.

1. Mihi ea res curae erit.
2. Magno malo est hominibus avaritia.
3. Is fuit et mihi et liberis meis magno usui.
4. Sic et vobis honori, et amicis utilitati eritis.
5. Ea res magno tibi erit impedimento.
6. Ea gens mihi semper odio erit.
7. Tua amicitia maximo mihi erat detrimento.
8. Testimonio hujus rei sunt clarissimi poëtae.
9. Nos diis immortalibus curae sumus.
10. Consul Hannibali ludibrio erat.
11. Plerumque Gallis brevis nostrae contemptui est.
12. Veteribus Romanis divitiae oneri miseriaeque fuere.

Write in Latin.

1. This book was of great service¹ to me.
2. Cæsar left two legions as a guard² to the camp.
3. That thing will be a great hindrance³ to you.
4. We are the care of the immortal gods.
5. We regard this as a fault in Cicero.
6. For whose advantage⁴ is this?
7. The Germans came to our relief.⁵

¹ usus.

² praesidium.

³ impedimentum.

⁴ bonum.

⁵ auxilium.

17. *Dative of Reference.*§ 51, 7 (^[235.]*dativus commodi et incommodi*).

The Dative (of reference) in § 235, merely expresses a *more remote relation* than those in § 226 (indirect object) : compare the first examples under each.

Examples.

1. Quis huic rei testis est ?
2. Domus pulcra dominis aedificatur, non muribus.
3. E bestiarum corporibus multa remedia morbis et vulneribus eligimus.
4. Non mihi ex cujusquam amplitudine aut praesidia periculis aut adjumenta honoribus quaero.
5. Duo milites nequaquam visu ac specie aestimantibus pares.
6. Sita Ortygia est in dextra parte portum magnum Syracusarum intransitibus.
7. Hic mihi quisquam misericordiam nominat ?
8. Quid sibi vult haec oratio ?
9. Ova alia sunt candida, ut columbis, perdicibus ; alia pallida, ut aquaticis ; alia punctis distincta, ut meleagridum ; alia rubri coloris, ut phasianis.

Write in Latin.

1. I seek for myself no defence against danger¹ or helps to honors.¹
2. The Germans chose them² a place for an abode.
3. A good man seeks wealth not for himself only, but for his children and friends.
4. The calamity of the Sicilians came-before³ my eyes.
5. [Is it] for Hannibal [that] you have saved this city ?
6. Such⁴ lamentation⁵ stirs the temper of the fiery⁶ youth.
7. The wood strews⁷ you wild⁸ leaves⁹ and acorns.
8. We cull¹⁰ many remedies for sickness and wounds.
9. Anticyra is situated¹¹ on the left as you enter the Corinthian gulf.

¹ Dative.² sibi.³ obversor.¹⁴ tantus.⁵ comploratio.⁶ ferox.⁷ s'argo.⁸ agrestis.⁹ frons.¹⁰ eligo.¹¹ situs.

18. *Ablative of Separation.*

§ 54, 1. (verbs meaning *remove, deprive, &c.*), with *a* (compounds), and *f* (*egeo, indigeo*, with genitive). For the translation, see examples.

Examples.

1. L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit.
2. Usu urbis prohibere peregrinos sane inhumanum est.
3. Apud veteres Germanos quemcumque mortalium arcere tecto¹ nefas habebatur.
4. Cedo vobis possessione hortorum.
5. Ea philosophia spoliatur nos iudicio, privat approbatione.
6. Ne ab obsidibus quidem iram belli hostis abstinuit.
7. Ego te culpā absolvo, supplicio non libero.
8. Ciceroni aquā atque igni interdicitur.
9. Caesaris oratio Helvetios ea spe dejecit.
10. Illa lex tyrannos reditu semper arcebit.
11. Adventus peditatus equites metu levaverat.
12. Desine, quaeso, istis laudationibus.

¹ i.e. to turn any stranger from the door.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii, cast down from that hope, desisted from their attempt.
2. I am quite free from fever, and feel finely.¹
3. The engines² presently stripped³ the wall of its defenders.
4. Cæcilius had cheated⁴ Varius of a large sum-of-money.
5. The barbarians, having caught-sight-of⁵ the standards afar-off,⁶ desist from the attack.
6. Cæsar departed from⁷ Italy, and led his army into Gaul.
7. Sulla laid-down⁸ the dictatorship.⁹
8. The engines drove the enemy from the walls.¹⁰

¹ *belle se habere.*

² *nudo.*¹

³ *tormenta* (plur.).

⁴ *frando.*¹

⁵ *conspicor.*¹

⁶ *procul.*

⁷ *ex.*

⁸ *se abdicare.*

⁹ *dictatura.*

¹⁰ *moenia.*

19. *Ablative of Cause.*

§ 54, 3. with *a, b, c* (certain verbs and adjectives ;
ob or *propter* ; *causa, gratia*).

Examples.

1. Ser. Tullius regnare coepit non jussu sed voluntate atque concessu civium.
2. Quidam morbo aliquo et sensus stupore suavitatem cibi non sentiunt.
3. Quod benevolentia fit, id odio factum¹ criminaris.
4. Multi homines officia deserunt mollitia animi.
5. Quam multi luce indigni sunt, et tamen dies oritur !
6. Amplissimis honoribus dignus erat adulescens Scipio.
7. Ignavia ac stultitia saepe fit² ut res maximae dilabantur.
8. Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.
9. Non te Romanus populus illo magistratu dignatus est.

¹ as being done.² happens.

Write in Latin.

1. Tarquin, relying¹ on [his] victories, was-wanton in insolence.
2. For the sake of the republic, I accuse Lucius Catiline.
3. He wept at the grief² of his friends.
4. The Roman people held³ the young Scipio worthy³ of the highest honors.
5. I judge⁴ him most unworthy of every honor.
6. Do this for my sake.
7. Ducks delight⁵ chiefly in marshy⁶ places.

¹ *subnixus*.² *dolor*.³ *dignor*.¹⁴ *aestimo*.¹⁵ *delector*.¹⁶ *paluster*.20. *Ablative of Means.*

§ 54, 6. (accompaniment, means, instrument), with
a, b, (use of *cum*).

Examples.

1. Venatio et¹ cibi genere et quotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae vires alit.
2. Non viribus aut celeritate corporum res maximae geruntur.
3. Dei providentiā mundus administratur.
4. Summis suppliciis fures afficiuntur.
5. Caelum hominibus virtute recluditur.
6. Pax ornata venit ramo felicitis olivae.
7. Galli huic terrae igni ferroque minitantur.
8. Luctantes ventos vasto rex Aeolus antro
Imperio premit, ac vinclis et carcere frenat.
9. Frondibus et stipula tauri pascuntur, et herba.
10. Armis munimenta, non munimentis arma, tuta esse debent.
11. Nutritur vento, vento restinguitur ignis ;
Lenis alit flammas, grandior aura necat.

¹ both.

Write in Latin.

1. We accomplish more by wisdom than by force.
2. Rome fell by her own strength.
3. Bulls defend themselves with [their] horns, boars with [their] tusks.
4. The priest's head was covered with a long mantle.
5. Great things are done¹ not by strength or speed of body, but by counsel and valor.
6. Links of-steel² are worn-out³ by constant use.

¹ gero.³

² ferreus.

³ contero.³

21. *Ablative of Manner and Quality.*

[251.]

§ 54, 7. with *a*, *b* (description ; manner with *cum*) ; compare § 215 & *b* (genitive of quality).

Examples.

1. Vir acerrimo ingenio civitatem tum regebat.
2. Campi suapte natura humentes inutiles sunt.

3. Regina ad templum formā pulcherrima Dido incessit.
4. Sabini brachio laevo gemmatos magna specie anulos gerebant.
5. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis.
6. Duo viri egregia virtute consulatum eo anno petebant.
7. Haec res immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit.
8. Galli eadem celeritate ad nostra castra contenderunt.
9. Horridiores sunt Britanni in pugna adspectu ; capilloque sunt promisso, atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius.
10. Agesilāus et staturā fuit humili, et corpore exiguo, et claudus altero pede.

Write in Latin.

1. The barbarians were of vast size¹ of body (plur.).
2. Three Graces, of exquisite² beauty, wait-on³ Venus.
3. A mountain of great height overhangs⁴ the town.
4. Cæsar was a man of extraordinary force⁵ of intellect,⁶ and of remarkable skill⁷ in-war.⁸
5. A giant of monstrous stature, whose⁹ name was Polyphemus, devoured¹⁰ the companions of Ulysses.

¹ *magnitudo.* ² *eximius.* ³ *comitor.*¹ ⁴ *impendeo.*² ⁵ *vis.*
⁶ *ingenium.* ⁷ *scientia.* ⁸ *rei bellicae.* ⁹ Dative. ¹⁰ *devoro*¹

22. Ablative of Price.

§ 54, 8. with *a* (genitive of indefinite value : R. II ;
 [252.]
 compare § 215. c).

Examples.

1. Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit.
2. Eriphyle auro viri sui vitam vendidit.
3. Hunc fundum maxima pecunia mercatus sum.
4. Duobus milibus nummûm hunc equum emi.
5. Ea Poenis victoria multo sanguine stetit.
6. Tritici modius duobus sestertiis veniit.
7. Domum meam ternis sestertiis locavi.
8. Mea mihi conscientia pluris est quam omnium sermo.

Write in Latin.

1. I have sold my house for fifteen talents.
2. Virtue is not salable¹ for gold or gems.⁵
3. That oration cost² him a great-deal-of labor.
4. Mean men are bribed³ with money; the ambitious⁴ with honors and vain glory.

¹ *venalis*.

² *sto*.¹

³ *corrumpo*.³

⁴ *ambitiosus*.

⁵ *gemma*.

23. *Ablative of Specification.*

[253.]

§ 54, 9. (that in respect to which; in accordance with which).

Examples.

1. Specie urbs libera est, non re verā.
2. Ex omnibus filiis natu minimus Marcus erat.
3. Scelere par es Marco, industriā inferior.
4. Iste servus aeger est pedibus.
5. Altero oculo captus erat Hannibal.
6. Tota mente et omnibus artibus contremuit.
7. Omnes Galli lingua institutis legibus inter se differunt.
8. Belgae omnibus Gallis virtute praestant.
9. Latini Trojanis studio ac fide erga regem cessere.
10. Non tu quidem tota re sed temporibus erras.

Write in Latin.

1. In glory Cicero was far inferior to Cæsar,¹ but superior in eloquence and wisdom.
2. In laws and language the Greeks widely² differ from the Romans, but in warlike³ glory they are nearly equal.
3. My brother is lame of the left⁴ foot.
4. The Spartans excelled⁵ all the other Greeks⁶ in fidelity and reverence to the laws.⁷
5. The Germans were a race of tall⁸ stature, fair complexion, blue¹⁰ eyes, courage in war,⁷ and great bodily⁹ strength.

¹ Ablative.

² *multum*.

³ *rei bellicae* (gen.).

⁴ *laevus*.

⁵ *antecello*.³

⁶ Dative.

⁷ Genitive.

⁸ *grandis*.

⁹ *corporis* (gen.).

¹⁰ *caeruleus*.

24. *Locative Ablative.*

[254.]

§ 54, 10. (idiomatic expressions), with *b* (list of verbs and verbals under this use).

Examples.

1. Castra opportunis locis posita erant.
2. Terra marique res maximae gestae sunt.
3. Meliore loco res nostrae sunt.
4. Parentis loco habebatur patris amicus.
5. Reliquis oppidi partibus acriter pugnatum est.
6. De amicitia alio libro dictum est.
7. Vehementer animo angebar.
8. Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent.
9. Urbe tota gemitus fit.
10. Caesar nuntios tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit.
11. Menippus tota Asia illis temporibus disertissimus erat.
12. Adventu Caesaris in Galliam, Helvetii bellum parabant.
13. Bello Punico secundo, tota Italia Hannibal paene potiebatur.
14. Extrema pueritia, Caesar Cinnae filiam in matrimonium duxit.

Write in Latin.

1. At the death of Cæsar grief and terror prevailed¹ throughout the city.
2. The Romans carried-on² war by land and sea.
3. At this news I was glad at heart.
4. I regard³ my father's brother in the light⁴ of a parent.
5. Cæsar pitched⁵ his camp on favorable ground.⁴
6. Your affairs are in excellent case.⁴
7. This subject⁶ is discussed⁷ in the third book.

¹ *existo.*³² *gero.*³³ *habeo.*²⁴ *locus.*⁵ *pono.*³⁶ *de hac re.*⁷ *dissero*³ (impers.).

25. *Predicate Genitive.*

[214.]

§ 50, 1. *c, d* (for predicate appositive; use of phrase or clause), with Remark (*sapientis, &c.*).

Examples.

1. Omnia quae mulieris fuerant matrimonio viri fiebant.
2. Ego totus Pompeii sum.
3. Hic versus Plauti non est.
4. Thebae populi Romani belli jure factae sunt.
5. Non gloriam meam laborem illorum faciam.
6. Albani dicionis alienae facti sunt.
7. Hoc non est iudicii mei.
8. Marcellus id nec juris nec potestatis suae esse dixit.
9. Boni imperatoris est hostium consilia antecapere.
10. Ut Athenae et Lacedaemon Atheniensium Lacedaemoniorumque causam conditae sunt, omniaque quae sunt in his urbibus eorum populorum recte esse dicuntur, sic quaecumque sunt in omni mundo deorum atque hominum putanda sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. All the property¹ of the father became the son's by inheritance.²
2. That oration is not Cicero's.
3. After the battle of Cannae, Capua became [the possession] of the Carthaginians.
4. The kingdom was [the share] of Numitor; the wealth,³ of Amulius.
5. That is not [an affair] for your decision.⁴
6. Desire⁵ belongs more to the young⁶ than to the old.

¹ *bona* (plur.).

² *hereditas*.

³ *pecunia*.

⁴ *iudicium*.

⁵ *libido*.

⁶ *adulescens*.

26. *Relations of Time and Space.*

[256-258.]

§ 55, 1. with *b* (relations of time); 3. with *a, b, c, d* (relations of place, with locative forms) and *f* (locative use of ablative).

Compare the Note, p. 178, (relations of Place) with § 152, (on prepositions) and the note on p. 145 (on the use of Cases).

Examples.

1. Proxima nocte Caesar castra movit.
2. Tota aestate vos expectamus.
3. Quadraginta annis Alba stetit.
4. Frater meus decimo aetatis anno Romā abiit.
5. Vere diffugiunt nives.
6. Primo silentio noctis Tiburtes Romam venerunt.
7. Tertia vigilia Caesar castris excessit.
8. Heroicis aetatibus non multi florebant philosophi.
9. Per decem dies Latini ludos fecerunt.
10. Sum totos dies cum Marco, noctisque saepenumero partem.
11. Hanc urbem decem aestates continuas circumsedimus.
12. Triduo servus miserrime peribit.
13. Paucis diebus ad te veniam.
14. Altero et tricesimo anno aetatis suae Galba mortuus est.
15. Gaia testamentum fecit, atque his paucis diebus obiit.
16. Ab Africa ad Siciliam Aeneas navigavit.
17. Consul legiones per Italiam in Galliam duxit.
18. Ex Hispania per Galliam in Italiam exercitum duxit Hannibal.
19. Servos Romae, Tarenti, Athenis, Veiis, Karthagini, Sardibus alui.
20. Numa Curibus habitabat ; sed postea Romae quadraginta annos regnavit.
21. Delo Rhodum pater meus navigavit.
22. Milites Albae constitere, in oppido munito.
23. Archias Antiochiae vixit, celeberrima quondam urbe.
24. Nunc domi sum : cras rus ibo.
25. Frater meus mox rure domum redibit.
26. M. Regulus Karthagine Romam de pace missus est.
27. Multa corpora fessorum vulneratorumque humi jacebant.
28. Maximam domi militiaeque gloriam Cn. Pompeius adulescens erat adsecutus.
29. Is dies erat ante diem sextum (A. D. vi.) Kalendas Martias (see § 259, e).

Write in Latin.

1. In winter and summer the Arabs roam-over¹ the plains.
2. At the beginning of summer the consul passed² into Spain.
3. Agamemnon scarcely in ten years took one city.
4. Within three days I will finish³ the work.
5. Cæsar moves [his] camp, and in about fifteen days arrives at the bounds⁴ of the Belgæ.
6. I was yesterday at Cæsar's house (*apud Caesarem*).
7. That most illustrious⁵ commander had strengthened⁶ the republic at home and abroad by his victories.
8. Brutus learned philosophy at Athens, eloquence in Rhodes.
9. My sisters are passing⁷ their life in the country.⁸
10. I have lived in Rome, Carthage, Athens, Sardis, and Corinth; and have now been¹¹ three years at home in Gaul.
11. Amynder sent ambassadors both to Rome to the Senate, and to the Scipios in Asia.⁹
12. Cicero after [his] exile sailed¹⁰ from Greece to Italy, and remained a few days at Brundisium; then, through friendly cities, returned to Rome.

¹ *peragro*.² *transeo*. ³ *perficio*.⁴ *finis*. ⁵ *clarus*.
⁶ *augeo*.⁷ *ago*.⁸ § 258, *d*. ⁹ Accusative. ¹⁰ *navigo*.¹¹ Present.

D. — Use of Moods and Tenses.

27. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.

§ 57, 2. with *a* (classification: R. 43); 3, 4, 6 (hortatory, optative, dubitative); compare § 311. *a*, *b* (potential, hypothetical); and § 269. *a* (prohibitions).

Examples.

1. Haec sint falsa sane: invidiosa certe non sunt.
2. Malim te esse bonum quam videri.
3. Hoc vero sine ulla dubitatione confirmaverim, eloquentiam esse rem unam omnium difficillimam.
4. Me quidem eo proficiscentem haud sane quis facile retraxerit.

5. Jam vero quis audeat dicere vera omnia esse somnia?
6. Quid hoc homine faciatis?
7. Felix vivas, moriare felix!
8. Valeant cives mei, valeant! Sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati. Stet haec urbs praeclara. Tranquilla republica cives mei perfruantur.
9. Si certum est facere, facias; verum ne post conferas culpam in me.
10. Nihil ignoveris, nihil gratiae causa feceris, misericordia commotus ne sis.
11. Isto bono utare dum adsit; cum absit, ne requiras.
12. Vendat¹ aedes vir bonus propter aliqua vitia, quae ipse norit ceteri ignorent: pestilentes sint¹ et habeantur salubres; ignoretur¹ in omnibus cubiculis apparere serpentes;² male materiatae, ruinosae — sed hoc, praeter dominum, nemo sciat.¹ Quaero, si hoc emptoribus venditor non dixerit, num id injuste fecerit?

¹ Render these subjunctives by "suppose," &c.² vermin.

Write in Latin.

1. Let the advantage¹ of the commonwealth prevail.²
2. Let us accordingly³ bring up⁴ [our] child with every indulgence.
3. Plant⁵ no tree, Varus, sooner⁶ than the sacred vine.
4. This thou shalt do:⁷ this thou shalt not do.⁸
5. Let him write to me what he has done.⁸
6. I could not easily say⁸ that this is better.
7. I wish⁹ [that] Athens may conquer.⁹
8. This thing may [perhaps] seem absurd¹⁰ to you.
9. Some-one¹¹ may [perhaps] think that I am-wrong.¹²
10. No one can easily restrain Cæsar from victory.¹³
11. I would rather¹⁴ be at home than abroad.¹⁵
12. Suppose your friend should fall sick¹⁶ or die, what will you do?
13. Let justice be done [though] heaven fall.

¹ utilitas. ² valeo.² ³ proinde. ⁴ nutrio.⁴ ⁵ sero.³ ⁶ prius.⁷ Fut. imperat. ⁸ Perf. subj. ⁹ Pres. subj. ¹⁰ absurdus.¹¹ quispiam. ¹² erro¹ (infin.). ¹³ Compare Latin example 4 (above).¹⁴ malim.¹⁵ foris.¹⁶ in morbum cadere.

28. Historical Infinitive.

§ 57, 8. *h.*: R. 40. ^[275.] (For other uses of the Infinitive, see page 114.)

Examples.

1. Brevi spatio hostes ex omnibus partibus decurrere, lapides in vallum conjicere ; nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum mittere : ut quaeque pars castrorum premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre.

2. Circumspectare tum patriciorum vultus plebei, et inde libertatis captare auram, unde servitutem timuerant. Primores patrum odisse decemviros, odisse plebem.

3. Interea Catilina Romae multa simul moliri : consuli insidias tendere, parare incendia, opportuna loca armatis hominibus obsidere, ipse cum telo esse, item alios jubere ; dies noctisque festinare, vigilare, neque insomniis neque labore fatigari.

Write in Latin.

1. Every single¹ article-of-plate² that³ [man would] take into [his] hands, praise, admire.

2. And now not even the back⁴ was spared :⁵ some⁶ were beaten⁷ with rods,⁸ others brought to the block.⁹

3. Under the dominion¹⁰ of Lucius Sulla, everybody [would] rob, carry-off, covet¹¹ — one man a house, another lands ;¹² the victors kept¹³ no limit¹⁴ or restraint,¹⁵ [but] did shocking¹⁶ and cruel [things] among the citizens.

¹ *unumquodque*.

² *vas*.

³ *iste*.

⁴ Ablative.

⁵ *abstineo* (impers.).

⁶ *alius*.

⁷ *verbero*.¹

⁸ *virga*.

⁹ *securi subicere*.

¹⁰ *dominatus*.⁴

¹¹ *rapio, traho, cupio*.³

¹² *ager*.

¹³ *habeo*.

¹⁴ *modus*.

¹⁵ *modestia*.

¹⁶ *foedus*.

29. Sequence of Tenses.

§ 58, 9, 10. ^[286.] (tenses of the Subjunctive, and rule for Sequence of Tenses), with the classification as given in the Remark (Gr. p. 200), which is to be carefully studied, as well as the examples above.

Observe that the general rule for the sequence of tenses is the same as in English; but in Latin a dependent verb is put in a past tense by this rule, when either the principal or a subordinate verb, on which it depends, is in the past, even though the construction may be otherwise in English (see example 7, below).

NOTE. — The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive under this rule may express *a relatively future action* (see § 307, *f*), as representing in indirect discourse the future and future perfect indicative: as, **si discessisset** = *if he shall depart (shall have departed)* (CÆSAR, B. G. i. 45).

Examples.

1. Non possunt multi rem amittere, ut non plures secum in eandem calamitatem trahant.

2. Rex adeo saevus erat, ut filio suo non temperaret.

3. Mos est hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere.

4. Quorum haec est condicio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum iis fruuntur, quorum se amicitiae dederint.

5. Singulas naves nostri expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero ad terram pervenerint.

6. Cicero se ex patria excessisse dicit, ut bellum civile averteret.

7. Tantum profecisse videmur, ut a Graecis ne verborum quidem copia vinceremur.¹

8. Omnem coetum hominum vitat, quasi omnibus invisus sit.²

¹ Translate by the present tense.

² Translate by the past tense (see § 312, R.).

Write in Latin.

1. I write that I may admonish you.

2. I wrote yesterday that I might inform you.

3. He runs-away¹ as if he were² frightened.

4. He undertook this task as if he were a good workman.³

5. I will come to-morrow to-see⁴ you.

6. We went out yesterday to see⁴ the battle.

7. I have toiled⁵ so-long⁶ that I am completely tired-out.⁷

¹ *effugio*.³

² Present subj.

³ *faber*.

⁴ *ut*, with subj.

⁵ *laboro*.¹

⁶ *tam diu*.

⁷ *defessus*.

8. Cæsar was so merciful⁶ that not even [his] beaten⁷ enemies⁸ feared him.

9. This man is so⁹ just that no one ever feared¹⁰ to confide in him.

⁶ *clemens*. ⁷ *victus*. ⁸ *inimicus*. ⁹ *adeo*. ¹⁰ Perfect subj.

E.—Subordinate Constructions.

30. Conditional Clauses.

§ 59: general definition, with 1. *a*, *b* (Protasis and Apodosis), and the Classification on page 216 (committing to memory the models, with their meaning); also 3. *a*, *b*, and 4. *a*, *b*, *c* (present, past, and future conditions).

N. B.—Notice the exceptional use of the Indicative in the apodosis *contrary to fact*, as given in 308, *b*, *c*; comparing these with § 311, *c*, and the Remark.

Examples.

1. Nisi me animus fallit, haud multum a me aberit infortunium.

2. Hoc si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debeat, etiam si vim adhibere non possit?

3. Si scripserim ad fratrem meum, Romam statim properet.

4. Si calamus mihi adesset, scriberem ad Marcum.

5. Sapientia non expeteretur si nihil efficeret.

6. Servi mei si me isto pacto metuerent, ut te metuunt omnes cives tui, domum meam relinquendam putarem.

7. Si te parentes timerent atque odissent tui, neque eos ulla ratione placare posses, ab eorum oculis aliquo concederes.

8. Si meum consilium auctoritasque valuisset, tu hodie egeres, nos liberi essemus, respublica non tot duces et exercitus amisisset.

9. Mens prope uti ferrum est: si exerceas, conteritur; nisi exerceas, rubiginem contrahit.

10. Nulla est igitur excusatio peccati, si amici causā peccaveris.

Write in Latin.

1. If you should see your father to-morrow, what should you say?

2. If I had not known that you would come, I should have written.

3. I should not have gone⁴ yesterday, if I had known.

4. I should go to-day if you wished.

5. I should go to-morrow if you should be ill.¹

6. Hannibal would not have fought at² Zama if he could have helped³ [it].

7. I would not have gone⁴ unless Cæsar had ordered.

8. You can always do that if you try.⁵

9. If it is allowed,⁶ I shall be-glad-to⁷ speak.

10. If it would be allowed, I should be-glad-to⁷ speak.

¹ *aegrotō.*¹

² *ad.*

³ *defugio.*³

⁴ *proficiscor.*³

⁵ *conor.*¹

⁶ *licet* (fut.).

⁷ *libenter* (adv.).

31. *Disguised Conditions.*

§ 60, general remark, also 1. with *a* (usual forms of disguised conditions).^[310.]

Examples.

1. Nemo unquam, sine magna spe immortalitatis, se pro patria offerret ad mortem.

2. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria.

3. Tum ego: "Etiamne, si te in Capitolium faces ferre vellet?" "Nunquam" inquit "voluisset."

4. Omnes labores contemnendo fiunt tolerabiles.

5. Nec ego Seriphius nec tu Atheniensis clarus unquam fuisses.

6. Illo tempore aliter sensisses.

7. Neque agricultura neque frugum perceptio et conservatio sine hominum opera esse potuisset.

8. Magnitudo animi, remota a communitate conjunctioneque hominum, feritas sit quaedam et immanitas.

9. Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset.

Write in Latin.

1. At another time I might think¹ so.
2. Without friendship no man's life could be truly called happy.
3. [If he were] intending-to-return² home, he would not delay³ so long in business.⁴
4. A life remote from the society of men and the protection of laws would justly⁵ be reckoned⁶ wild⁷ and dreary.⁸
5. Without help of the Gauls, Cæsar could not have overcome⁹ the Germans.
6. In extreme poverty¹⁰ old age cannot be a light [burden].

¹ Present subj.

² Future participle.

⁸ *moror*.¹

⁴ *negotior*¹ (gerund).

⁵ *recte*.

⁶ Present subj.

⁷ *agrestis*.

⁸ *tristis*.

⁹ *supero*.¹

¹⁰ *summa inopia*.

32. Comparative Particles.

[312, 308.]

- § 61, 1. (particles of comparison introducing conditional clauses); also the Remark, comparing § 59, 3. *b* (condition contrary to fact).

Examples.

1. Sed quid his testibus utor, quasi res dubia aut obscura sit?
2. Me juvat, velut si ipse in parte laboris ac periculi fuerim, ad finem belli Punici pervenisse.
3. Parvi primo ortu jacent, tanquam omnino sine animo sint.
4. Quasi vero haec similia sint!
5. Perinde ac si in hanc formulam omnia judicia legitima comprehensa sint!
6. Quasi vero ego ad illum venire debuerim!

Write in Latin.

1. He walks as if he were lame.¹
2. You speak to me as if you thought I were deceiving² you.

¹ *claudus*.

² *decipio*.³

3. You spoke⁸ to me yesterday as if you thought I was deceiving you.

4. He spends⁴ [his] money as if he reckoned⁵ himself a rich [man].

5. He looks as if he had lived a year in-the-country.

6. He spoke of the monuments and antiquities as if he had lived a year at Rome.

³ loquor.³

⁴ largior.⁴

⁵ existimo.¹

33. Temporal Clauses.

§ 62, 2. with Note ^[322-328.] (absolute and relative time); also *a*, *b* (construction of *ubi*, *postquam*, etc., and of *cum* temporal), and *e* (*cum* causal and concessive).

a. *Cum* followed by the present or perfect subjunctive is almost always CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE, and is to be translated *since*, *while*, or *although*.

b. *Cum* followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is more commonly TEMPORAL. In this case, it is sometimes to be translated *when*; but is often best rendered by a *participle*, *present* or *perfect*, in English.

Examples.

1. Cum ad villam veni, hoc ipsum *nihil agere* me delectat.
2. Cum fortuna reffavit, affligimur.
3. Ubi id Verres audivit, Diodorum ad se vocavit.
4. Pompeius ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit.
5. Simul ac primum Verri occasio visa est, consulem deseruit.
6. Postquam id difficilius visum est, neque facultas¹ perficiendi dabatur, ad Pompeium transierunt.
7. Ita mulier, dum pauca mancipia retinere vult,² fortunas omnes perdidit.
8. Dixerat hoc ille, cum puer rediit. (§ 325. *b*).
9. Cum ego illum vidi, jam consilium mutaverat.
10. Cum ver esse coeperat, Verres dabat se labori atque itineribus.

¹ and no opportunity.

² See § 290. *c*.

11. Jam ver adpetebat, cum Hannibal ex hibernis movet.
12. Argumentum tempestatis nautae putant, cum multae transvolant stellae.
13. Epaminondas cum vicisset Lacedaemonios apud Mantineam, atque ipse gravi vulnere exanimari se videret, quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus.
14. Res cum haec scribebam² erat in extremum adducta discrimen.
15. Cum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias parare.
16. Homines, cum³ multis rebus infirmiores sint, hac re maxime bestiis praestant, quod loqui possunt.
17. Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, cum ditissimus esse posset.
18. Cum multae res in philosophia nequaquam satis adhuc explicatae sint, tum perdifficilis et perobscura⁴ quaestio est de natura deorum.
19. Cum sit in nobis consilium, ratio, prudentia, necesse est deum haec ipsa habere majora.

² See § 282.

³ while.

⁴ See § 93, d.

Write in Latin.

1. When you come (fut. perf.), I shall go away.¹
2. I was asleep² when the doctor came.
3. I had scarcely³ read your letter, when Lentulus approached.⁴
4. When he had said this, he went away.
5. This he had said, when news-was-brought⁵ that the enemy were in sight.⁶
6. When summer had begun,⁷ he used-to-make his quarters⁸ at Syracuse.
7. When I reached home, my father had already gone.⁹
8. While he was speaking thus, his father arrived.¹⁰
9. When I come home at night,¹¹ I take-comfort¹² in-doing¹³ nothing.

¹ abeo. ² dormio.⁴ ³ vix. ⁴ appropinquo.¹ ⁵ nuntio¹ (impers.).

⁶ conspectus. ⁷ Add "to be." ⁸ statua. ⁹ proficiscor.

¹⁰ venio.⁴ ¹¹ vesperi. ¹² me delector. ¹³ Gerund.

10. As soon as he saw his father coming, he ran-away.¹⁴
 11. Since the time is near,¹⁵ it becomes us all to be ready.
 12. While I do not believe him to be a robber, yet I distrust him.
 13. Will you not believe, when the thing is so plain?¹⁶
 14. I congratulate¹⁷ you that¹⁸ you have recovered¹⁹ your property²¹ at-last.²⁰

¹⁴ *effugio*.³¹⁵ *adsum*.¹⁶ *manifestus*.¹⁷ *gratulor*¹ (dat.).¹⁸ *quod* (followed by indic.).¹⁹ *recipio*.³²⁰ *tandem* (before the verb).²¹ *res*.

34. Purpose and Result.

[317-319.]

- § 64, 1. with *a* (Final Clauses, with *ut*, *ne*, *quo*) ;
 § 65, 1. with *a*, *b* (Consecutive Clauses, with *ut*, *quominus*, *quin*).

a. The clause of Purpose is often to be translated by *THAT*, or *in order that*, with *may* or *might* (English Potential); but oftener by the Infinitive with *TO*: as, *veni ut viderem*, *I came to see (that I might see)*.

b. The clause of Result is expressed in English sometimes by the Infinitive with *TO*, *SO-AS-TO*, or an equivalent: as, *tam longe abfui ut non viderem*, *I was so far away that I did not see (too far away to see)*.

c. After verbs of *hindering*, *quominus* is most commonly rendered by *FROM* with the verbal noun in *-ING*: as, *turba impedivit quominus viderem*, *the crowd hindered me from seeing*.

d. But if the verb of hindering is *negated* by *NOT*, or some equivalent, *quin* is used instead of *quominus*: as, *turba non impedivit quin viderem*, *the crowd did not hinder me from seeing*.

e. Purpose is *NEVER* to be expressed in Latin by the simple infinitive, as it often is in English. For the ways in which it may be expressed, see § 318.

NOTE.—Observe that in Latin these two constructions are precisely alike in the affirmative, but that in the negative one takes *ne*, and the other *ut non*. Thus, *custoditus est ne effugeret*, *he was guarded so that he MIGHT not escape*; but *custoditus est ut non effugeret*, *he was guarded so that he DID not escape*.

Examples.

1. Capuam proficiscar, quo facilius de Pompeii rebus *cognoscām*.

2. Ager non semel aratur, sed novatur et iteratur, quo meliores fetus *possit* et grandiores edere.

3. Haec ideo ad te scribebam,¹ ne me oblitum esse mandatorum tuorum *putares*.

4. Quamobrem discede, atque hunc mihi² timorem eripe: si est verus, ne *opprimar*; sin falsus, ut tandem aliquando timere *desinam*.

5. Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem miserunt qui pacem *peterent*.

6. Sunt multi qui eripiunt aliis³ quod aliis *largiantur*.

7. Verba reperta sunt quae *indicarent*⁴ voluntatem.

8. Arria gladium dedit marito quò se *interficeret*.

9. Helvetii diem dicunt,⁴ qua⁵ die ad ripam Rhodani omnes *conveniant*.

10. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit et sepsit, quas primum perlucidas⁶ fecit, ut per eas cerni *posset*, firmas autem, ut *continerentur*; sed lubricos oculos fecit et mobiles, ut et *declinarent* si quid noceret, et aspectum quo vellent facile *converterent*.

11. Non dubito quin hoc nuntio *gaudeas*.

12. In virtute multi sunt adscensus; ut is gloriā maxime *excellat*, qui virtute plurimum praestet.

13. Exspectari diutius non oportuit, quin ad castra *iretur*.

14. Caesar cognovit, per Afranium stare⁷ quominus *dimicaretur*.

15. Non recusabo quominus omnes mea scripta *legant*.

¹ See § 282.

² See § 229.

³ See § 320.

⁴ *appoint*.

⁵ See § 73.

⁶ See § 93, d.

⁷ *that it was owing to Afranius.*

Write in Latin.

1. Aeneas, that he might win¹ the hearts of the Aborigines, called both the nations Latins.

2. Romulus, lest the greatness of the city should be void,² opened a certain place [as] an asylum.

¹ *sibi conciliare.*

² *vanus.*

3. The Clusians sent ambassadors to Rome, to ask aid from the Senate.

4. I sent [a man] to Antony, to³ tell [him] this.

5. A pen⁴ was given me to write with.⁵

6. He lived honorably, that⁶ he might quit⁷ life [with] a more calm¹⁰ mind.

7. Again and again I beg you to do it.

8. Thrice I have begged you to come as-soon-as-possible.⁸

9. What prevents you from coming at-once?⁹

10. I shall not prevent your returning home to-morrow.

³ qui. ⁴ calamus. ⁵ quo scriberem. ⁶ quo. ⁷ excedo,³ e.
⁸ quam primum. ⁹ statim. ¹⁰ aequus.

35. Clause of Characteristic.

§ 65, 2. with *a, b, c, d, e, f* (relative Clauses of Characteristic).

The Clause of Characteristic is to be translated variously, according to the context: see examples in the Grammar, noticing particularly *e* (cause or hindrance).

N. B. — The constructions which have now been given are the only ones in which the Subjunctive affects the translation into English.

Examples.

1. Qui sunt qui *audeant* in provincia contra fortunas praetoris judicare?

2. Nemo fuit quin mala mea *inrideret*.

3. Nulla acies ingenii humani tanta est, quae penetrare in caelum *possit*.

4. Nunc dicis aliquid quod ad rem *pertineat*.

5. Nihil bonum est, quod non eum qui id possideat meliorem *faciat*.

6. Digna res est, quam diu multumque *consideremus*.

7. Nulla mihi videbatur aptior persona quae de senectute *loqueretur*.

8. Major est quam cui nocere *possis*.

9. Miserior erat quam cui invideri *posset*.

10. Voluptas est sola quae nos *vocat* ad se.

11. Nemo est tam senex, qui se annum non *putet* posse vivere.

12. Nemo est quin ubivis, quam ibi ubi est, esse *malit*.

Write in Latin.

1. Innocence is a quality¹ of the mind which harms² no one.

2. Who is there that does not laugh sometimes?³

3. There is no one who has not heard this.

4. He is an honest man, so far as I know.⁴

5. This man is not fit⁵ for you to imitate.⁶

6. The load is too heavy for⁷ a boy to carry.

¹ *affectio*. ² *noceo*.² ³ *aliquando*. ⁴ *quod sciam*.

⁵ *idoneus*. ⁶ *imitor*.¹ ⁷ *quam quod*, &c.

36. Intermediate Dependent Clauses.

§ 66 (the general statement, [347, 2; 336.] comparing R. 47); 1. with *c*, *d*, and 2. (implied indirect discourse, and dependent subjunctive): compare § 67, 1. (general rule of Indirect Discourse).

Examples.

1. Caesar dat negotium Senonibus, uti ea quae apud Belgas *gerantur* cognoscant, seque de his rebus certiore faciant.

2. Caesar graviter eos accusat *quod* ab iis non *sublevetur*, praesertim *cum* eorum precibus adductus bellum *susceperit*.

3. Laudat Africanum Panaetius *quod fuerit* abstinens.

4. Quinto die Volusenus ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi *perspexisset* nuntiat.

5. Ariovistus respondit: "Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus *esset*, sese ad eum venturum fuisse."¹

6. Helvetii, auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum *pertinerent* comparare.

7. Xerxes inflammasse templa Graeciae dicitur, *quod* parietibus *includebant* deos, quibus omnia *deberent* esse patentia ac libera; quorumque hic mundus omnis templum *esset* et domus.

¹ *would have come* (see § 337).

Write in Latin.

1. He promised to-give¹ what I had asked.
2. I ordered him to bring² whatever was necessary.³
3. The lieutenant⁴ on-his-return⁵ reported to Cæsar what he had seen in the enemy's camp.
4. Cicero praises Pompey [on the ground] that he was a commander of the highest merit.⁶
5. The ambassador⁴ replied that, if this [demand] were refused,⁷ the Romans would at-once⁸ declare⁹ war.
6. I will declare¹⁰ frankly¹¹ what I think to be for the advantage¹² of the state.

¹ <i>se daturum.</i>	² <i>adfero.</i>	³ <i>opus.</i>	⁴ <i>legatus.</i>	⁵ <i>reversus.</i>
⁶ <i>virtus.</i>	⁷ <i>nego.</i> ¹	⁸ <i>statim.</i>	⁹ <i>indico.</i> ³	¹⁰ <i>confirmo.</i> ¹
	¹¹ <i>aperte.</i>		¹² <i>utilitas.</i>	

37. Indirect Discourse.

[335, 6.]

§ 67, General Definition with Remark ; and 1. (general rule of Indirect Discourse) with *a* and *b* (use of subject-accusative, and of relative clauses).

a. The form of speech called Indirect Discourse, and distinguished by the use of the Infinitive and Subjunctive moods, is constructed as follows : —

1. The leading statement is put in the *main clause*, with its verb in the Infinitive and the subject in the Accusative : it is a SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE, construed as the Object of some verb or other expression of *knowing, thinking, telling, or perceiving* (see the following section, where examples of it will be given).

2. Subordinate clauses, introduced by Relatives, relative or conditional Particles, and the like, have their verbs in the Subjunctive : these are INTERMEDIATE DEPENDENT CLAUSES (as in the foregoing section).

b. The English word to introduce Indirect Discourse is THAT : as, *dicat scire se haec esse vera, he says that he knows that this is true.* But it is frequently well (as in the above example) to omit "that" in translation, or even to change the form to direct discourse, as if the statement were independent, inserting the verb of *saying, &c.* (if necessary) in a parenthetical clause. Thus, in the passage —

P. Scipionem, eum qui primus Africanus appellatus est, dicere solitum, scripsit Cato, qui fuit ejus fere aequalis, nunquam se minus otiosum esse quam cum otiosus, nec minus solum quam cum solus esset. — *Cic. Off. iii. 1.*

Publius Scipio, the same who was first called Africanus, used to say — as Cato writes, who was nearly of his time — that he was never less idle than when at leisure, and never less alone than when alone.

、 An attention to this remark will often make a sentence read easily and clearly in the English idiom, without departing from the order of thought or even of words as found in Latin.

c. The use of tenses in Indirect Discourse may be seen in the following examples : —

PRESENT.	{ scribere, he says that he is [now] writing.
1. dicat se	{ scripsisse, he says that he wrote (has or had written or was writing). scripturum [esse], he says that he will write.
PAST.	{ scribere, he said that he was [then] writing.
2. dixit se	{ scripsisse, he said that he had written. scripturum [esse], he said that he would write.
FUTURE.	{ scribere, he will say that he is [then] writing.
3. dicet se	{ scripsisse, he will say that he has written, &c. scripturum [esse], he will say that he is going to write.

Observe that in the future of Indirect Discourse, with the participle in -ūrus, the infinitive **esse** is more commonly omitted.

d. With verbs of *hoping, promising, threatening*, and the like, the Latin use differs from English in requiring the subject always to be expressed : as,

1. **sperat se venturum**, he hopes to come (lit. "he hopes that he shall come").
2. **minatus est se urbem deleturum**, he threatened to destroy the city.

e. As in English, a double construction is found in the passive of indirect discourse, the verb of *saying, &c.*, being either personal or impersonal. Thus we may say **dicitur Caesar abiisse**, *Cæsar is said to have gone*; or, **dicitur Caesarem abiisse**, *it is said that Cæsar has gone*. In the former case (as more commonly in Latin), the subject of the verb is **Caesar**; in the latter, the clause **Caesarem abiisse** (compare § 330, a).

F. — Substantive Clauses.

38. Infinitive Clauses.

[330, 270, 71.]

§ 70, 2. (the infinitive clause as Subject and as Object: R. 38, 39), also § 57, 8. *a* and *e*. Compare the illustration and examples in Lesson 21, page 32.

a. In English the sign of the Infinitive is *to*. It is often used in such sentences as these: "I think it to be right;" "I know it to be true;" "He is said to be rich;" "You ordered it to be done;" when we might say, "I think *that* it is right," and so on. In Latin the infinitive construction is used in this way after any verb or other expression of *knowing, thinking, telling, or perceiving*.

b. The present infinitive (§ 288, with *a*), when depending on a past tense, is to be translated by a past tense: as, *renuntiavit hostes esse in conspectu*, *he brought word that the enemy WERE in sight*; sometimes by the perfect infinitive: as, *scire potuit*, *he might HAVE KNOWN*; *hoc fieri oportuit*, *this ought TO HAVE BEEN DONE*. In these cases, the past possibility, necessity, &c., are indicated in Latin by the leading verb, as they are not in English.

c. The perfect infinitive in Latin may stand in indirect discourse for any past tense of the indicative (see § 288, *b*, with the special use of *memini*).

Examples.

1. Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.
2. Accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est.
3. Cives civibus parere aequum esse censeo.
4. Magna laus est tantas res solum gessisse.
5. Fama est ludibrio fratris Remum novos transiluisse muros.
6. Renuntiatur Germanos castra tum habuisse juxta Rhenum.
7. Te hilari esse animo valde me juvat.
8. Majori parti exercitus placuit castra defendere.
9. Memini me epistolam scribere cum hic rumor adlatus est.
10. Mihi non licet esse otioso (non licet me esse otiosum).
11. Eum non licet ante tempus consulem fieri.

12. Vestrā interest manus hostium distineri.
13. Oratorem irasci minime decet, simulare non dedecet.
14. Senatui placuit C. Cassium proconsulem provinciam Syriam obtinere.

15. Facinus est vincere civem Romanum ; scelus verberare ; prope parricidium necare : quid dicam in crucem tollere ? verbo satis digno tam nefaria res appellari nullo modo potest.

Write in Latin.

1. It is a grand¹ thing to be made consul.
2. It is beneficial² for a sick³ man to sleep.
3. It is better⁴ to live honorably⁵ than to be born honorably.
4. It is said that he was writing at the⁶ time.
5. There was, however, a rumor that the election⁷ would be⁸ put off.⁹
6. It is lawful for no man to lead an army against [his] country.
7. The scouts¹⁰ report that the Germans have already crossed¹¹ the Rhine.
8. It was to the interest of Clodius that Milo should perish.
9. I hear that Cicero has set out¹² [for] Athens.
10. Divitiacus said that he knew these things were true.
11. I remember that [when] a boy I saw the orator Hortensius.
12. I take it ill¹³ that I am poor.¹⁴

¹ magnificus. ² utilis. ³ aegrotus. ⁴ praestat. ⁵ honeste.
⁶ is. ⁷ comitia (plur.). ⁸ fore ut. ⁹ differo. ¹⁰ explorator.
¹¹ transeo. ¹² proficiscor.³ ¹³ aegre fero. ¹⁴ Compare § 333, b.

39. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.

[331.]

§ 70, 3. (clauses with **ut** and **ne** developed from *purpose*), with *a, b, c, d, e, f* (clauses of *influence, wish, permission, resolve, effort, and fearing*), with the two Remarks on page 196 (omission of **ut** or **ne**).

The clause of Purpose may be translated by **THAT** with the auxiliaries *may, might, shall, should* (English **POTENTIAL**) ; but often by the simple **INFINITIVE** (compare 37, above).

Examples.

1. Navem idoneam *ut habeas* diligenter videbis.
2. Videant consules *ne* quid respublica detrimenti *capiat*.
3. Satis undique provisum atque praecautum est, *ne* quid adversus vos in pugna praeter hostes *esset*.
4. Jugurtha oppidanos hortatur *ut* moenia *defendant*.
5. Caesar huic imperat *adeat* civitates, *horteturque ut* populi Romani fidem *sequantur*, seque celeriter eo venturum *nuntiet*.
6. Cave enim *putes* me pacem desperare.
7. Galli timebant *ne* Caesar sibi bellum *inferret*.
8. Ornamenta metuo *ut possim* recipere.
9. Vereor *ut* Dolabella ipse satis nobis prodesse *possit*.
10. Tu ad me de istis rebus omnibus *scribas* velim quam diligentissime.
11. Publicola instituit primus, *ut* singulis consulibus alternis mensibus lictores *praeirent*.

Write in Latin.

1. He gave-orders¹ that the Senate should return to [their usual] apparel.²
2. The Senate voted³ that the consuls should hold a levy.⁴
3. The general made-proclamation¹ that no one⁵ should fight without his orders.⁶
4. Divitiacus implores⁷ that Cæsar will pardon⁸ his brother⁹ [his] fault.¹⁰
5. I wish you would inquire,¹¹ and write to me.
6. Galba persuaded the soldiers to go away.
7. I fear he will come.
8. I fear he will not come.

¹ *edico*.³² *vestitus*.⁴³ *decerno*.³⁴ *delectus*.⁴⁵ *ne quis*.⁶ *injussu suo*.⁷ *imploro*.¹⁸ *ignosco*.⁸⁹ Dative.¹⁰ *peccatum*.¹¹ *interrogo*.¹

40. *Substantive Clauses of Result.*

§ 70, 4. (clauses with **ut** and **ut non**, developed from *result*), with *a, d, e, g* (clauses of *happening, tantum abest ut, facere ut, and hindering*).^[332.]

The clause of Result may be translated by **THAT**, with or without the auxiliaries *can, could*; occasionally by the simple Infinitive; sometimes by the participial noun in -ING (see examples under *g*), especially verbs of hindering.

In general, the learner may be advised to use the Infinitive in rendering a Latin object-clause, *wherever the English idiom permits*.

Examples.

1. Restat *ut* pauca dicam de senectute.
2. Reliquum est *ut* officiis certemus inter nos.
3. Sequitur *ut* officiorum genera distinguam.
4. Facere non possum *quin* quotidie litteras ad te mittam ut tuas accipiam.
5. Tantum abest *ut* nostra miremur, *ut* nobis ipse non satisfaciat Demosthenes.
6. Non est dubium *quin* totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possint.
7. Sequitur *ut* futurum sit ut rex interficiatur.
8. Credidi fore *ut* puerum ignaviae puderet.
9. Haec prima lex amicitiae sancitur: ut ab amicis honesta petamus; amicorum causā honesta faciamus; ne expectemus quidem, dum rogemur; studium semper adsit, cunctatio absit.

Write in Latin.

1. It remains¹ that I speak briefly² concerning peace.
2. It cannot be doubted that³ we ought to obey⁴ the laws of virtue.
3. Dionysius was so far⁵ from being happy, that he was of all men most wretched.
4. The soldiers were hardly⁶ held-back⁷ from⁸ bursting⁹ into the town.

¹ restat. ² pauca. ³ quin. ⁴ pareo.² ⁵ tantum aberat (impers.).
⁶ aegre. ⁷ retineo.² ⁸ quin. ⁹ inrumpe.³

41. Substantive Clauses with Quod.

§ 70, 5. with *a* and *b* (^[333.]indicative clause with **quod**, introducing a *statement of fact, specification, or object of feeling*).

The **quod**-clause is generally to be translated by **THAT**, or **THE-FACT-THAT**; occasionally by **WHEREAS**, or **AS-TO-WHAT**.

Examples.

1. Non ea res me deterruit, *quod* tu ad me nullas litteras miseras.

2. Percommode¹ factum est, *quod* de morte primo die *disputatum est*.

3. Non pigritiā facio *quod* non mea manu scribō.

4. Hoc uno praestamus vel maxime feris, *quod* exprimere dicendo sensa *possumus*.

5. Me una consolatio sustentat, *quod* tibi nullum a me pietatis officium *defuit*.

6. Quod spiratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formam hominum habetis, indignantur.

¹ See § 93, *d*.

.. Write in Latin.

1. It alarms¹ me that I hear nothing from my brother.

2. This² is my chief comfort,³ that I have done no wrong⁴ willingly.⁵

3. The Romans excelled the Greeks in this, — that they knew-how⁶ to give liberty to conquered⁷ states.

4. I am glad that you have returned⁸ at length to [your] country.

5. As to what you say of [your] health,⁹ I am glad to hear that you are recovering.¹⁰

¹ *terreo*.²

² *illud*.

³ *solacium*.

⁴ *injuria*.

⁵ *volens*.

⁶ *scio*.⁴

⁷ *victus*.

⁸ *revertor*.

⁹ *valetudo*.

¹⁰ *convalesco*.³

42. Indirect Questions.

§ 67, 2. (construction of the Indirect Question),^[334.] with *a* and *e* (use of the *periphrastic future*, *nescio quis*, etc.); also the Remark, p. 246 (passive construction).

Observe that an Indirect Question occurs only when an *interrogative clause* (or one introduced by an interrogative word) is made the *subject or object of some verb*, or equivalent phrase. Thus the words *who is there?* are a DIRECT QUESTION; in the sentence *I do not know* [it is uncertain] *who is there*, the same words are an INDIRECT QUESTION. This form is to be carefully distinguished from dependent RELATIVE clauses under 39, above; also from direct questions in the subjunctive mood (*dubitative subjunctive*): as, *quid faciam?* *what shall I do?* *quid facerem?* *what was I to do?*

Examples.

1. Si quid in mentem venit, velim scribas et ipse quid sis acturus.
2. Caesar ab iis quaesivit, quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent, et quid in bello possent.
3. Incertum est quando domus nostras visuri simus.
4. Videamus deorumne providentiâ mundus regatur.
5. Quaero num quando amici novi veteribus sint antepponendi.
6. Deinde ex eo quaesitum est, Archelaum nonne beatum putaret.
7. Quaero utrum Alexandrum an Caesarem magis mireris.
8. Interrogatus scutumne amisisset, respondit id esse tutum.
9. Mihi non minori curae est qualis respublica post mortem meam futura sit, quam qualis hodie sit.

Write in Latin.

1. Do you not remember what I said a-little-while-ago.¹
2. No man knows when he shall die.
3. I wrote what I was going-to-do.²
4. I asked what you were going-to-do:³ what had to be done.⁴
5. You ask me whether I have lost my friend.
6. Bring-me-word⁵ whether your brother is at home.
7. I should-like-to-have-you⁶ inform⁷ me whether you will come or-not.⁸

¹ paulo ante.

² acturus.

³ facturus.

⁴ faciendum esse.

⁵ renuntio.¹

⁶ velim.

⁷ certiores facere (subj.).

⁸ necne.

G. — Participial Constructions.**43. Participles: Predicate Use.**

[290-293.]

§ 72, 1. with *b* (use of the participles; perfect of deponents); 2, 3. with Remark and *a* (adjective and predicate use); 4. with *a*, *b* (the future participle in *urus*).

In these constructions, the translation must be varied to conform to the English idiom (see § 292, with the Remark).

Examples.

1. Pastor elatam securim in regis caput dejecit.
2. Catilinam Lentulus et Cethegus deprehensi non terruerunt.
3. Non multo ante urbem captam, exaudita est vox e luco Vestae.
4. Ab orto usque ad occidentem solem pugnatum est.
5. Querimur de Milone per vim expulso.
6. Major ex civibus amissis dolor quam laetitia fuis hostibus fuit.
7. Post expulsos reges consules creati sunt.
8. Aër effluens huc et illuc ventos efficit.
9. Tarquinius elatum e curia regem in inferiorem partem per gradus dejecit.
10. Fugientes Gallos Caesar adsecutus trucidavit.
11. Intentum animum tanquam arcum habebat Appius senex.

Write in Latin.

1. Each man claimed¹ for himself the glory of having slain² the king.
2. From the founding³ of the city to the expulsion⁴ of the kings and the liberation⁵ of the city was two hundred and forty years.
3. Cæsar overtook⁶ the Helvetii in-their-flight,⁷ at⁸ the river Arar.

¹ *expeto*.³² *interficio*.³³ *condo*.³⁴ *exigo*.³⁵ *libero*.¹⁶ *adsequor*.³⁷ *fugio*.³⁸ *ad*.

4. After the storming⁹ of Massilia a league was struck.¹⁰
5. Six years after the capture⁹ of Veii, Rome was taken by the Gauls.
6. By the conquest¹¹ of the Veientes, the consul had increased¹² the Roman state.

⁹ *expugno*.¹

¹⁰ *ico*.³

¹¹ *devinco*.⁸

¹² *augeo*.²

44. Ablative Absolute.

§ 54, 10. *b*, with Note ^[255.] (ablative absolute of *time* or *circumstance*), and *c* (impersonal use of adjective or participle).

a. The Ablative Absolute is very rarely found except with the *present active* and the *perfect passive* participle.

b. As the Nominative Absolute is rarely admissible in English, a change of form is generally required in translation. Thus the present participle is oftenest to be rendered by a relative clause with *when* or *while*; and the perfect passive participle by the perfect active participle in English. These changes may be seen in the following example:—

“At illi, *intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris*, atque *occupatis* in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt; *impetuque* in eos *facto*, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt; *duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus* a Caesare, cum hae (*perexiguo intermisso loci spatio* inter se) constitissent, novo genere pugnae *perterritis nostris*, per medios audacissime perruperunt, seque inde incolumes receperunt.” — CÆSAR, B. G. v. 15.

“But they, *having paused a space while our men were unaware and busied* in fortifying the camp, suddenly threw themselves out of the woods; then *making an attack* upon those who were on guard in front of the camp, fought fiercely; and, *though two cohorts had been sent to their relief by Cæsar*, after these had taken their position (*leaving very little space of ground between them*), as our men were alarmed by the strange kind of fighting, they dashed most daringly through the midst of them, and got off safe.”

Examples.

1. Caesar, confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum praemisit.

2. Paucis a me¹ stantibus, non desperabo.

¹ *on my side*.

3. Non te invito filium tuum Romam mittam.
4. Pythagoras, Tarquinio Superbo rege, in Italiam venit.
5. Latini exercitu a consulibus deleta pacem Romanos poposcerunt.
6. Caesar castris munitis, vineas agere, quaeque ad oppug-
nandum usui erant comparare coepit.
7. Catilina necato filio vacuum domum scelestis nuptiis
fecit.
8. Lysias, filio e civitate pulso, multos annos Sardibus
vixit.
9. Cognito super humeros fratris paludamento sponsi,
quod ipsa confecerat, virgo solvit crines.²

² A sign of mourning.

Write in Latin.

1. After ending¹ the war with the Veneti, Cæsar put² all
the senate to death³ [and] sold the rest [of the inhabitants]
at-public-sale.³
2. We strive⁴ in vain when nature opposes.⁵
3. The father, not-expecting⁶ the arrival of his son, set-out⁷
for Rome.
4. The Latins, having lost⁸ [their] army, begged peace of
the Romans.
5. The Romans, when the city was taken by the Gauls,
retreated⁹ to the Capitol.

¹ conficio³ (abl. abs.).

² neco¹ (abl. abs.).

³ sub corona.

⁴ contendo.³

⁵ repugno.¹

⁶ despero.¹

⁷ proficiscor.³

⁸ amitto.³

⁹ se recipere.³

45. Gerundive Constructions.

§ 72, 5. with *c* (participial and adjective use); § 73,
1, 2. (Gerund and Gerundive); 3. with *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* (the
gerundive constructions).

NOTE.—In this Gerundive use the form in *du*s is always
to be rendered by an ACTIVE form in English (usually by the
participial noun in -ING, followed by the objective: see examples
3, 4, 5); while in the Predicate use it is always PASSIVE (trans-
lated *ought*, *must*, &c.; see Lesson 16, 2. *d*).

Examples.

1. Vitia senectutis diligentia compensanda sunt.
2. Rem tibi omittendam esse censeo.
3. Helvetii legatos pacis petendae causa miserunt.
4. Vivis, et vivis non ad deponendam sed ad confirmandam audaciam.
5. Caesar pontem in Arari faciendum curavit.
6. Praetor decemviros agro¹ Samniti metiendo dividendoque creavit.

7. Habenda ratio valetudinis ; utendum exercitationibus modicis ; tantum cibi et potionis adhibendum, ut reficiantur vires non opprimantur.

8. Principes civitatis tuorum consiliorum reprimendorum causa Roma profugerunt.

9. Cretum leges laboribus erudiunt juventutem, venando, currendo, esuriendo, sitiendo, algendo, aestuando.

10. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda : vexillum proponendum, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum.

¹ Dative.

Write in Latin.

1. The consul gives heed¹ to propitiating² the gods.
2. All hope of taking the town was lost.
3. Caesar perceives³ that the war must be put-off⁴ till⁵ summer.
4. The consul gave Fabius one legion to lead into Spain.
5. Conon provided-for⁶ the repair⁷ of the walls of Athens.
6. A short time⁸ of life is [long] enough to⁹ live well and happily.
7. By always obeying the magistrates, the youth won¹⁰ [themselves] good fame.
8. The grass¹¹ here is very convenient¹² for sleeping.
9. You have lost much time in play.¹³

¹ opera.

² placo.¹

³ animadverto.³

⁴ differo.

⁵ ad.

⁶ curo.¹

⁷ reficio.³

⁸ spatium.

⁹ ad.

¹⁰ adsequor.³

¹¹ commodus.

¹² ludo.³

¹³ gratiam (N.).

PART THIRD.

ON READING LATIN.

NOTE. — The following section, consisting chiefly of hints and directions to aid the learner in his subsequent reading, is not designed to be used as *lessons for class instruction*, but to be reserved for reference or occasional use, according to the teacher's judgment. Its chief advantage may perhaps be found at a later period of study than that covered by the Reading Lessons contained in this book.

I. THE MEANING OF WORDS.

In his reading, the learner should always be guided, not merely by the *dictionary meaning* of the words, but by the meaning of the Root, or Stem, and terminations, as explained by the laws of derivation and the groupings of families of words (see pages 42-45). To aid in this, the following illustrations may be of service.

1. Notice the meaning of the *significant endings*, and their force in the derivative words.

As an example of analysis, take the word **pābulātio**. The termination **tio** is seen to be a "verbal abstract;" that is, to express, in a general or abstract way, the action of a verb. The long **ā** points to a verb of the first conjugation, formed from an adjective or noun of the first or second declension. This leads us to the noun **pābulum**; and the verb would signify *doing something* with that noun. In the list (p. 43), **bulum** is found as a termination of nouns of *means*: **pābulum** is the *means* of doing the action expressed in the root **PA**. As roots are not given in our lexicons, we must learn to recognize them in the *present stems* of verbs (see Lesson 28). If the meaning of **pascor** is known, **pābulum** will appear to be a *means of feeding*; **pābulor** (deponent) is *to obtain the means of feeding*; and **pābulātio**, in the connection where we find it, can only mean *foraging*.

Even when the meaning of the root does not appear at all, the grouping of the derivations may still be very instructive. Thus, *humus, ground*; *humilis, low* (on the ground); *homo (homin-), man* (creature of earth); *hūmānus, gentle*, as belonging to man in distinction from brutes; *hūmānitās, gentleness or refinement*.

The chief advantage, however, is in the knowledge of immediate and conscious derivatives. Thus, *aedilicius* can only mean *belonging to an ædile*, while *aedilis* itself must have something to do with public edifices (*aedi-ficia*); *sermunculus* must mean *a little talk*; *esurio*,⁴ *desire to eat*, hence *to be hungry*; *emāx, eager to buy*, and so on. Compare, for illustration, the following words from one root; *medeor, medicus, medicīna, medicīnālis, medicor, medicāmentum, medicāmentārius, medicābilis, medicāmentōsus, meditor* (frequentative, with an earlier meaning preserved). Notice the modes of formation in the foregoing words.

Even if no advantage were gained in acquiring or retaining the meaning, yet the words become more interesting and lively, and the knowledge of them more intelligent and fruitful. Thus in *redintegratio* we have the prefix *red-, back again* (to its former state); the ending *-tio* (verbal abstract); the verb is *integro (āre)*, denominative from *integer, whole or sound (in, not; TAG, root of tango, touch; ra, participial = tus or nus)*: hence the meaning *restoration* (making uninjured again).

In such derivatives as *amputo, computo*, the meanings seem absurdly inconsistent. But the verb is a *denominative* from the adjective *putus*, a collateral form of *pūrus, clean*. The corresponding verb (which would be *puo*) is lost; but its original sense appears in *puto, to clean up* (as by trimming off a diseased branch), and also *to clear up* (as an account), and so *to reckon*, then *to think*, which meanings are divided between the above compounds.

2. Form words with the following meanings from their primitives, comparing the Vocabulary: —

1. *A reckoning (reor,² reckon)*; 2. *An assembly (convenio,⁴ come together)*; 3. *Arrangement (dispōno,⁸ distribute)*; 4. *A change (mūto,¹ alter)*; 5. *A joining (jungo⁸)*; 6. *A breaking (frango⁸)*; 7. *Length (longus)*; 8. *Breadth (lātus)*; 9. *Power of holding (capāx from capio⁸, take)*; 10. *Means of teaching (doceo²)*; 11. *Means of support (colo³)*; 12. *Means of covering (tego⁸)*; 13. *Brightness (clārus)*; 14. *Softness (mollis, soft)*; 15. *Sweetness*

(suāvis); 16. Means of trying (ex-perior⁴); 17. A tray (for carrying: fero); 18. A piece broken (frango⁵); 19. Means of feeding (alo⁶); 20. A bramble-thicket (dūmus); 21. A rose-garden (rosa); 22. A dove-cote (columba); 23. Lamentable (fleo²); 24. Made of flowers (flos); 25. Blooming (floreo²); 26. Sickly (morbus); 27. Commerce (mercor¹); 28. A mingling (miscuo²); 29. Belonging to a soldier (miles); 30. To grow mild (mitis); 31. A little measure (modus); 32. A little pattern (forma); 33. A little man (homo); 34. A little puppy (catulus); 35. A means of defence (mūnio⁴); 36. Changeable (mūto); 37. Teachable (doceo); 38. With a large nose (nāsus); 39. With horns (cornū); 40. Bearded (barba); 41. Belonging to a ship (nāvis); 42. Sinewy (nervus); 43. Snowy (nix); 44. A little eye (oculus); 45. Son of Priam (Priamus).

3. Explain the following phrases from the meaning of the Root prefixed, with the significant ending: —

I. CAD, *fall*: cado,⁸ accido, etc.

1. Casus est, cum aliquid cecidit, *it is an accident when something befalls.*
2. Calamitas accidit, *a misfortune has happened.*
3. Caduca spes, *a futile hope.*
4. Decidua sidera, *falling stars.*
5. Solis occasus, *sunset.*
6. Ab oriente ad occidentem, *from east to west.*
7. Succidua flamma, *a dying flame.*
8. Occasio pugnandi, *an opportunity for fighting.*
9. Pestis in urbem incidit, *a plague attacked the city.*
10. Post Trojae excidium, *after the destruction of Troy.*

COMPARE the English words *case, accident, deciduous, occasion, incidental, casualty.*

2. CAP, *take*: capio,⁸ incipio, etc.

1. Litteras tuas accepi, *I got your letter.*
2. Acceptus erat populo, *he was a favorite of the people.*
3. Auceps multos passeris cepit, *the fowler caught a good many sparrows.*
4. Captator aurae popularis, *one who courts popular favor.*
5. Incidere in captionem, *to be tricked.*

6. Captura magna piscium, *a great haul of fish.*
7. Populus vult decipi, *the people like to be taken in.*
8. Inceptio operis, *undertaking a task.*
9. Manere incepto, *to persevere in an undertaking.*
10. Multa pericula excepi, *I have encountered many a peril.*
11. Frugum fructuumque perceptio, *the gathering of crops and fruits.*
12. Receptui canere, *to sound a retreat.*

ENGLISH : *captive, capture, accept, receive, perception, incipient, except.*

3. FAC, *make* : facio,³ efficio.

1. Dominationem adfectat, *he aims at dominion.*
2. Gaudium dolorque sunt affectus animi, *joy and grief are affections of the mind.*
3. Captivum morte adfecit, *he put the prisoner to death.*
4. Librorum confectio, *the composing of books.*
5. Confector negotiorum, *one who despatches business.*
6. Dolore confectus, *exhausted with grief.*
7. Arma sanguine infecta, *arms stained with blood.*
8. Re infecta, *without success (the thing undone).*
9. Officia perficere, *to fulfil one's duties.*
10. Homo officiosus, *an obliging man.*
11. Facinus atrox hic fecit, *this man has done a violent act.*
12. Res factu facilis, *a thing easy to do.*
13. Per vim et factionem, *by party violence.*
14. Mature facto opus est, *there is need of prompt action.*
15. Praefectus castrorum (or castris), *a quartermaster.*
16. Pecunia multarum effectrix est voluptatum, *money procures many delights.*
17. Pontem reficere conantur, *they try to repair the bridge.*
18. Filius patri suffectus, *a son put in his father's place.*
19. Sufficit hoc dicere, *it is enough to say this.*

ENGLISH : — *fact, factions, effect, efficacious, refection, consecration, perfect, sufficient, factitious, facility, difficult, officious, affectionate, benefit, satisfy.*

4. JAC, *throw* : jacio,³ injicio (inicio).

1. Abiectus animo, *disheartened*.
2. Adjectio caloris, *the application of heat*.
3. Oculum adjecit hereditati, *he cast eyes on the inheritance*.
4. Conjectura judicare, *to judge by guess* (common sense).
5. Conjectus aquae, *a puddle of water*.
6. Conjicere verba, *to bandy words*.
7. Omni spe dējectus, *hopeless and downcast*.
8. Homo ejectus, *a ruined* (shipwrecked) *man*.
9. Ferrati obices (objices), *iron bolts*.
10. Objectus invidiae, *exposed to jealousy*.
11. Projectus in antro, *stretched out in a grotto*.
12. Arma projecerunt, *they surrendered*.
13. Libertatem projecerat, *he had renounced his freedom*.
14. Rejectio judicum, *challenging of the jurymen*.
15. Rejicula vacca, *a worthless cow*.
16. Equitatus rejectus est, *the cavalry were driven back*.

ENGLISH : — *abject, conjecture, reject, projection, object, subject, dejected*.

5. TAG, *touch* : tango,⁸ contingo.

1. Haec causa te non attingit, *this motive does not touch you*.
2. Versibus rem attingere, *to treat a subject in verse*.
3. Attactu nullo, *with no contact* (Æn. ii. 350).
4. Contactu immundo, *with unclean touch* (id. iii. 227).
5. Contagio sceleris, *a sharing in guilt*.
6. Contagium morbi, *contagion of sickness*.
7. Sanguine se contaminare, *to stain one's self with blood*.
8. Turris contingit vallum, *the tower reaches the palisade*.
9. Romae nutriri mihi contigit, *I had the luck to be brought up at Rome*.
10. Exercitus integer intactusque, *an army safe and sound*.
11. Homo tagax, *a knavish fellow* (Cic. Att. vi. 3).
12. Simul ac tetigit provinciam, *as soon as he reached the province*.

ENGLISH : — *tact, tangible, contact, contingency, integrity, contagion*.

2. THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IT may now be taken for granted that the learner has become acquainted with the meaning of many words, and has learned to distinguish the case, person, tense, &c., by their inflections, so as to connect them readily in a simple sentence. He will have noticed that, while in English words almost always follow the order of Subject, Verb, and Object or Predicate, in Latin this order is very seldom found ; while Latin has an order of its own (see § 343 of the Grammar), though it is much less rigidly followed than in English. The chief difficulty he will now have to meet will be in the *long and complicated sentences*, which are much more common in Latin than in English. And, before he attempts these, a few points should be carefully observed.

As early as possible, let him accustom himself to follow the thought and the words *in their Latin order*; not to pick out the words here and there, to make a natural (English) order, as if the sentence were a puzzle, to be taken to pieces and put together again. Let him attend carefully to the ideas in the order in which they are expressed, with their relations as denoted by the inflections. After a very little practice—reading over the words several times, if necessary—the meaning will begin to appear *through a kind of broken English*, and a habit can soon be formed of reading in the Latin order almost as well as in our own.*

The following special directions will now be of service:—

1. Read the Latin carefully, noting familiar words, and single out the Nominative (if there is one) and the Verb.

N. B. — All Latin words ending in *t*—except *at, sat, et, post, tot, quot, ut, caput* (with compounds), and the affix *-met*—are verbs in the third person; all in *nt* are in the third person plural.

* It will be noticed that English itself often deviates from the established order in its older forms or in poetry, without presenting any difficulty: as in the sentence, “Whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.”

2. Notice *the first word or words*, as these will often hint the gist of the sentence.

3. Note the person, number, and voice of the Verb, before deciding on the relations of the other words.

4. Notice that Correlative expressions — *as . . . as, not only . . . but also, &c.* — immediately precede the same words or phrases which they must precede in English.

5. Translate *by phrases and not by single words*: taking an adjective with its noun, an adverb with its verb, and so on.

N. B. — An adjective usually follows its noun: when it goes before, it is generally for emphasis, and so often gives a hint at the meaning of the sentence.

So much for simple sentences. But Latin has the habit, more than most languages, of inserting Subordinate Clauses (§ 180. *b*) in the body of the sentence. Such clauses are generally introduced by a Relative word or a Subordinate Conjunction (see the list in § 155. *d-g*). These — which we may call SUBORDINATE CONNECTIVES — suspend the sense, until the subordinate clause is finished; and this, again, may be suspended in the same way. Thus a Latin period often becomes very long and involved. If it gets to be confusing, then a subordinate clause may be dropped entirely, to be taken up afterwards. But generally the following directions will serve: —

6. The words at the beginning of a sentence or clause belong *with the first finite verb*.* But —

7. Any clause, principal or subordinate, is SUSPENDED, when any subordinate connective appears *between the first and last word of that clause*.

* A Finite Verb is one limited by personal endings; neither an Infinitive nor a Participle.

8. In case such a connective appears, the rest of the main clause does not appear *till the whole of the subordinate one is finished*.

9. An Interrogative word often serves as a connective, introducing an Indirect Question.

10. A relative clause in Latin often comes before the principal or antecedent clause (see § 200. *b*, with Rem.).

Thus it will be seen that *the next finite verb after any subordinate connective is the leading verb of that clause, unless the clause itself is suspended*; ^a and that *the main verb of the sentence may be known by not being introduced by any such subordinate word*.^b Rarely a verb may be omitted; but the sentence is then easily understood as elliptical.

Take now the following example:—

ATQUE EGO, *ut vidi quos* maximo furore et scelere esse inflammatos **sciebam**, *eos* nobiscum esse et Romae remansisse, in eo omnes dies noctesque CONSUMPSI, *ut* quid agerent, quid molirentur, *sentirem ac viderem*.

Here the leading clause *Atque ego* (6) is suspended (7) by the relative clause *ut vidi*, which again is interrupted by the words *quos . . . sciebam*. The latter clause being now complete (8), the object of *vidi* is seen to be the infinitive clause *eos . . . remansisse*, the antecedent coming after the relative (10). The main clause is now resumed, its verb being evidently *consumpsi*, which is the predicate of *ego*. This again is followed by *ut . . . viderem* in apposition with *eo*, this clause being itself suspended by the indirect questions *quid . . . molirentur* (9).

NOTE.—In applying the rule for the suspension of clauses, it should be remembered that *a relative clause is very rarely suspended except by relative pronouns*. In the very common phrases, **qui si**, **qui cum**, **quem quis**, etc., it is necessary, according to the English idiom, *to translate the relative by a demonstrative word*; as, *qui cum advenisset, when he had arrived*; *cui quis credat? who can believe him?* It may be added that the comparative conjunctions, **tamquam**, **quasi**, with **nisi** and some others, are often used without a verb.

The learner is now advised to study carefully the subjoined passages (which may be translated and explained to him by the teacher), comparing the various phrases and subordinate constructions with the foregoing notes. The *figures* in these passages refer to the above points.

1. T. Labienus,⁶ castris hostium potitus,⁶ et ex loco superiore *quae*⁹ res in nostris castris *gererentur* conspicatus,⁶ decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui *cum* ex equitum et calorum fuga *quo*⁹ in loco res *esset*,⁸ *quantoque*⁹ in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator *versaretur*⁸ COGNOVissent,⁸ nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.^b— CÆSAR, *Bell. Gall.* ii. 26.

2. Occidisset² patrem Sex. Roscius arguitur. Scelerestum, di immortales, ac nefarium facinus! atque ejus modi* quo uno maleficio scelera omnia complexa esse videantur. Etenim si⁷ (id quod praeclare a sapientibus dicitur) vultu saepe laeditur pietas,⁸ quod⁶ supplicium⁶ satis acre reperietur⁵ in eum qui mortem obtulerit parenti, pro quo mori ipsum, si⁷ res postuleret, jura divina atque humana cogeant?⁸ In hoc tanto, tam atroci, tam singulari maleficio, quod ita raro exstitit ut, si quando auditum sit, portentis ac prodigii simile numeretur,⁸ quibus tandem tu, C. Eruci, argumentis accusatorem censes uti oportere?— CIC. *Rosc. Amer.* 13.

3. Reliquum est ut de Q. Catuli auctoritate et sententia dicendum esse videatur. Qui⁶ cum ex vobis quaereret, si in uno Cn. Pompeio omnia poneretis, si quid eo factum esset,† in quo spem essetis⁹ habituri,‡ cepit⁶ magnum suae virtutis fructum ac dignitatis, cum

* The phrase *ejus modi*, "of such a sort," is here equivalent to *tale*.

† in case any thing should happen to him.

‡ The clause from *in quo* is the object of *quaereret*, suspended by the two conditional clauses *si . . . poneretis*, *si . . . esset*.

omnes una prope voce in eo ipso vos spem habituros esse dixistis. Etenim talis est vir, ut nulla res tanta sit ac tam difficilis, quam ille non et consilio regere et integritate tueri et virtute conficere possit. Sed in hoc ipso ab eo vehementissime dissentio, quod, quo⁷ minus certa est hominum ac minus diuturna vita,⁸ hoc magis res publica, dum¹ per deos immortales licet,⁸ frui debet summi viri vita atque virtute. — CIC. *Manil.* 20.

3. READING AT SIGHT.

The most valuable knowledge we can have of a foreign language, whether for the pleasure and advantage to be derived from it, or for the convenience of a practical acquaintance with its forms, can be had only by the habitual practice of reading at sight. In attempting this, the following directions will be of service : —

1. Look first at *the endings of words*, so as to become instantly aware of their grammatical relations.

2. Observe the *significant endings*, and always connect obvious derivatives with their primitives.

3. Even where derivations are not obvious, *group words in families*, so as to associate their meanings.

4. Associate the Latin words with *English derivatives*, however remote ; and with other languages, if you happen to know any.

5. Use any mechanical device or "thumb-rule" possible, as to *the position of words*, or their probable meanings in such and such connections.

6. Commit to memory phrases, or (if possible) whole passages.

7. Notice constantly such idioms, or modes of expression, as are like or unlike our own.

8. In translating aloud, always use the English idiom; but *take in the Latin first in its own idiom*; if possible, without even thinking of the corresponding English words.

9. In translating any word, always bear in mind its *leading or principal meaning*.

This is not always the etymological meaning, though it may be usually traced to that; but it is the *conscious meaning* (as it were), the notion which the Roman himself attached to it. For example, the leading meaning of *mitto* seems to be *let go*, either with or without accompanying effort: and this meaning the Roman felt in it, though we may translate it by different expressions. Thus, *mittere tēlum*, to throw a weapon; *mittere legatos*, to send ambassadors; *mittere aliquam rem* (often), to let a thing go, to omit or pass over a thing; hence, *mittere lacrimas*, to cease weeping; *mittere dicere*, to forbear saying (see *mitto* in Lexicon).

We may even say that this is more necessary in using a good dictionary than in using a poor one; for a good one gives meanings which — being correct in the corresponding English phrase — give a very inaccurate reflection of the true meaning of the word. Thus, *capere poenas* means in English *to inflict punishment*; but to a Roman it meant to receive or exact the penalty for a wrong. So also with the relations of words. Cæsar says that Orgetorix was required to plead his cause *ex vinculis*, for which our translation must be *in chains*; though this is exactly the opposite of what Cæsar says, viz. that, standing in chains, he should make his plea *from them*.

A few short passages are here appended, in order to illustrate the foregoing points, and show how to go to work.

1. Matrem^a Phalaridis^b scribit^c Ponticus Heraclides, doctus^d vir, auditor et discipulus Platonis, visam esse^e videre in somnis^f simulacra^g deorum, quae^h ipsa domi consecrasset;ⁱ ex iis^k Mercurium^l e patera,^m quam dextera manu teneret. sanguinem visum esse fundere,ⁿ qui cum terram attigisset,^o refervescere^p videretur, sic ut tota domus sanguine redundaret.^q Quod matris somnium^r immanis^s filii crudelitas comprobavit. — *De Divinatione*, i. 23.

a. Notice that the first word is an accusative, **mātrēm**. This must probably be either the object of a verb, or the subject of an infinitive: it can remain in suspense till the verb appears. Its meaning, *mother*, naturally suggests a genitive: This we find in

b. **Phalaridis**, which has the genitive ending of the third declension; its nominative must be *Phalaris*, obviously a proper name. We may learn elsewhere that it is that of a Sicilian tyrant.

c. The verb **scribit**, *writes*, from its meaning naturally suggests an object-clause, accusative with infinitive. Such clauses are often best rendered by direct discourse in English. Thus we may translate as if **mātrēm** were nominative: *the mother of Phalaris, writes Ponticus Heraclides* (obviously a proper name, and subject of **scribit**).

d. The next words, being nominative, are probably in apposition with the name: **doctus** (participle of **doceo**) is *taught*, but as an adjective must be *learned*; **auditor** (noun of agency from **audio**) is *hearer*; **discipulus** (connected with **disco**) is clearly the same as our *disciple*; **Platonis** (as *Phalaridis*, above) explains itself.

e. As we have been expecting an infinitive for an object-clause, **visam esse** (having its participle in the feminine) is the natural verb for **mātrēm**; and as we have learned that the passive of **video** means *seem*, we may translate (in direct discourse, as above) with **vidēre**, *seemed to see*.

f. In the phrase **in somnīs**, the noun is probably ablative, since the connection requires *in* rather than *into*; and comes from **somnus**, or **-a**, or **-um**. Some English derivative will probably suggest the meaning *sleep*; and the plural form, though odd, will give no trouble.

g. The next is a new word, but may be analyzed. The termination **-crum**, denoting *means*, is appended to a verb-stem **simula-**: hence the verb is **simulo**, *āre*, suggesting the English verb *simulate* or perhaps the adjective *similar*. Its meaning will be *something to represent*; and we may render the phrase **simulācra deorum**, *images of the gods*.

h. The relative **quae** naturally refers to a noun just preceding: this cannot be **deōrum**, which is masculine, and must be **simulācra**; **ipsa** might agree with **quae**, but will be more easily taken with the verb next following.

i. This verb, **consecravisset**, at once suggests the English *consecrate*. It is evidently a compound with **con**; and if we remember the common change of vowel in compound verbs, and connect its meaning with **sacer**, *sacred* (already given), this mean-

ing will be confirmed. The subjunctive form (see above, 37) does not affect the translation, which is by the simple indicative, because our idiom does not require any other mood.

k. The ablative **his** will refer to the last or most important *plural noun*, either **deorum** or **simulacra**, it will not matter which. The phrase may be rendered *one of these*.

l. **Mercurium** may be assumed to continue the same construction as **matrem**, and will take the infinitive **visum esse**, below.

m. **Patera** may be left as not important for the meaning of the whole: we may, for the present, call it "*something*" which he held in his right hand (the relative clause here explaining itself): in fact, *a shallow bowl*.

n. The infinitive **fundere** must be guessed at from the context or given by the teacher, unless its meaning is known, *to pour*.

o. The verb **attigisset**, as a glance shows, contains the root TAG found in **tango**, *touch*; the subjunctive is required by **cum**, and does not affect the translation; its subject is **qui**, referring to the masculine **sanguinem**. But as two relatives cannot come together in English, we translate, *and when this had touched the ground*.

p. The verb **refervescere** should be seen to be derivative, and compounded from **ferveo**, which associates it with *fervent*, *fervid*; and its meaning, *to boil up*, is seen from our word *effervescent*.

q. The meaning of **redundaret** (*overflowed*) may perhaps require to be given, though a tolerably close idea may be gained by conjecture. Following **ut**, it is subjunctive expressing a result.

r. The phrase **quod somnium** may be either nominative or accusative; but, as the verb is directly preceded by the nominative **crudelitas**, these words must be accusative, and the object of **comprobavit**. The meaning of **somnium** (*dream*), if not known, may be easily inferred from **somnus**, above.

s. The adjective **immanis** may be either genitive with **fili** or nominative with **crudelitas**: consider which needs an epithet. Its meaning (*monstrous*) will require to be given, as also that of **comprobavit** (*proved*), which should, however, be explained through the adjective **probus**, and kindred English words.

The above analysis is given in much greater detail than will often be required in practice. When the habit has once been formed, it is followed rapidly and almost unconsciously; in fact, it is impossible, when once the mind has been trained to it, to read a single sentence without deriving help from it. In succeeding passages, only a few hints will be given.

2. Hoc item in Sileni *Graeca historia* est: Hannibalem, cum cepisset Saguntum, visum esse in somnis a Jove in deorum concilium vocari; quo cum venisset, Jovem imperavisse ut Italiae bellum inferret; ducemque ei unum e concilio datum, quo illum utentem cum exercitu progredi coepisse. Tum ei ducem illum praecepisse ne respiceret; illum autem id diutius facere non potuisse, elatumque cupiditate respexisse. Tum visam beluam vastam et immanem, circumplicatam serpentibus, quacumque incederet omnia arbusta, virgulta, tesca pervertere; et eum admiratum quaesisse de deo, quodnam illud esset tale monstrum. Et deum respondisse *Vastitatem esse Italiae*, praecepisseque ut pergeret protinus: quid retro atque a tergo fieret ne laboraret. — *id.* i. 24.

This passage may be somewhat harder than the foregoing, but a little attention will show that it is in the same general construction, — “*Hannibalem . . . visum esse*” like “*matrem . . . visam esse*,” — and that it contains several of the words and phrases already explained. It will greatly simplify the rendering of a passage like this, to drop the form of indirect discourse, beginning with the leading subject: *Hannibal, having taken Saguntum, seemed in his sleep to be summoned, &c.*: all the infinitives being translated by indicatives, and the subjunctive *laboraret* as an infinitive, *not to trouble himself*. A number of words must of course be suggested.

3. L. Paulus, consul iterum, cum ei bellum^a ut cum rege Perse gereret obtigisset, ut^b ea ipsa die domum ad vesperum rediit,^b filiulam^c suam Tertiam, quae tum erat admodum parva, osculans animum advertit^c tristiculam. ‘Quid est,’ inquit, ‘mea Tertia? quid tristis es?’ ‘Mi pater,’ inquit, ‘Persa periit.’ Tum ille artius puellam complexus, ‘Accipio,’ inquit, ‘mea filia, omen.’ Erat autem mortuus catellus eo nomine. — *id.* i. 46.

a. In this passage, — as we find it hard, with our habit of speech, to carry so many words in the mind undisposed of, — it may be

necessary after **bellum** to look for the verb to which it belongs. As **ut** is a relative word, the nearest verb will belong to that; so that we must take the next following, **obtigisset**, the meaning of which must be given (in connection with the root **TAG**); the object of **gereret** must be supplied from **bellum**; and it will read, *when the war had fallen to his lot to wage with king Perses*. This is not a good translation; but, having seen the Latin idea in this way, you can easily find a corresponding English expression: *It had fallen, &c.*

b. To translate **ut**, notice at once *the mood of its verb*; because the two uses of **ut** have meanings very far apart in English, though the Romans did not probably feel the difference. As the verb is here indicative, **ut** means *as* or *when*: **rediit** (**red**, back; **eo**, go) signifies *returned*.

c. The word **filiolam**, diminutive of **filia**, explains itself; while **animum advertit**, *turned his mind*, is to be rendered as a single transitive verb, *observed*; and its subject is **L. Paulus**.

4. Scipio Nasica cum ad poetam Ennium venisset, eique ab ostio quaerenti^a Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non esse;^b Nasica sensit, illam domini jussu dixisse et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus, cum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius, et cum a janua quaereret, exclamat Nasica, se domi non esse. Tum Ennius, 'Quid,' inquit, 'ego non cognosco vocem tuam?' Hic Nasica, 'Homo es impudens; ego cum quaererem, ancillae tuae credidi, te^c domi non esse; tu mihi non credis ipsi.'

a. *To him inquiring, &c.* can only mean *when he inquired for Ennius*.

b. The subject of the infinitive is here wanting, a rare usage in Latin; but it is obviously *Ennius*, to be supplied from the preceding.

c. The clause **te domi non esse** is evidently a secondary object of **credidi**; but, as *believe* does not take two objects in English, some word like *saying* must be supplied.

PART FOURTH.

READING LESSONS.

NOTE. — The small figures in the following Lessons refer to the Brief Rules of Syntax, pp. 162, 163.

I. FABLES.

1. *The Wolf and the Goat.*

Lupus capram²¹ conspiciatus est, quae in rupe pascebatur. Cum ad eam accedere non posset,⁴⁴ praedicabat apud se mollia prata ac varias herbas esse,³⁰ et eam hortabatur ut de rupe descenderet. Ei autem capra respondit: "Mi amice, non me ad pascua vocas, sed ipse cibi¹² indiges!"

2. *The Fox and the Grapes.*

Vulpes, extrema fame²⁶ coacta, uvam adpetebat, quae ex alta vite dependebat; sed summis viribus saliens eam attingere³⁸ non poterat. Tandem discessit, et, "Nondum matura est," inquit; "nolo acerbam sumere." — Sic saepe homines, quae facere non possunt, verbis elevant.

3. *The Farmer and his Dog.*

Rusticus in agros exiit ad opus suum. Filiolum, qui in cunis jacebat, reliquit cani¹⁷ fideli atque valido custodiendum. Adrepsit anguis immanis, qui puerulum exstincturus erat. Sed custos fidelis corripit eum dentibus²⁶ acutis, et, dum eum necare studet, cunas simul evertit super exstinctum anguem. Paulo³³ post ex arvo rediit agricola; cum cunas eversas cruentumque canis rictum videret, irā accenditur. Temere igitur custodem filioli interficit ligone, quem manibus tenebat. Sed ubi cunas restituit, super anguem occisum reperit puerum vivum et incolumem. — Paenitentia facinoris temere patrati tum sera fuit.

4. *The Farmer and his Sons.*

Inter filios rustici cujusdam grave discidium ortum erat. Diu frustra operam impenderat pater, hortans ut pacem atque concordiam colerent.⁴⁴ Tandem filiis¹⁴ "Virgulas," inquit, "mihi adferte decem, et considite." Tum omnes virgulas in unum fasciculum conligavit, eumque constrictum singulis filiis obtulit, hortans ut frangerent. Illi autem, quamquam vim omnem adhibebant, frustra laborarunt, nec quicquam profecerunt. Tum pater nodum discidit, et illis singulas virgulas dedit, quas sine ullo labore confregerunt. Quo facto,⁸⁵ rusticus filios ita adlocutus est: "Haec res vobis exemplo²⁰ sit. Tuti eritis ab inimicorum injuriis, quamdiu concordēs eritis; at simul ac facta erit dissensio atque discordia, inimici securi in vos inrumpent."

5. *The Boy that cried "Wolf."*

Puer in prato oves pascebat, atque per jocum clamitabat, ut sibi auxilium ferretur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrebant, neque lupum inveniebant. Ita ter quaterque se elusus a puero viderunt. Deinde cum ipse lupus aggrederetur, et puer re vera imploraret auxilium, nemo gregi¹⁸ subvenit, et oves lupi praeda sunt factae. — Mendaci homini non credimus, etiam cum vera dicit.

6. *The Fox and Crow.*

Corvus, cum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbore quadam consedit. Quo conspecto,⁸⁵ vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit, eumque callidis verbis adoritur: "O corve," inquit, "quam pulcra es avis, quam speciosa! Te decebat esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regiis virtutibus antecederes,⁴⁶ si vocem haberes."⁴⁶ His laudibus corvus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur,⁴⁴ clamorem edidit; sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit; eam vulpes statim rapuit, atque inridens, "Heus," inquit, "corve! Nihil tibi¹⁷ deest praeter mentem."

7. *The trained Monkeys.*

Simiae purpuratae instituebantur ad saltationem. Cujus¹² cum peritae viderentur esse, productae sunt in scenam. Cum

autem saltarent, objecit quidam nuces ; quibus visis, omnibus rebus posthabitis et neglectis,³⁵ ad nuces discurrerunt, et de eis inter se luctari atque depugnare coeperunt.

8. *The Ant and the Dove.*

Formica sitiens descenderat ad fontem ; sed undae eam abriperunt, nec multum aberat, quin misere periret.⁴⁴ Cum autem columba sortem ejus videret, misericordiā tacta ramulum in aquam injectit. Hunc adsecuta est formica, in eoque natans effugit mortem. Paulo³³ post venator, arcu instructus, illuc venit, columbamque telo²⁶ suo transfixurus fuit. Periculum sentit formica ; et, ut piae columbae opem ferret, accurrit, atque venatoris talum momordit. Dolore impeditus ille telum non recte misit, et columba incolumis avolavit. — Juva et juvabere ; raro beneficium perit.

9. *The Lion and his Troops.*

Leo bellum meditans lustrat aciem suam in ordines divisam. Cum ursus etiam asinum et leporem inter milites videret, hiantem ore ridens : “ Piger hic asinus,” inquit, “ galeam et gladium gerat⁴³ ? belli artes discat ? Molae¹⁵ aptior est quam castris. Ecquid autem firmus stabit lepus ? proeliabitur ? ” “ Erras, urse,” inquit leo ; “ asinus portabit onera, machinas, saxa ; et, ubi opus erit, eum tubicinem faciam, qui suo rugitu commilitones in pugnam ciebit ; lepus autem ob pedum pernecitatem celeris tabellarii officio³¹ fungetur.”

10. *The Nightingale and Cuckoo.*

Luscinia verno quodam die³⁴ dulcissime canere coepit. Pueri aliquot haud procul aberant in valle ludentes. Ii, cum lusui¹⁸ essent intenti, lusciniae cantu nihil movebantur. Paulo post cuculus coepit cuculare. Continuo pueri, lusu neglecto,³⁵ ei adclamant, vocemque²¹ cuculi identidem imitantur. “ Audisne, luscinia,” inquit cuculus, “ quanto plausu me isti excipiant,⁴⁵ et quantopere cantu meo delectentur ? ” Luscinia, quae cum eo altercari nolebat, nihil impendebat quominus ille suam vocem admiraretur.⁴⁴ Interea pastor fistulā canens cum puella lento gradu²⁸ praeterit. Cuculus iterum vociferatur, novas laudes

captans. At puella pastorem adlocuta: "Male sit," ⁴³ inquit, huic cuculo,¹⁴ qui cantui¹⁸ tuo odiosam vocem intermiscet."

Quo audito,⁸⁵ cum cuculus, in pudorem conjectus, conticisset, luscinia tam suaviter canere coepit, ut se ipsam superare velle videretur.⁴⁴ Pastor, fistulā depositā: "Consideramus," ⁴⁸ inquit, "hoc loco sub arbore, et lusciniā audiamus!" Tum pastor et puella cantum luscinae certatim laudare coeperunt, et diu taciti intentis auribus⁸⁶ sedent. Ad postremum adeo capta est puella sonorum dulcedine, ut etiam lacrimae erumperent. Tum luscinia ad cuculum conversa: "Videsne," inquit, "quantum ab imperitorum opinionibus prudentiorum iudicia distent?"⁴⁵ Una sane ex istis lacrimis, quanquam muta est, locupletior tamen est artis meae testis quam inconditus iste puerorum clamor, quem tantopere jactabas." — Fabula docet magnorum artificum opera⁸⁹ non vulgi opinione, sed prudentiorum existimatione esse⁸⁹ censenda.

II. DIALOGUES.

1. Study and Play.

Carolus. Veni, mi Ludovice!

Ernestus. Quo tandem?

C. In hortum; satis jam legimus et scripsimus; ludamus⁴³ quoque!

E. Ego psum meum ante absolvam.

C. Nondumne absolvisti?

E. Nondum omnia. Tunc jam omnia didicisti et scripsisti, quae praeceptor nos discere⁸⁸ et scribere jussit?

C. Non omnia.

E. Ergo nondum licet ludere.⁸⁹

C. Cur non liceat?⁴⁸ Reliqua discam et scribam post ludum.

E. Sed praestat primum discere, deinde ludere.⁸⁸

C. Quam morosum sodalem habeo!

E. Non sum morosus, sed facere volo, quae jussa sunt.

C. Ergo unā ediscamus! Ego tibi recitabo, tu mihi. Deinde cum omnia didicerimus, statim ad ludum properabimus.

E. Placet; nam peracti labores jucundi sunt.

2. *Early Rising.*

Fredericus Heus, heus, Carole ! Expergiscere ! Tempus est surgere. Audisne ?

C. Non audio.

F. Ubi ergo habes aures ?

C. In lecto.

F. Hoc video. Sed quid facis adhuc in lecto ?

C. Quid faciam ? Dormio.

F. Dormis ? et loqueris tamen mecum ?

C. Saltem volo dormire.

F. Nunc autem non est tempus dormiendi,⁴¹ sed surgendi.

C. Quota est hora ?

F. Septima.

C. Quando tu surrexisti e lecto ?

F. Jam ante duas horas.

C. Num sorores meae jam surrexerunt ?

F. Jam pridem.

C. Sed frater meus certe adhuc jacet in lecto ?

F. Erras. Cum expergefacerem eum, statim reliquit nidum suum.

C. Mox igitur surgam.

3. *An Afternoon Walk.*

Fredericus. Age, mi frater, ambulemus ;⁴⁸ tempestas serena est.

Augustus. Placet ; sed ubi ambulabimus ? In pratisne ?

F. Minime ; prata enim pluvia inundavit, et viae lutulentae sunt. Placetne adscendere in montem, quem e fenestra propicimus ?

A. Placet ; jam pridem enim in monte non fuimus.

F. Hiems nos prohibuit ; hieme³⁴ enim mons glacie et nive tectus erat. Quid stas autem ?

A. Duae viae ducunt ad montem : altera recta, altera flexuosa. Utram eligamus ?⁴³

F. Flexuosam censeo ; est enim umbrosior, et sol fervet. Descendentes alterā ibimus et ambulationem variabimus. Vesperi enim sol minus fervet.

A. Proinde eamus !

4. Sport.

Paullus. Trahit sua quemque voluptas ; mihi¹⁶ placet venatio.

Thomas. Placet etiam mihi ; sed ubi canes, ubi venabula, ubi casses ?

P. Valeant apri, ursi, cervi, vulpes ! nos insidiabimur cuniculis.¹⁸

Vicentius. At ego laqueos injiciam locustis.¹⁸

Laurentius. Ego ranas captabo.

Bartholus. Ego papiliones venabor.

L. Difficile est sectari³⁸ volantia.

B. Difficile, sed pulcrum, nisi pulcrius esse ducis sectari lumbricos aut cochleas, quia carent alis.²⁸

L. Equidem mālō insidiari piscibus ; est mihi¹⁷ hamus elegans.

B. Sed unde parabis escam ?

L. Lumbricorum ubivis magna est copia.

B. Est, si tibi velint prorere e terra.

L. At ego mox efficiam, ut multa milia prosiliant.

B. Quo pacto ? incantamentis ?²⁶

L. Videbis artem. Imple hanc situlam aquā.²⁸ Hos juglandium summos cortices virentes confractos immittito. Hac aqua perfunde solum. Nunc observa paulisper. Vides emergentes ?

B. Rem prodigiosam video. Sic olim, opinor, exsiliabant armati viri ex satis serpentis dentibus. Sed plerique pisces delicatioris et elegantioris sunt palati,⁹ quam ut escā tam vulgari capiantur (*too dainty to be caught*).

L. Nōvi quoddam insecti genus, quo talibus insidiari soleo.

B. Tu vide, possisne⁴⁶ imponere piscibus ; ego ranis¹⁴ facessam negotium.

L. Quomodo ? reti ?²⁶

B. Non ; sed arcu.

L. Novum piscandi genus.

B. At non injucundum. Videbis et fatebere.

V. Quid, si certemus⁴⁶ nucibus ?

P. Nuces pueris relinquamus ; nos grandiores sumus.

V. Et tamen nihil aliud adhuc quam pueri sumus.

P. Sed quibus¹⁶ decorum est ludere nucibus, eisdem non indecorum est equitare⁸⁸ in arundine longa.

V. Tu igitur praescripto lusūs genus ; sequar, quocumque vocaveris.

P. Et ego futurus sum omnium horarum homo.

5. *A Lesson in Manners.*

Paedagogus. Tu mihi videris non in aula natus, sed in caula ; adeo moribus²⁶ es agrestibus. Puerum ingenuum decent ingenui mores. Quoties adloquitur te quispiam, cui debes honorem, compone te in rectum corporis statum, aperi caput. Vultus sit⁴⁸ nec tristis nec torvus nec impudens nec protervus nec instabilis, sed hilari modestiā temperatus ; oculi verecundi, semper intenti in eum quocum loqueris ; juncti pedes, quietae manūs. Neve vacillato alternis tibiis, neve manūs agant gestūs, neve mordeto labrum, neve scabito caput, neve fodito aures. Vestis item ad decorum componatur, ut totus cultus, vultus, gestus, habitus corporis ingenuam modestiam et verecundam indolem prae se ferat.⁴⁴

Puer. Quid, si mediter ?⁴⁶

Pae. Fac.

Pu. Sicine satis ?

Pae. Nondum.

Pu. Quid, si sic ?

Pae. Propemodum.

Pu. Quid si sic ?

Pae. Hem satis est ; hoc tene, ne sis⁴⁸ inepte loquax aut praeceps. Neve vegetur animus interim, sed sis attentus, quid alter dicat. Si quid erit respondendum, id facito paucis ac prudenter, interdum praefatus honorem, nonnunquam etiam addito cognomine⁸⁶ honoris gratiā ; atque identidem modice flectās alterum genu, praesertim ubi responsum absolveris. Neve abito, nisi praefatus veniam aut ab ipso dimissus. Nunc age : specimen aliquod hujus rei nobis praebe !

Quantum temporis abfuisti a maternis aedibus?

Pu. Jam sex ferme menses.²⁸

Pae. Addendum erat, *domine*.

Pu. Jam sex ferme menses, domine.

Pae. Non tangeris desiderio matris?

Pu. Nonnunquam sane.

Pae. Cupisne eam revisere?³⁸

Pu. Cupio, domine, si id pace liceat⁴⁶ tua.

Pae. Nunc flectendum erat genu. Bene se habet. Sic pergito! Cum loqueris, cave, ne praecipites⁴⁴ sermonem aut haesites linguā aut palato murmures, sed distincte, clare, articulatim consuescito proferre verba tua. Si quem praeteribis natu grandem, magistratum, sacerdotem, doctorem aut omnino virum gravem, memento aperire caput. In convivio sic te praebebis hilarem, ut semper memineris, quid deceat⁴⁵ aetatem tuam; postremus omnium admoveto manum patīnae.¹⁸ Si quid dabitur lautius, recusato modeste; si instabatur, accipe et age gratias; mox, decerptā particulā,³⁶ quod reliquum est, illi qui tibi obtulit reddito, aut alicui proxime adcumbenti. Si quis praebibet, hilariter illi bene precator, sed ipse bibito modice. Si non sitis, tamen admoveto calicem labris. Adride loquentibus; ipse cave, ne quid loquare, nisi rogatus. Ne cui obtrectato, ne cui temet anteposito, ne tua jactato, ne aliena despicio. Esto comis, etiam erga tenuis fortunae sodales. Ita fiet, ut sine invidia laudem invenias et amicos pares. Si videris convivium extrahi, precatus veniam ac salutatis convivis, subducito te a mensa. Vide, ut horum memineris.

Pu. Dabitur opera, mi praeceptor! Numquid aliud vis?

Pae. Adito nunc libros tuos.

Pu. Fiet.

IV. ANECDOTES.

1. *Themistocles*.

Noctu ambulabat in publico Themistocles, quod somnum capere non posset;⁴⁷ quaerentibusque respondebat *Miltiadis tropaeis se e somno suscitari*.³⁸

2. Socrates.

Socrates, cum esset ex eo quaesitum, Archelaum, Perdiccae filium, qui tum fortunatissimus haberetur,⁴⁷ nonne beatum putaret :⁴⁵ *Haud scio*, inquit ; *nunquam enim cum eo conlocutus sum*. — Ain tu ? aliter id scire non potes ? — *Nullo modo*. — Tu igitur ne de Persarum quidem rege magno potes dicere, beatusne sit ? — *An ego possim*,⁴⁸ *cum ignorem quam sit*⁴⁵ *doctus, quam vir bonus ?* — Quid ? tu in eo sitam vitam beatam putas ? — *Ita prorsus existimo : bonos beatos ; improbos miseros*. — Miser ergo Archelaus ? — *Certe, si injustus*.

3. Spartan Broth.

Lacedaemone cum tyrannus cenavisset Dionysius, negavit se jure illo nigro, quod cenae caput erat, delectatum. Tum is, qui illa coxerat : *Minime mirum ; condimenta enim defuerunt*. Quae tandem ? inquit ille. *Labor in venatu, sudor, cursus ad Eurotam, fames, sitis ; his enim rebus Lacedaemoniorum epulae condiuntur*.

4. Respect to Age.

Cum Athenis ludis quidam in theatrum grandis natu venisset, in magno consessu locus ei a suis civibus nusquam est datus. Cum autem ad Lacedaemonios accessisset, qui legati cum essent, certo in loco consederant, consurrexerunt omnes et senem illum sessum⁴² receperunt. Quibus cum a cuncto consessu plausus esset multiplex datus, dixit ex eis quidam : *Athenienses sciunt, quae recta sunt ; sed facere nolunt*.

5. Fabius.

Cum, Tarento amisso,⁸⁵ arcem tamen Livius Salinator tenuisset, multaque ex eā proelia praeclara fecisset, cum aliquot post annos Maximus id oppidum recepisset, rogaretque eum Salinator, ut meminisset operā suā²⁰ se Tarentum recepisse : *Quidni*, inquit, *meminerim ?* ⁴⁸ *nunquam enim recepissem*⁴⁶ *nisi tu perdidisses*.

6. Nasica and Ennius.

Nasica cum ad poëtam Ennium venisset, eique ab ostio quaerenti Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non esse ; Nasica

sensit illam domini jussu dixisse, et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus, cum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius et eum a janua quaereret, exclamat Nasica se domi non esse. Tum Ennius : " Quid ? ego non cognosco vocem," inquit, " tuam ? " Hic Nasica : *Homo (inquit) es impudens. Ego cum te quaererem, ancillae tuae¹⁶ credidi te domi non esse ; tu mihi non credis ipsi ?*

IV. THE KINGS OF ROME.

1. Romanum imperium a ROMULO exordium habet, qui, Rheae Silviae, Vestalis virginis, et Martis filius, cum Remo, fratre gemino, urbem condidit, quam ex nomine suo Romam vocavit (753 a. Chr.). Asylo aperto ad numerum civium augendum, ingens hominum multitudo ex finitimis civitatibus Romam⁸⁶ confluit. At viri non habebant feminas. Itaque Romulus ludos sollennes instituit, invitavitque ad eorum spectaculum vicinas urbis Romae nationes. Cum alii multi convenerunt, tum Sabinorum omnis multitudo cum liberis et conjugibus. Dum ludi eduntur, extemplo Romani discurrunt, magnamque virginum partem rapiunt.

2. Propter raptarum mulierum injuriam Sabini Romanis¹⁸ bellum intulerunt. Res venit ad pugnam. Utrunque acerrime decertatur. In mediâ acie repente raptæ mulieres crinibus passis scissaque veste ausae sunt se inter tela volantia inferre, et precibus infestas acies dirimere. Rebus compositis, Romulus centum ex senioribus legit, quorum consilio omnia ageret, quos *senatores* nominavit propter senectutem. Anno⁸⁴ regni tricesimo septimo, cum orta subito tempestate non comparuisset, ad deos transisse creditus est (716).

3. Postea NŪMA POMPILIUS, Curibus, in urbe agri Sabinorum, natus, rex creatus est (715—673). Qui bellum quidem nullum gessit, sed non minus civitati quam Romulus profuit. Nam legibus moribusque et sacris plurimis constitutis⁸⁵ populi barbari et bellicosi mores mollivit. Etiam annum descripsit in decem menses. Omnia autem, quae faciebat, se nymphæ Egeriae jussu facere dictitabat. Regnavit tres et quadraginta annos.²³ — Huic¹⁸ successit TULLUS HOSTILIUS (673—640).

Is bella reparavit. Bellum Albanis inlatum certamine trigeminorum fratrum, qui forte in utroque exercitu erant nec aetate nec viribus dispares, finitum est. Deinde etiam Veientes et Fidenates bello superavit. Cum xxx annos regnasset, fulmine ictus cum domo sua arsit.

4. Post eum ANCUS MARTIUS, Numae ex filia nepos, suscepit imperium (640—616). Contra Latinos dimicavit, apud ostium Tiberis urbem condidit, quam Ostiam vocavit. Vicesimo quarto anno imperii morbo periit.—Deinde regnum TARQUINIUS PRISCUS accepit (616—578). Is numerum senatorum duplicavit; Circum Romae aedificavit; ludos Romanos instituit. Vicit idem etiam Sabinos, nec parum agrorum, eis ademptorum, urbis Romae territorio adjunxit. Muros fecit et cloācas; Capitolium inchoavit. Tricesimo octavo imperii anno per Anci filios occisus est, regis¹ ejus, cui⁴ ipse successerat.—Post eum SERVIUS TULLIUS suscepit imperium (578—534). Primus omnium¹⁰ censum ordinavit. Sub eo Roma habuit capitum LXXXIII milia civium, cum eis qui in agris erant. Occisus est XLV imperii anno scelere generi sui Tarquinii, filii¹ ejus regis cui¹⁸ ipse successerat, et filiae,⁹ quam Tarquinius habebat uxorem.

5. Hic TARQUINIUS, qui propter superbiam *Superbi* cognomen accepit, septimus fuit atque ultimus regum¹⁰ (534—509). Multas gentes devicit; templum Jovi¹⁴ in Capitolio aedificavit. Postea Ardeam, urbem Etruriae, oppugnans imperium perdidit. Nam cum filius ejus nobilissimae feminae, Lucretiae,¹⁴ eidemque pudicissimae, vim fecisset, ea, de injuria marito¹⁴ et patri et amicis quæstæ, in omnium conspectu se occidit, postquam eos obtestata est, ut eam injuriam ulciscerentur.⁴⁴ Propter quam causam Marcus Brutus, Tarquinius Collatinus alique in exitium regis conjuraverunt, et, populo concitato, ei¹⁹ imperium ademerunt. Cum uxore et liberis suis fugit, cum xxv annos regnasset. Ita Romae⁸⁶ regnatum est per septem reges annos²⁸ CCXLIV.

6. Hinc consules coepti sunt pro uno rege duo hac causa creari, ut, si unus malus esse voluisset, alter eum, habens eandem potestatem, coërceret. Et placuit, ut ne imperium longius quam annum haberent, ne per diuturnitatem potes-

tatis insolentiores fierent, sed aequitatem semper servarent, qui se post annum scirent⁴⁷ futuros esse privatos. Fuerunt igitur anno primo, expulsis regibus, consules L. Junius Brutus, qui maxime egerat ut Tarquinius pelleretur, et Tarquinius Collatinus, maritus Lucretiae. Sed Tarquinio Collatino⁴⁹ statim sublata dignitas est. Placuerat enim, ne quisquam in urbe maneret, qui Tarquinius vocaretur.⁴⁷ In ejus locum factus est Valerius Publicola consul.

7. Commovit tamen bellum urbi¹⁴ Romae rex Tarquinius, qui erat expulsus, et, collectis multis gentibus, ut in regnum posset restitui, dimicavit. In prima pugna Brutus consul et Ancus, Tarquinii filius, alter alterum occiderunt. Romani tamen ex ea pugna victores discesserunt. Brutum Romanae matronae, defensorem pudicitiae suae, quasi communem patrem, per annum luxerunt. Valerius Publicola Spurium Lucretium, Lucretiae patrem, collegam sibi fecit: quo³⁵ morbo²⁶ mortuo, iterum Horatium Pulvillum collegam sibi sumpsit. Ita primus annus quinque consules habuit.

8. Etiam secundo anno iterum Tarquinius, ut reciperetur in regnum, bellum Romanis¹⁸ intulit, auxilium ei ferente Porsenā, Etruscorum rege.¹ Is, ne Tiberim transiret, virtute Horatii Coclitis prohibitus est, qui, dum alii pontem rescindunt, unus Etruscos sustinuit, et, ponte rupto, armatus se in flumen misit, et ad suos transnavit. Cum Porsena urbem obsideret, Gaius Mucius Scaevola, adulescens nobilis, in castra hostium se contulit, ut Porsenam regem occideret. At pro rege scribam obtruncat, qui propter eum sedebat pari fere ornatu indutus.² Tum a regiis satellitibus comprehensus ante tribunal regis constitutus est. Qui⁷ cum tormenta minitaretur, Mucius dextrā accenso ad sacrificium foculo injectā: “En tibi,” inquit, “quam vile corpus sit⁴⁵ eis qui magnam gloriam vident!” Qua animi virtute percussus rex juvenem intactum inviolatumque dimisit. Tum Mucius, quasi remunerans beneficium, trecentos principes juventutis Romanae in ejus vitam conjurasse ait. Qua re territus Porsena pacem fecit. Tarquinius autem Tusculum⁸⁶ abiit, ibique cum Romanis privatus cum uxore consenuit.

V. THE WAR WITH PORSENA. — *Livy.*1. *Horatius holds the Bridge.*

1. Jam Tarquinius ad Lartem Porsenam, Clusinum regem, perfugerant. Porsena Romam³⁶ infesto exercitu venit. Non unquam alias ante tantus terror senatum invasit: adeo valida res tum Clusina⁸ erat, magnumque Porsenae nomen. Nec hostes²¹ modo timebant, sed suosmet ipsi cives, ne Romana plebs, metu percussa, receptis in urbem regibus, vel cum servitute pacem acciperet. Multa igitur blandimenta plebi per id tempus ab senatu data. Haec indulgentia Patrum adeo concordem civitatem tenuit, ut regium⁸ nomen²¹ non summi magis, quam infimi, horrerent; nec quisquam unus malis artibus postea tam popularis esset, quam tum bene imperando⁴¹ universus senatus fuit.

2. Cum hostes adessent,⁴⁴ pro se quisque in urbem ex agris demigrant:⁶ urbem ipsam sepiunt praesidiis. Alia muris, alia Tiberi objecto videbantur tuta. Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit: ni unus vir fuisset,⁴⁶ Horatius Cocles: qui, positus forte in statione pontis, cum captum repentino impetu Janiculum, atque inde citatos decurrere⁸⁹ hostes vidisset, trepidamque turbam suorum arma ordinesque relinquere, reprehensans singulos, obsistens, obtestansque deum⁹ et hominum fidem, testabatur: *nequicquam deserto praesidio eos fugere. Si transitum pontem a tergo reliquissent, jam plus hostium in Palatio Capitolioque, quam in Faniculo, fore. Itaque monere, praedicere, ut pontem ferro, igni, quacumque vi possent, interrumpant. Se impetum hostium, quantum corpore uno posset obsisti, excepturum.*⁸⁹ Vadit inde in primum aditum pontis; insignisque inter conspecta cedentium pugnae terga, ipso miraculo²⁸ audaciae obstupescit hostes.

3. Duos tamen cum eo pudor tenuit, Sp. Lartium ac T. Herminium, ambos claros genere²⁶ factisque. Cum his primam periculi procellam, et quod tumultuosissimum pugnae¹⁰ erat, parumper sustinuit; deinde eos quoque ipsos, exigua parte pontis relicta,⁸⁵ cedere in tutum coëgit. Circumferens

inde truces minaciter oculos ad procures Etruscorum, nunc singulos provocare,⁴⁰ nunc increpare omnes: *Servitia regum superborum, suae libertatis*¹² *immemores, alienam oppugnatum*⁴² *venire.* Cunctati aliquamdiu sunt, dum alius alium, ut proelium incipiant, circumspectant: pudor deinde commovit aciem, et, clamore sublato, undique in unum hostem tela conjiciunt.

4. Quae cum in objecto cuncta scuto haesissent, neque ille minus obstinatus ingenti pontem obtineret gradu, jam impetu conabantur detrudere³⁸ virum; cum simul fragor rupti pontis, simul clamor Romanorum, alacritate perfecti operis sublatus, pavore subito impetum sustinuit. Tum Cocles, *Tiberine pater*, inquit, *te sancte precor, haec arma et hunc militem propitio flumine accipias.*⁴³ Ita sic armatus in Tiberim desiluit; multisque superincidentibus telis, incolumis ad suos natavit. Grata erga tantam virtutem civitas fuit: statua⁷ in comitio posita, agri¹⁰ quantum uno die⁸⁴ circumaravit, datum. Privata quoque inter publicos honores studia eminebant: nam in magna inopia pro domesticis copiis unusquisque ei aliquid, fraudans se ipse victu²⁸ suo, contulit.

2. The Deed of Mucius Scaevola.

1. Obsidio erat nihilo⁸³ minus, et frumenti cum summa caritate inopia; sedendoque expugnaturum⁸⁹ se urbem spem Porsena habebat: cum C. Mucius, adolescens nobilis, primo sua sponte penetrare³⁸ in hostium castra constituit: dein, metuens ne, si consulum injussu et ignaris omnibus iret,⁴⁷ forte deprehensus a custodibus Romanis retraheretur⁴⁴ ut transfuga,¹ senatum adiit: *Transire Tiberim*, inquit, *Patres, et intrare, si possim,*⁴⁸ *castra hostium volo; non praedo, nec populationum in vicem ultor: majus, si dii juvant, in animo est facinus.* Approbant Patres: abdito intra vestem ferro, proficiscitur.

2. Ubi eo venit, in confertissima turba prope regium tribunal constitit. Ibi cum stipendium forte militibus daretur,⁴⁴ et scriba, cum rege sedens pari fere ornatu, multa ageret, eum

milites vulgo adirent, timens sciscitari uter Porsena esset,⁴⁵ ne ignorando regem semet ipse aperiret quis esset,⁴⁵ scribam pro rege obtruncat. Vadentem inde, qua per trepidam turbam cruento mucrone²⁶ sibi ipse fecerat viam, cum, concursu ad clamorem facto, comprehensum regii⁸ satellites retraxissent, ante tribunal regis destitutus, tum quoque, inter tantas fortunae minas, metuendus magis quam metuens:

3. *Romanus sum, inquit, civis: C. Mucium vocant. Hostis hostem occidere volui; nec ad mortem minus animi³⁰ est, quam fuit ad caedem. Et facere³⁸ et pati fortia, Romanum est. Nec unus in te ego hos animos gessi: longus post me ordo est idem petentium decus. Proinde in hoc discrimen, si juvat, accingere, ut in singulas horas capite dimices tuo; ferrum hostemque in vestibulo habeas regiae. Hoc tibi juvenus¹ Romana indicimus bellum. Nullam aciem, nullum proelium timueris. Uni tibi,¹⁷ et cum singulis, res erit.*

4. Cum rex, simul ira infensus, periculoque contreritus, circumdari ignes minitabundus juberet, nisi expromeret⁴⁷ prope quas insidiarum sibi minas per ambages jaceret:⁴⁷ *En tibi, inquit, ut sentias quam vile corpus sit iis qui magnam gloriam vident: dextramque accenso ad sacrificium foculo¹⁸ injicit. Prope attonitus miraculo rex, cum ab sede sua prosiluisset, amoverique ab altaribus juvenem²² jussisset,⁴⁴ Tu vero abi, inquit, in te magis, quam in me, hostilia ausus. Fuberem macte virtute esse, si pro mea patria ista virtus staret.⁴⁶ Nunc jure²⁸ belli liberum te, intactum inviolatumque hinc dimitto.*

5. Tum Mucius, quasi remunerans meritum, *Quandoquidem, inquit, est apud te virtuti¹⁷ honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me, quod minis nequisti; trecenti conjuravimus principes¹ juvenutis Romanae, ut in te hac via grassaremur. Mea prima sors fuit; ceteri, ut cuique ceciderit primo, quoad te opportunum fortuna dederit, suo quisque tempore,³⁴ aderunt. Mucium²¹ dimissum, cui¹⁸ postea Scaevolae a clade dextrae manus cognomen inditum, legati a Porsena Romam secuti sunt. Composita pace, exercitum ab Janiculo deduxit Porsena, et agro Romano excessit. Patres C. Mucio virtutis causa trans Tiberim agrum dono²⁰ dedere, quae postea sunt *Mucia*⁸ *Prata* appellata.*

3. *The Escape of Clælia.*

1. Ergo, ita honorata virtute, feminae quoque ad publica decora excitatae. Et Cloelia virgo, una ex obsidibus, cum castra Etruscorum forte haud procul ripa²⁸ Tiberis locata essent, frustrata custodes,²¹ dux¹ agminis virginum inter tela hostium Tiberim tranavit; sospitesque omnes Romam ad propinquos restituit. Quod ubi regi nuntiatum est, primo, incensus ira, oratores Romam misit ad Cloeliam obsidem deposcendam;⁴¹ alias haud magni¹¹ facere:⁴⁰ deinde in admirationem versus, *supra Coclites Muciosque* dicere *id facinus esse*; et prae se ferre, *quemadmodum, si non dedatur*⁴¹ *obses, pro rupto se foedus habiturum*; sic deditam, inviolatam ad suos remissurum.

2. Utrunque constitit fides: et Romani pignus pacis ex foedere restituerunt; et apud regem Etruscum non tuta solum, sed honorata etiam, virtus fuit. Laudatam virginem parte obsidum se donare dixit: ipsa, quos vellet, legeret.⁴⁸ Productis omnibus, elegisse impubes dicitur: quod et virginitati decorum, et consensu obsidum ipsorum probabile erat, eam aetatem potissimum liberari ab hoste, quae maxime opportuna injuriae esset.⁴⁷ Pace redintegrata, Romani novam in femina virtutem novo genere honoris, statua¹ equestri, donavere. In summa *Sacra Via* fuit posita virgo insidens equo.¹⁸

VI. MISCELLANEOUS SELECTIONS.

1. *A Haunted House.*

1. Erat Athenis³⁶ spatiosa et capax domus, sed infamis et pestilens: per silentium noctis sonus ferri,⁹ et, si attenderes acrius, strepitus vinculorum, longius primo, deinde e proximo, reddebatur: mox apparebat idolon, senex¹ macie et squalore confectus, promissâ barbâ,²⁶ horrenti capillo: cruribus compedes, manibus catenas gerebat quatiebatque.

2. Inde inhabitantibus tristes diraeque noctes per metum vigilabantur: vigiliam morbus, et, crescente formidine, mors sequebatur. Nam interdiu quoque, quamquam abscesserat imago, memoria imaginis oculis¹⁸ inerrabat; longiorque causis³²

timor erat. Deserta inde et damnata solitudine domus, totaque illi monstro³⁹ relicta; proscribatur, seu quis emere, seu quis conducere, ignarus tanti mali, vellet.

3. Venit Athenas³⁶ philosophus Athenodorus: legit titulum; auditoque pretio, quia suspecta vilitas, percontatus, omnia²⁵ docetur, ac nihilo minus, immo tanto magis, conducit. Ubi coepit advesperascere, jubet sterni [lectum] sibi prima domus parte: poscit pugillares, stilum, lumen: suos omnes in interiora dimittit; ipse ad scribendum animum, oculos, manum intendit, ne vacua mens audita simulacra et inanes sibi metus fingeret.⁴⁴

4. Initio, quale ubique, silentium noctis: deinde concuti⁴⁰ ferrum, vincula moveri. Ille non tollere oculos, non remittere stilum, sed obfirmare animum, auribusque praetendere. Tum crebrescere⁴⁰ fragor, adventare, et jam ut in limine, jam ut intra limen, audiri. Respicit: videt agnoscitque narratam sibi effigiem. Stabat, innuebatque digito, similis vocanti.¹⁵ Hic, contra, ut paulum exspectaret manu significat: rursusque ceris¹⁸ et stilo incumbit.

5. Illa scribentis capiti¹⁸ catenis insonabat. Respicit rursus, idem quod prius innuentem: nec moratus, tollit lumen, et sequitur. Ibat illa lento gradu, quasi gravis vinculis. Postquam deflexit in aream domus, repente dilapsa deserit comitem; desertus herbas et folia concerpta signum¹ loco ponit.

6. Postero die adit magistratus; monet, ut illum locum effodi jubeant. Inveniuntur ossa inserta catenis et implicita, quae corpus aevo terraeque putrefactum nuda et exesa reliquerat vinculis: collecta publice sepeliuntur: domus postea, rite conditis manibus,³⁶ caruit. — PLINY, *Epist.* vii. 27.

2. *A Sharper of Syracuse.*

1. C. Canius, eques Romanus, nec infacetus, et satis literatus, cum se Syracusas, otiandi (ut ipse dicere solebat) non negotiandi causa, contulisset, dictitabat se hortulos aliquos velle³⁹ emere, quo invitare amicos, et ubi se oblectare sine interpellatoribus, posset.⁴⁷ Quod cum percrebuisset, Pythius

ei¹⁹ quidam, qui argentariam faceret Syracusis, dixit, venales quidem se hortos non habere, sed licere [eis] uti Canio, si vellet,⁴⁷ ut suis: et simul ad cenam hominem in hortos invitavit in posterum diem.

2. Cum ille promississet, tum Pythius (qui esset,⁴⁴ ut argentarius, apud omnes ordines gratosus) piscatores ad se convocavit, et ab his petivit, ut ante suos hortulos postridie piscarentur; dixitque quid eos facere vellet.⁴⁵ Ad cenam tempore venit Canius: opipare a Pythio apparatus convivium: cymbarum ante oculos multitudo: pro se quisque, quod ceperat, adferebat: ante pedes Pythii pisces abjiciabantur.

3. Tum Canius 'Quaeso,' inquit, 'quid est hoc, Pythi? tantumne piscium, tantumne cymbarum?' Et ille, 'Quid mirum?' inquit. 'Hoc loco est, Syracusis quicquid est piscium; haec aquatio: hac villa²⁸ isti carere non possunt.' Incensus Canius cupiditate, contendit a Pythio ut venderet. Gravate ille primo. Quid multa? impetrat: emit homo cupidus et locuples, tanti,¹¹ quanti Pythius voluit; et emit instructos: nomina facit; negotium conficit.

4. Invitat Canius postridie familiares suos. Venit ipse mature. Scalmum nullum videt. Quaerit ex proximo vicino, num feriae quaedam piscatorum essent, quod eos nullos videret.⁴⁷ 'Nullae, quod sciam,' inquit ille: 'sed hic piscari nulli solent: itaque heri mirabar, quid accidisset.'⁴⁵

5. Stomachari Canius, sed quid faceret?⁴⁸ nondum enim Aquillius, collega et familiaris meus, protulerat de dolo malo formulas: in quibus ipsis cum ex eo quaereretur, *Quid esset*⁴⁵ *dolus malus*; respondebat, *Cum esset*⁴⁷ *aliud simulatum, aliud actum*. — CICERO, *De Off.* iii. 14.

3. *The Vale of Enna.*

1. Vetus est haec opinio, iudices, quae constat ex anti-quissimis Graecorum literis ac monumentis, insulam Siciliam totam esse Cereri et Liberæ consecratam. Hoc cum ceterae gentes sic arbitrantur, tum ipsis Siculis ita persuasum est, ut in animis eorum insitum atque innatum esse videatur.

Nam et natas esse has in iis locis deas, et fruges in ea terra primum repertas esse arbitrantur, et raptam esse Liberam, quam eandem Proserpinam vocant, ex Hennensium nemore : qui locus, quod in media est insula situs, umbilicus Siciliae nominatur. Quam cum investigare et conquirere Ceres vellet, dicitur inflammasse taedas iis ignibus qui ex Aetnae vertice erumpunt : quas sibi cum ipsa praeferret, orbem omnem peragrasse terrarum.

2. Henna autem, ubi ea quae dico gesta esse memorantur, est loco perexcelso atque edito, quo in summo est aequata agri planities et aquae perennes, tota vero omni aditu circumcisa atque directa est : quam circa lacus lucique sunt plurimi, atque laetissimi flores omni tempore anni, locus ut ipse raptum illum virginis, quem jam a pueris accepimus, declarare videatur.

3. Etenim prope est spelunca quaedam, conversa ad aquilonem, infinitâ altitudine, qua Ditem patrem ferunt repente cum curru exstitisse, abreptamque ex eo loco virginem secum asportasse, et subito non longe a Syracusis penetrasse sub terras, lacumque in eo loco repente exstitisse : ubi usque ad hoc tempus Syracusani festos dies anniversarios agunt celeberrimo virorum mulierumque conventu.

4. Propter hujus opinionis vetustatem, quod horum in iis locis vestigia ac prope incunabula reperiuntur deorum, mira quaedam totâ Siciliâ privatim ac publice religio est Cereris Hennensis.⁸ Etenim multa saepe prodigia vim ejus numenque declarant : multis saepe in difficillimis rebus praesens auxilium ejus oblatum est, ut haec insula ab ea non solum diligî, sed etiam incolî custodiriue videatur. — *Verr.* v. 48.

4. *The Earth is made for Man.*

1. Terra vero feta frugibus et vario leguminum genere, quae cum maxima largitate fundit, ea ferarumne an hominum causa gignere videtur? Quid de vitibus olivetisque dicam? quarum uberrimi laetissimique fructus nihil omnino ad bestias pertinent. Neque enim serendi neque colendi nec tempestive demetendi percipiendique fructus, neque condendi ac repo-

nendi ulla pecudum⁹ scientia est, earumque omnium rerum hominum est et usus et cura.

2. Ut fides igitur et tibiae eorum causa factas dicendum est, qui illis uti possent,⁴⁸ sic ea, quae diximus, iis solis¹⁴ confitendum est esse parata, qui utuntur; nec si quae bestiae furantur aliquid ex iis aut rapiunt, illarum quoque causa ea nata esse dicemus. Neque enim homines murum aut fornicarum causā frumentum condunt, sed conjugum et liberorum et familiarum suarum. Itaque bestiae furtim (ut dixi) fruuntur, domini palam et libere.

3. Tantumque abest ut haec bestiarum etiam causa parata sint, ut ipsas bestias hominum gratia generatas esse videamus. Quid enim oves aliud adferunt, nisi ut earum villis confectis atque contextis homines vestiantur? Quae quidem neque ali neque sustentari neque ullum fructum edere ex se sine cultu hominum et curatione potuissent.⁴⁶

4. Canum vero tam fida custodia tamque amans dominorum adulatio tantumque odium in externos et tam incredibilis ad investigandum sagacitas narium, tanta alacritas in venando quid significat aliud, nisi se ad hominum commoditates esse generatos?

5. Quid de bobus loquar? quorum ipsa terga declarant non esse se ad onus accipiendum⁴¹ figurata, cervices autem natae ad jugum, tum vires humerorum et latitudines ad aratra extrahenda. Quibus,¹⁸ cum terrae subigerentur fissione glaebarum, ab illo aureo genere (ut poëtae loquuntur) vis nulla umquam adferebatur.

*Ferrea tūm vero proles exorta repente est,
Ausaque funestum prima est fabricarier ense,
Et gustare manu vinctum domitumque iuvenum.*

Tanta putabatur utilitas percipi ex bobus, ut eorum visceribus vesci scelus haberetur.

6. Longum est mulorum persequi⁸⁸ utilitates et asinorum, quae certe ad hominum usum paratae sunt. Sus vero quid habet praeter escam? Cui¹⁹ quidem, ne putresceret, animam ipsam pro sale datam dicit esse Chrysippus. Qua pecude,⁸²

quod erat ad vescendum hominibus apta, nihil genuit natura fecundius.

7. Quid multitudinem suavitatemque piscium dicam, quid avium? ex quibus tanta percipitur voluptas, ut interdum Pronoea nostra Epicurea fuisse videatur. Atque hae ne caperentur quidem, nisi hominum ratione atque sollertia; quamquam aves quasdam et alites et oscines, ut nostri augures appellant, rerum augurandarum ⁴¹ causa esse natas putamus.

8. Jam vero immanes et feras beluas nanciscimur venando, ut et vescamur iis ⁸¹ et exerceamur in venando ad similitudinem bellicae disciplinae, et utamur domitis et condocerentis, ⁸¹ ut elephantis, multaque ex earum corporibus remedia morbis ¹⁴ et vulneribus eligamus, sicut ex quibusdam stirpibus et herbis, quarum utilitates longinqui temporis usu ²⁸ et periclitatione percipimus.

9. Totam licet animis tamquam oculis lustrare terram mariaque omnia: cernes jam spatia frugifera atque immensa camporum vestitusque densissimos montium, pecudum pastus, tum incredibili cursus maritimos celeritate. Nec vero supra terram, sed etiam in intimis ejus tenebris plurimarum rerum latet utilitas, quae ad usum hominum orta ab hominibus solis invenitur. — *De Naturâ Deorum*, ii. 62–64.

5. *The Heavens declare a Creator.*

1. Praeclare ergo Aristoteles: 'Si essent,' ⁴⁶ inquit, 'qui sub terra semper habitavissent ⁴⁷ bonis et illustribus domiciliis, quae essent ⁴⁷ ornata signis atque picturis, instructaque rebus iis omnibus quibus abundant ii qui beati putantur, nec tamen exissent umquam supra terram, acceperunt autem fama et auditione, esse quoddam numen et vim deorum; deinde aliquo tempore, patefactis terrae faucibus, ex illis abditis sedibus evadere in haec loca, quae nos incolimus, atque exire potuissent: 2. cum repente terram et maria caelumque vidissent, nubium magnitudinem ventorumque vim cognovissent, adspexissentque solem, ejusque tum magnitudinem pulchritudinemque, tum etiam efficientiam cognovissent, quod

is diem efficeret⁴⁷ toto caelo luce diffusa ; cum autem terras nox opacasset,⁴⁴ tum caelum totum cernerent astris distinctum et ornatum, lunaeque luminum varietatem tum crescentis² tum senescētis, eorumque omnium ortus et occasus, atque in omni aeternitate ratos immutabilesque cursus ; haec cum viderent, profecto et esse⁸⁹ deos et haec tanta opera deorum esse arbitrarentur.' — *id.* ii. 37.

6. An Active Old Age.

1. Nihil necesse est mihi de me ipso dicere,⁸⁸ quamquam est id quidem senile, aetatique nostrae conceditur. Videtisne ut apud Homerum saepissime Nestor de virtutibus suis praedicet ?⁴⁵ Tertiam enim jam aetatem hominum vivebat, nec erat ei verendum ne vera praedicans de se nimis videretur aut insolens aut loquax. Etenim, ut ait Homerus, *ex ejus lingua melle dulcior fluebat oratio*, quam ad suavitatem nullis egebat corporis viribus.²⁸ Et tamen dux ille Graeciae nusquam optat ut Ajacis similis habeat decem, sed ut Nestoris ; quod si sibi acciderit,⁴⁷ nō dubitat quin brevi sit⁴⁴ Troja peritura.

2. Sed redeo ad me. Quartum ago annum et octogesimum. Vellem⁴⁸ equidem idem posse gloriari quod Cyrus ; sed tamen hoc quoque dicere : non me quidem iis esse viribus²⁶ quibus aut miles bello Punico, aut quaestor eodem bello, aut consul in Hispania fuerim, aut quadriennio post, cum tribunus militaris depugnavi apud Thermopylas M'. Glabrigone consule ;⁸⁶ sed tamen, ut vos videtis, non plane me enervavit, non adflixit senectus ; non curia viris meas desiderat, non rostra, non amici, non clientes, non hospites. Nec enim umquam sum adsensus veteri illi laudatoque proverbio,¹⁸ quod monet *mature fieri senem, si diu velis*⁴⁷ *senex esse* : ego vero me minus diu senem esse mallet, quam esse senem ante quam essem.⁴⁸ Itaque nemo adhuc convenire me voluit, cui fuerim⁴⁸ occupatus. — *De Senect.* 10.

NOTES.

The preceding Lessons consist of —

I. FABLES, taken partly from Æsop, said to have been a Phrygian slave, who lived at Athens about 620 B.C. The shrewd, brief stories which pass under his name have made the basis of most European collections of fables since.

II. DIALOGUES written by different authors, some of them by Erasmus (A.D. 1467–1536), a very learned, witty, and indefatigable scholar, sometimes called the most accomplished of all modern writers of Latin. His *Colloquia*, first published in 1522, are, in part, sharply satirical; in part, like those here given, simply cheerful and amusing.

III. ANECDOTES of celebrated men of antiquity, taken from the miscellaneous writings of Cicero.

IV. THE KINGS OF ROME, chiefly from an epitome written (it is supposed) for the use of schools by Eutropius, secretary of the Emperor Constantine, about the year A.D. 330. The epitome continues the history into the times of the Emperors, and has afforded the staple of many of the popular abridgments. It is given here far enough to serve as an introduction to the narrative of Livy, which follows.

Up to this point, no explanatory notes have been given. There is nothing beyond the ability of any one who has well learned the preceding Lessons; and it is a great loss to the learner to miss the satisfaction of making out the narrative by his own skill and ingenuity. Notes should never be leaned on for help, until the student has done his very best without them; and the habit of doing this should be formed from the very start. A faithful use of the Vocabulary will, it is believed, fully explain every passage that has occurred thus far; and, for the simpler constructions of syntax, reference is made from time to time to the following: —

General Rules of Syntax.

1. Nouns meaning the same thing agree in Case.
2. Adjectives agree with nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.
3. Possessive adjectives are used for the Genitive, and in any case may have a genitive in agreement.
4. Relatives agree with their antecedents in Gender and Number; their Case depending on the construction of their clause.
5. A Verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person.
6. Two or more singular subjects — also collective nouns, with *quisque* and *uterque* — may take a plural verb.
7. The Subject of a finite verb is in the NOMINATIVE.
8. A Noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same thing, is put in the GENITIVE.
9. The Genitive is used to denote the author, owner, source, and (with adjectives) measure or quality.
10. Words denoting a Part are followed by the genitive of the word denoting the Whole.
11. Certain genitives of Quantity — as, *magni, parvi, nihili, pluris, minoris* — are used to express indefinite Value.
12. Many words of memory and feeling, knowledge or ignorance, likeness and nearness, fullness and want — also verbals, and participles used as adjectives — take the genitive.
13. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing take the genitive of the Charge or Penalty.
14. The DATIVE is the case of the Indirect Object.
15. Words of likeness, fitness, nearness, service, and help, are followed by the dative.
16. Verbs meaning to favor, help, please, serve, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, envy, resist, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.
17. The dative is used with *esse* to denote the Owner; also with the participle in *duo* to denote the Agent.
18. Most verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super*, take the dative.
19. Verbs of giving, telling, sending, and the like — sometimes of comparing and taking away — take the accusative and dative.
20. The dative is used to denote the Purpose or End; often with another dative of the person or thing affected.
21. The ACCUSATIVE is the case of the Direct Object.
22. The Subject of the Infinitive mood is in the accusative.
23. Duration of time and extent of space are in the accusative.
24. The accusative is used adverbially, or for specification.
25. Verbs of asking and teaching take two accusatives.

26. The ABLATIVE is used of cause, manner, means, instrument, quality, specification, and price.
27. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is in the ablative with *ab*.
28. Words denoting separation, and plenty or want, — also *opus* and *usus*, signifying need, — govern the ablative.
29. Participles denoting birth or origin take the ablative.
30. The adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, with many verbals, as *contentus*, *laetus*, *praeditus*, take the ablative.
31. The deponents *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, take the ablative.
32. The comparative degree may be followed by the ablative.
33. Degree of difference is put in the ablative.
34. Time at or within which is put in the ablative.
35. A subject and predicate in the ablative are used to define the time or circumstances of an action (*Ablative Absolute*).
36. The name of the town WHERE is in form like the genitive of singular names in *us*, *a*, *um*, otherwise dative or ablative ; of that WHITHER in the accusative, and WHENCE in the ablative.
37. With other words (including names of countries) Prepositions must be used to denote where, whither, or whence.
38. The INFINITIVE is used like a neuter noun, as the Subject or Object, or to complete the action of a verb.
39. The Infinitive is used, with subject-accusative, after expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, or perceiving.
40. The Infinitive is often used for the tenses of the indicative in narration (*Historical Infinitive*).
41. The GERUND, governing the case of its verb, or the Gerundive in agreement with a noun, is construed as a verbal noun.
42. The SUPINE in *um* is used after verbs of motion, to express the purpose of the motion ; the Supine in *ū* with adjectives.
43. The SUBJUNCTIVE is used independently to denote a wish, command, or concession, also in doubtful questions.
44. Relatives or Conjunctions implying purpose or result — also of relative time or characteristic — require the Subjunctive.
45. Indirect Questions take a verb in the Subjunctive.
46. The Subjunctive present and perfect are used in future conditions ; the imperfect and pluperfect, in those contrary to fact.
47. Dependent clauses in Indirect Discourse, or in a subjunctive construction, take the Subjunctive.
48. In the sequence of Tenses, primary tenses are followed in the Subjunctive by primary, and secondary by secondary.

For the government of PREPOSITIONS, see page 41.

For the general meaning and use of CASES, see page 3.

For the rules of SUBJECT and PREDICATE, see Lesson 6.

THE WAR WITH PORSENA.

1. *Horatius holds the Bridge.*

1. **Clusinum**: Clusium was an Etruscan town, about eighty miles north of Rome; according to Pliny, the seat of a magnificent court of Porsena.

4. **res Clusina**, the state of Clusium. — Understand **adeo** before **magnum**.

5. **suosmet**, their own: - **met** is emphatic.

6. **receptis . . . acciperet**, the kings being taken back, &c., i. e. should take back the kings and accept peace even with slavery.

8. **data** for **data sunt**. The omission of **esse** is very common in Livy. — **adeo . . . ut . . . horrent**: observe the relation of these words.

10. **nec quisquam** = **et nemo**.

11. **bene imperando** = *by good government*.

2. **Tiberi objecto**, the Tiber being cast in their way = *by the interposition of the Tiber*: observe the force of **ob** (p. 45).

3. **pons sublicius**, built, it was said, by Ancus Martius.

5. **cum . . . vidisset**, when he saw the Janiculum taken by sudden assault, &c. The Janiculum was a hill on the further side of the Tiber, on which the Romans had a fort.

7. **turbam relinquere**, depending still on **vidisset**.

8. **deum**, the contracted gen. plur. for **deorum**, very commonly used in such phrases as this.

10. **eos fugere**. The passage in italics is in what is called *indirect discourse* (see pp. 112, 113). In direct discourse, we should change to the second person: *In vain you desert your post and flee*, (lit. "that they fled, the defence being in vain deserted").

10. **plus hostium**, we should expect the plural: it may be rendered *a greater force*; **plus** is subject of **fore**, *there will be*.

12. **monere**, etc., these infinitives have for their subject **se** understood. Changing to first person: "I warn you," &c.

16. **ipso**, etc., *by the very marvel of his bravery*.

3. **tumultuosissimum pugnae** = *the stormiest onset*.

4. **exiguā . . . relictā**, while a little part of the bridge was still left ("a little part being left").

(p. 152). 4. **alius . . . circumspectant**, one looks to another to begin the battle.

4. 1. **quae cum cuncta**, when all of these (see Note, p. 131). — **objecto**, held out before him.

2. **obtineret**, *held against* the enemy.
3. **impetu conabantur**, *were just trying by a rush* (imperfect).
4. **perfecti operis**, *of the finished task* = *at having finished the task*. The genitive is very often used, where we might expect a different case, when two nouns are closely connected, as here.
5. **sustinuit**, *held in check*.
7. **sic armatus**, *armed as he was*.
10. **comitio**: the *comitium* was the place of patrician gatherings. It was an elevated part of the Forum. — **quantum**, *as much as*.
12. **pro**, *in proportion to*.

2. The Deed of Mucius Scaevola.

1. 14. **obsidio erat**, *the siege continued*. — **frumenti limits inopia**.
2. **expugnaturum** [esse] **se**, *that he should conquer*, depending on **spem habebat**. In the future of indirect discourse, with the participle in **urus**, the infinitive **esse** is more commonly omitted.
5. **ne deprehensus retraheretur**, *lest he should be seized and dragged back* ("lest being seized," &c.).
7. **senatum**, governed by **adiit** as a transitive verb, as often with compounds of *ad*, *trans*, and *circum*.
8. **si possim**, *if I should be able*: the present subjunctive with **si** is generally to be rendered with *should*.
9. **populationum** . . . **ultor** = *to avenge in turn the plunder*.
10. **ferro**, *steel*, poetic for **gladio**, *sword*.
2. 2. **daretur**, *was* [in the act of] *being given*.
- (p. 153.) 1. **adirent**: observe that this subjunctive depends on **cum**, two lines before.
3. **vadentem**, *as he went*, agreeing with **eum** (understood), object following **cum** . . . **retraxissent**: *when the king's attendants had seized (comprehensum), and dragged him back* ("him having been seized").
6. **destitutus** = *alone*.
3. 1. **vocant**, understand **me**. — **hostis** is in apposition with **ego**, subject of **volui**.
2. **est**, understand **mihi**: *I have* ("there is to me") *no less courage for death than I had for killing*.
3. **fortia**, translate by an adverb, *bravely*. — **Romanum**, *a Roman virtue*.
4. **petentium**, *of those seeking* (or aiming at). The genitive **petentium** limits **ordo**, to be translated *series* or *succession*.

5. **accingere** (pass. imperat.), *brace yourself up for this conflict if it pleases you.* — **in singulas horas** = *from hour to hour.*

6. **capite tuo**, *for your life*: the stake or prize of the conflict being taken is the abl. of price. — **dimices**, **habeas**, pres. subj., following **ut**, *so that you may*, &c.

7. **juventus**, in appos. with **nos** (understood), subject of **indicimus**.

8. **nullam timueris** (the perf. subj., used for the imperative in prohibitions: see Lesson 16, 1. c.): *fear no army*, &c.

4. 2. **nisi . . . jaceret**, *unless he should instantly declare plainly the threats of plots against him, which he threw out by dark hints (ambages).* The noun (**minas**) is here, as commonly in Latin, in the relative clause.

3. **en tibi**, *look you!* — **vile**, *worthless.*

8. **in te . . . ausus**, *you who have dared hostile deeds against yourself*, &c.

9. **macte virtute**, a common phrase of encouragement, like *persevere in valor* or *merit*. — **macte** is a vocative (= **magis aucte**), though here used in indirect discourse.

5. 2. **apud te**, *with you.* — **ut . . . tuleris**, *so that you have won from me by kindness what you could not by threats.*

5. **cecidarit**, fut. perfect, to be translated by the simple future, *as it shall fall to each first* [in his turn].

6. **Mucium**, object of **secuti sunt**.

7. **Scævolæ**, dative (see p. 88). — **clade**, *loss.*

9. **agro**, ablative following **ex** in **excessit**.

3. The Escape of Clælia.

1. 2. **una ex obsidibus**, for **una obsidum**: this form is more common than the genitive after numerals.

6. **quod ubi**, *when this*, &c. (see Note, p. 131).

8. **alias . . . facere**, *made the others of no great account.*

10. **præ se ferre**, *asserted or declared.* — **pro rupto**, *as broken.*

11. **sic . . . remissurum**, *so (on the other hand), if surrendered, he would restore her unharmed to her friends (suos).*

2 1. **constitit**, *remained firm.* — **ex foedere**, *according to the treaty.*

6. **probabile**, etc., *it was approved by the general feeling (consensu) of the hostages themselves, that [the persons of] that age should be released*, &c.

MISCELLANEOUS SELECTIONS.

SELECTION I. — 1. **sonus** is limited by **ferri**, and subject of **reddebatur**. — **longius . . . e proximo**, at a distance, close by.

2. **inhabitantibus** (dative), translate by (strictly on the part of). — **vigiliam**, object of **sequebatur**. In English, the passive construction would be more natural: *watching was followed by*, &c. — **causis**, than the cause of it (the fear). — **solitudine**, to solitude. The Latin often uses the ablative to denote the penalty. — **tota**, i. e. *entirely*. — **proscribatur**: the imperfect means not *it was advertised*, but *the advertisement was kept up*. — **seu . . . vellet**, in case any one should wish.

3. **quia** gives the reason of **percontatus**. — **audita** is taken with **simulacra**.

4. **ubique**, i. e. *everywhere else*. — **stabat**: the imperfect describes the appearance of the phantom.

5. **capiti**, over the head. — **catenis**: translate as accusative, *rattled the chains*, noticing the difference of idiom. — **idem**, governed by **innuentem**. — **quod prius**, i. e. *innuerat*. — **nec**, and not; as it is very often, much oftener than *nor*. — **desertus**, i. e. after he was thus abandoned. — **signum**, in apposition with **herbas**, etc., as a mark.

6. **quae corpus reliquerat**, i. e. *which had been left by the body* (its decay). — **exesa**, i. e. by rust. — **conditis manibus**, the ghost being laid. — **caruit**, was relieved, i. e. of the disturbance which is implied by the whole of the preceding.

SELECTION II. — 1. **otlandi** depends on **causā**. — **quod cum**, and when this (§ 45, 6). — **Canio**, dative following **licere**, *that Canius might use them*.

2. **qui esset** = *inasmuch as he was*. — **apparatum**, sc. **est**, was got ready.

3. **tantumne**, such a quantity: the **ne** only continues the question. — **gravate**, i. e. *agebat*, a kind of idiom. — **quid multa**, i. e. **dicam**: another common idiom which should be noticed as such. — **impetrat**, i. e. his request. — **instructos**, agreeing with **hortos**. **nomina facit**, makes out the bill (so used on account of the name in the account-book).

4. **scalum nullum**, i. e. *not so much as a thole-pin*. — **eos nullos**, none of them, a regular Latin idiom. — **nullae**, sc. **feriae**. — **quod**, so far as (adverbial accusative.)

SELECTION III. — 1. **constat**, is made out from (lit. stands together). — **hoc . . . persuasum est**, are persuaded of this. Notice

the idiom, which is regular. — **quam eandem**, etc., *the same whom they call*.

SELECTION IV. — 1. **ea**, antecedent of **quae**, coming last, as usual in Latin. — **serendi** depends on **scientia**.

5. **se** refers to **terga**. — **latitudines**, plural (as often in Latin) because he is thinking of many cases or examples. — **fissione**, etc.; the early time when the ground had to be broken, and of course cattle were more necessary. — **aureo**, i. e. the golden age. — **fabri-carier**: formerly the infinitive passive ended as here (an extract from an old poet) in **er**. — **manu**, connected with **vinctum**. — **vesei**, subj. of **haberetur**.

6. **longum est**: we should say in English *it would take too long* (see Gr. § 311. c). — **pro sale**, *instead of salt*, i. e. merely to keep it from spoiling (**ne putesceret**). — **pecude** depends on **fecundius**.

7. **Pronoea**, *Providence*, in our modern sense; an idea of the Stoics, one of whom is here speaking, hence **nostra**. — **Epicurea** (pred.), *an Epicurean*; fem. on account of the gender of **Pronoea**. The idea is that Providence seems to be an Epicurean in providing so many good things for the appetite.

8. **stirpibus**, *bushes*, that have stems. — **herbis**, *plants*, *grasses* and the like without woody stems.

9. **licet**, *you may*, taken with **lusu** ~~are~~. — **plurimarum**, etc., *very many things of use* (lit. *the usefulness of many things*).

SELECTION V. — **essent**, the subject is the implied antecedent of **qui**, *men who*. — **quoddam**, *a*. This word is used because the thing, though only referred to indefinitely, is however definitely known. — **esse deos**, *that there are gods*.

SELECTION VI. — 1. **senile**, *characteristic of old men*. — **praedicet**, from **praedico**, *āre*. — **aetatem**, Gr. § 52, 1. b. — **quam** belongs with **suavitatem**: the relative is often displaced in this way by a preposition connected with it. — **dux ille**, *Agamemnon*, the chief of the Trojan expedition.

2. **equidem**: the force of this word is concessive. The idea is, “though I cannot make the same boast that Cyrus (I wish I could), still this I can say, &c.” The Latin particles have just this kind of force, and we cannot begin too soon to notice them. — **quidem**, again concessive (see preceding note). Translate, *though I have not, &c., still (sed tamen)*. — **ego**: notice that it is emphatic, — *I for my part*. Do not get the habit, because in English the personal pronouns are expressed, whether emphatic or not, of disregarding their emphasis when expressed in Latin.

EXERCISES,
PREPARED BY WILLIAM DEUTSCH,

TEACHER IN THE ST. LOUIS HIGH SCHOOL.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE TEACHER.

1. Have the Grammar part and the Vocabularies well studied before passing to the translation.
2. Do not neglect blackboard and other written exercises.
3. Have the principal synonyms (found on pages 235 to 242) memorized.
4. Do not neglect frequent reviewing.
5. Assign short lessons during the first quarter.

EXERCISES.

LESSON I.

First Declension, Page 4.

(Omit Greek Nouns.)

Vocabulary.

ālā , ae (F.), <i>wing</i> .	porta , ae (F.), <i>gate</i> .
amicitiā , ae (F.), <i>friendship</i> .	puella , ae (F.), <i>girl</i> .
āqua , ae (F.), <i>water</i> .	pugna , ae (F.), <i>battle</i> .
āquila , ae (F.), <i>eagle</i> .	rēgina , ae (F.), <i>queen</i> .
columba , ae (F.), <i>dove</i> .	Rōma , ae (F.), <i>Rome</i> .
causa , ae (F.), <i>cause</i> .	rōsa , ae (F.), <i>rose</i> .
Eurōpa , ae (F.), <i>Europe</i> .	Siciliā , ae (F.), <i>Sicily</i> .
fēmīna , ae (F.), <i>woman</i> .	vīta , ae (F.), <i>life</i> .
filīa , ae (F.), <i>daughter</i> .	et or -que, <i>and</i> .
glōriā , ae (F.), <i>glory</i> .	est, <i>he is; sunt, they are</i> .
hōra , ae (F.), <i>hour</i> .	hābēt , <i>he has; hābent, they have</i> .
incōla , ae (M.), <i>inhabitant</i> .	cum (with abl.), <i>with</i> .
inimicitīa , ae (F.), <i>enmity</i> .	in (with abl.), <i>in</i> .
nauta , ae (M.), <i>sailor</i> .	in (with acc.), <i>into</i> .
patrīa , ae (F.), <i>native city</i> .	ē, ex (with abl.), <i>out of</i> .
pōēta , ae (M.), <i>poet</i> .	

Translate into English.

1. Horā, horārum, horā, horis; nautas, nautae, nautam.
2. Sicilia est insula Europae.
3. Nautae filia.
4. Filiabus reginarum.
5. Puella est feminae filia.
6. Roma portas habet.
7. Columbae alas habent.
8. Amicitia est vitae gloria.
9. Incolae rosas habent.
10. In aquam; ex aqua.
11. Cum nautis incolisque.
12. Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.

Write in Latin.

1. Of girls ; to the daughter ; the queens (acc.).
2. Out of the water ; in the water ; into the water.
3. The eagles have wings.
4. The woman has a rose.
5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors.
6. The battle is the cause of glory.
7. The enmity of the inhabitants is the cause of battles.
8. With the daughters of the queens.
9. She is the daughter of the queen.
10. O Rome, the native-city of poets.

LESSON 2.

Second Declension, Page 5.

(Omit Greek Nouns.)

Vocabulary.

āger, agri (M.), *field*.āmicus, i (M.), *friend*.argentum, i (N.), *silver*.aurum, i (N.), *gold*.āvus, i (M.), *grandfather*.bellum, i (N.), *war*.dāt, *he gives*.dant, *they give*.dōmīnus, i (M.), *lord, master*.dōnum, i (N.), *gift*.ēquus, i (M.), *horse*.fīlius, i (M.), *son*.gēner, i (M.), *son-in-law*.glādius, i (M.), *sword*.līber, ri (M.), *book*.littērae, ārum (F.), *letter*.inimicus, i (M.), *enemy*.māgister, ri (M.), *master, teacher*.mētāllum, i (N.), *metal*.mūrus, i (M.), *wall*.oppīdum, i (N.), *town*.praemīum, i (N.), *reward*.puer, i (M.), *boy*.servus, i (M.), *slave*.sōcer, i (M.), *father-in-law*.templum, i (N.), *temple*.vīr, i (M.), *man*.

Translate into English.

1. Amici, amicorum, amicos, amice.
2. Agro, agris, agrum, agri.
3. Templum, templa, templorum, templi.
4. Dominus servos equosque habet.
5. Socer agrum genero dat.
6. Templa sunt glōria Romae.
7. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla.
8. Amici avi poetae sunt.
9. Magistri pueris et puellis dona dant.
10. Oppidum muros et portas habet.

Write in Latin.

1. The boys have books.
2. The teacher gives doves to the boys.
3. The enemies of the master have swords.
4. The friends of the queen are poets, not¹ sailors.
5. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples.
6. The metals are the cause of war.
7. The friends of the boy have the books of the men.
8. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants.
9. [There] is the letter of the son-in-law.
10. The son and the friend of the sailor are poets.

¹ *non*.

LESSON 3.

Second Declension, continued. Questions. Pages 5 and 10.

Vocabulary.

agricōla, ae (M.), *farmer*.Athēnae, ārum (F.), *Athens*.Cōrinthus, i (F.), *Corinth*.dēus, i (M.) *God*.discipulus, i (M.), *pupil*,
scholar.dēa, ae (F.), *Goddess*.ērāt, *he was*.ērāt, *they were*.Graecus, i (M.), *Greek*.hortus, i (M.), *garden*.Itālia, ae (F.), *Italy*.morbus, i (M.), *disease*, *sick-*pōmum, i (N.), *apple*. [*ness*.]Rōmānus, i (M.), *Roman*.scūtum, i (N.), *shield*.taurus, i (M.), *bull*.ūbi? *where?*vōcāt, *he calls*.vōcant, *they call*.

Translate into English.

1. Vocatne filium?
2. Num agricola amici filiabus rosas dat? Non dat.
3. Nonne Roma muros portasque habet? Habet.
4. Erantne filii filiaeque domini?
5. Discipuli cum magistro Romae et Corinthi erant.
6. Ubi amici libri sunt?
7. Romani gladios et scuta habent.
8. Bella morborum causa erant.
9. Dii erant amici Graecorum et Romanorum.
10. Avus donum dis dat.

Write in Latin.

1. Does the sailor call [his] daughter? No.
2. Is not gold the cause of battles and wars? Yes.
3. Does the teacher give a reward to the girls?
4. The father-in-law gives fields and bulls to the friends of the queen.
5. The son of the poet was in Sicily, in Rome, and in Corinth.
6. In the garden of the master [there] are apples and roses.
7. The Romans give gold and silver to the goddesses.
8. Where were the servants of the grandfather? In Athens. In Italy.

LESSON 4.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, Page 6.

Vocabulary.

aeger, gra, grum, *sick*.
 albus, a, um, *white*.
 altus, a, um, *high, deep*.
 bonus, a, um, *good*.
 densus, a, um, *dense, thick*.
 diligentia, ae (F.), *diligence*.
 fluvius, i (M.), *river, stream*.
 Gallia, ae (F.), *Gaul (country)*.
 Graecia, ae (F.), *Greece*.
 gratus, a, um (with dat.),
 pleasing, grateful.
 ignavus, a, um, *lazy*.
 insula, ae (F.), *island*.
 latus, a, um, *broad, wide*.
 longus, a, um, *long*.
 magnus, a, um, *great, large*.
 miser, era, erum, *wretched*.

molestus, a, um (with dat.),
 troublesome.
 multus, a, um, *much, many*.
 niger, gra, grum, *black, dark*.
 numerus, i (M.), *number*.
 parvus, a, um, *small, little*.
 pulcher, chra, chrum, *beau-
 tiful*.
 rapidus, a, um, *rapid*.
 regnum, i (N.), *kingdom*.
 Rhenus, i (M.), *Rhine*.
 ripa, ae (F.), *bank*.
 silva, ae (F.), *forest*.
 tener, era, erum, *tender*.
 timidus, a, um, *timid*.
 trans (with acc.), *across*.
 volat, *he flies*.
 volant, *they fly*.

Translate into English.

1. Servus ignavus est.
2. Columbae timidae sunt.

3. Oppidum est parvum.
4. Graecia multa templa habet.
5. Magister parvas puellas et bonos pueros vocat.
6. Nonne puero donum dat?
7. Aquila trans magnum fluvium in silvam densam volat.
8. Insula parva incolas multos habet.
9. Morbus tenero filio molestus est.
10. Praemia diligentiae discipulis grata sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The swords were long.
2. The towns are large.
3. The kingdom is small.
4. The daughters of the women are good.
5. The queen gives broad swords to the inhabitants.
6. The roses of the high banks are white.
7. The Rhine is a rapid river of Gaul.
8. Great is the number of black slaves.
9. The master gives a beautiful book to the sick boy.
10. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl.

LESSON 5.

Adjectives and Adverbs of the First and Second Declension, Pp. 6 & 41.

Vocabulary.

acūtus, a, um, *sharp*.
 bellīcōsus, a, um, *warlike*.
 bēnē (adv.), *well*.
 dōcēt, *he teaches*.
 dōcent, *they teach*.
 ēxēplum, i (N.), *example*.
 hērī (adv.), *yesterday*.
 intēr (with acc.), *among, between*.
 Lātinus, a, um, *Latin*.
 libērī, ōrum (M.), *children*.
 līngua, ae (F.), *language, tongue*.

lōcus, i (M.) (plur., masc. and neut.), *place*.
 mēus, a, um, *my*.
 nātāt, *he swims*.
 nātant, *they swim*.
 noster, ra, rum, *our*.
 nōxius, a, um (with dat.), *hurtful, injurious*.
 pēricūlum, i (N.), *danger*.
 proellum, i (N.), *battle*.
 scrībīt, *he writes*.
 scrībunt, *they write*.
 semper (adv.), *always*.

Translate into English.

1. Num puer natat in magno rapidoque fluvio?
2. In multis proeliis in periculo magno erat.
3. Magistri mei semper bene docent.
4. Nautae filius pulchre scribit.
5. Puellae litteras parvas aegrae reginae scribunt.
6. In alto loco parvi pueri cum avo erant.
7. Exemplum servi noxium puero est.
8. Templā diis et deabus grata sunt. [magistri.]
9. Erant multi pueri heri in horto; et inter pueros filius
10. Morbus tenerae filiae molestus erat.

Write in Latin.

1. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword.
2. Were the farmer's sons in the large garden? No.
3. The sailor is in the garden with [his] sons, not with [his] daughters.
4. The example of a lazy boy is injurious to the pupils.
5. Our daughter writes a beautiful letter to the teacher.
6. The black horses are troublesome to the man.
7. The children of good [men] are not always good.
8. Our master teaches the Latin language well.
9. Where was the son of the farmer with the black horses?
10. Many books are injurious to the sick daughter of the sailor.

LESSON 6.

Present, Imperfect, and Future of sum and compounds, Pp. 24 & 25.

Vocabulary.

ā, āb (with abl.), <i>by, from.</i>	gaudium, i (N.), <i>joy.</i>
absum, <i>I am absent.</i>	intersum, <i>I am among, between.</i>
adsum, <i>I am present.</i>	ira, ae (F.), <i>anger.</i>
bēātus, a, um, <i>happy.</i>	liber, ēra, ērum, <i>free.</i>
contentus, a, um, <i>contented.</i>	mōx (adv.), <i>soon.</i>
copīa, ae (F.), <i>abundance.</i>	nunc (adv.), <i>now.</i>
copīae, ārum (F.), <i>forces, troops.</i>	prōbus, a, um, <i>upright.</i>
dēsum, <i>I am away, wanting.</i>	sēd (conj.), <i>but.</i>
frumentum, i (N.), <i>corn, grain.</i>	si (conj.), <i>if.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Estis, eramus, eris.
2. Abes, aberimus ; adsumus, aderant.
3. Non beatus eras, mi fili.
4. Si contenti eritis, miseri non eritis.
5. Bonis viris non desunt amici.
6. Semper a proelio abero.
7. Magnae copiae Romanorum in proelio aderant.
8. Estne copia frumenti in domini agris?
9. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis intererat.
10. Incolae magni oppidi sumus.

Write in Latin.

1. We are, thou wilt be, he was.
2. He is present ; they were among ; she will be absent.
3. The town was small, but beautiful.
4. [There] were many wars among the Romans.
5. We shall soon be in the black forest.
6. You were in the town yesterday, where are now many boys and many girls.
7. The wicked [men] are not free.
8. To good [men] friends are not wanting.
9. Anger will be injurious to many.
10. Upright pupils are the joy of the teacher.

LESSON 7.

Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect and Imperative of *sum*, Page 25.

Vocabulary.

attentus, a, um, *attentive*.
 cur? *why?*

doctus, a, um, *learned*.

hodie (adv.), *to-day*.

indoctus, a, um, *unlearned*.

justus, a, um, *just*.

laetus, a, um, *joyful*.

lēgātus, i (M.), *legate, ambassador*.

lūdus, i (M.), *play, school*.

nullus, a, um, *no one, none*.

officium, i (N.), *duty, service*.

praesum, *I am at the head*.

vester, ra, rum, *your*.

Translate into English.

1. Fuisti, fueris, este, sunt.
2. Deeras, adfuere, praefueratis, praees!
3. Estis, fuistis, abfuerit, inerant.
4. Cur abfuisti a ludo heri?
5. Mi bone puer, semper probus es!
6. Legati Romanorum adfuerant.
7. Discipuli sunt attenti.
8. Num abfueritis a proelio? Non aberimus.
9. Contenti estote officio vestro.
10. Magister discipulis esto amicus.

Write in Latin.

1. He will be, they have been, we were present.
2. Be ye absent, you shall be present, he will have been.
3. The teacher shall be just.
4. The contented are always joyful.
5. My son, be upright and attentive, and you will be the joy of the teacher.
6. Have you been in the grandfather's garden to-day?
7. Let [there] be no cause of enmity; we are good friends.
8. They had been unlearned; now they are learned.

LESSON 8.

Conjunctions and Preposition, Pages 11 and 41.

Vocabulary.

<i>ad</i> (acc.), <i>towards, to.</i>	<i>saepe</i> (adv.), <i>often.</i>
<i>ambulat</i> , <i>he walks.</i>	<i>saxum</i> , 1 (N.), <i>rock.</i>
<i>ambulant</i> , <i>they walk.</i>	<i>secat</i> , <i>he cuts.</i>
<i>aula</i> , ae (F.), <i>hall.</i>	<i>secant</i> , <i>they cut.</i>
<i>campus</i> , 1 (M.), <i>field, plain.</i>	<i>venit</i> , <i>he comes.</i>
<i>castra eorum</i> (N.), <i>camp.</i>	<i>veniunt</i> , <i>they come.</i>
<i>currit</i> , <i>he runs.</i>	<i>vesper</i> , 3ri (M.), <i>evening.</i>
<i>currunt</i> , <i>they run.</i>	<i>videt</i> , <i>he sees.</i>
<i>lupus</i> , 1 (M.), <i>wolf.</i>	<i>vident</i> , <i>they see.</i>
<i>per</i> (acc.), <i>through.</i>	<i>via</i> , ae (F.), <i>way, road.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Num puer natat in magno rapidoque fluvio? Non natat.
2. Parvi discipuli saepe trans latum fluvium natant.
3. Domini non semper boni fuerunt in (*towards*) servos.
4. Venit in castra ; veniunt in hortum.
5. Avus nunc ab insula in campum ambulat.
6. Agricola venit ad oppidum cum magistri filio.
7. Lupus e silva currit et puellam videt.
8. Multae pulchraeque puellae in horto fuere ad vesperum.

Write in Latin.

1. The boys come across the large river into the town.
2. The boy walks in the garden with the master's son.
3. The farmer runs towards the dense forest.
4. The sailor's sons come out of the large hall into the garden.
5. We were often on the banks of the deep river.
6. The farmers cut a broad way through the forest.
7. A great and high rock is in the water.
8. God gives many gifts to the upright inhabitants.

LESSON 9.

Third Declension (p, b, m, x), Pages 12 and 14.

Vocabulary.

arx, arcis (F.), <i>citadel</i> .	jūdex, jūdīcis (M.), <i>judge</i> .
clārus, a, um, <i>bright, renowned</i> .	lex, lēgis (F.), <i>law</i> .
dēlectāt, <i>he delights</i> .	pax, pācis (F.), <i>peace</i> .
dēlectant, <i>they delight</i> .	plebs, plēbis (F.), <i>common people</i> .
dux, dūcis (C.), <i>leader, general</i> .	pōpūlus, i (M.), <i>people (in general)</i> .
factum, i (N.), <i>deed</i> .	princeps, cīpis (M.), <i>chief</i> .
firmus, a, um, <i>firm, durable</i> .	rex, rēgis (M.), <i>king</i> .
Germāni, ōrum (M.), <i>Germans</i> .	sēvērus, a, um, <i>severe</i> .
hiems, hiēmis (F.), <i>winter</i> .	trabs, trābis (F.), <i>beam</i> .
jūcundus, a, um (with dat.), <i>pleasing</i> .	urbs, urbis (F.), <i>city</i> .

Translate into English.

1. Trabes, trarium ; urbis, urbibus.
2. Duci, duce, ducum ; regem, regis, reges.
3. Pax regi jucunda fuit.
4. Judices erant justi.
5. Hiems longa agricolis molesta erit.
6. Duces Graecorum incolis insularum pacem dant.
7. Incolae Romae severas leges habent.
8. Multae urbes Graeciae clarae fuerunt.
9. Firma fuerat arx oppidi.
10. Facta principum Romanorum bellicosa erant.

Write in Latin.

1. Of the city, for the cities, many cities (acc.)
2. By the law, of laws, the law (acc.)
3. Rome is the renowned city of Italy.
4. The Romans give rewards to good leaders.
5. The king gives a gift to the severe judge.
6. The laws of Athens were pleasing to the Greeks.
7. Bad examples are injurious to the people.
8. A long peace was pleasing to the chief of the Germans.
9. We are now in the city, but we shall soon be in our gardens.
10. Pleasant winters delight farmers and sailors.

LESSON IO.

Third Declension, continued (t, d), Page 12.

Vocabulary.

aestās, ātis (F.), <i>summer.</i>	mors, mortis (F.), <i>death.</i>
civitās, ātis (F.), <i>state.</i>	nātūra, ae (F.), <i>nature.</i>
custōs, ōdis (M.), <i>guardian.</i>	nox, noctis (F.), <i>night.</i>
dens, dentis (M.), <i>tooth.</i>	obsēs, idis (C.), <i>hostage.</i>
ēquēs, itis (M.), <i>horseman.</i>	occidit, <i>he kills.</i>
Galli, ōrum (M.), <i>Gauls.</i>	occidunt, <i>they kill.</i>
hasta, ae (F.), <i>spear.</i>	pēdēs, itis (M.), <i>foot-soldier.</i>
lāpis, idis (M.), <i>stone.</i>	pons, pontis (M.), <i>bridge.</i>
libertās, ātis (F.), <i>freedom.</i>	tempestās, ātis (F.), <i>tempest.</i>
milēs, itis (M.), <i>soldier.</i>	voluntās, ātis (F.), <i>wish, will.</i>
mons, montis (M.), <i>mountain.</i>	comes, itis (C.), <i>companion.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Custodis, custodem ; pediti, pedites ; pontem, pontium.
2. Morti, morte ; civitatem, civitatibus ; dentes ; montibus.
3. Miles gladio obsidem occidit.
4. Milites lapidibus comites occidunt.
5. Nostri equites et pedites in proelio timidi fuerunt.
6. Mors naturae lex semper fuit.
7. Voluntas militum duci grata erit.
8. Pedites auri custodes gladiis occidunt.
9. Principes Germanorum Romanis multos obsides dant.
10. Tempestates aestatis agricolis nautisque noxae sunt.
11. Trabes in pontibus longae sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. Of a companion, to companions ; the nights, by night.
2. The horsemen, with horsemen ; with a stone, of stones.
3. Long nights in winter are pleasant to the teacher and pupils.
4. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears.
5. The inhabitants kill many soldiers with large stones.
6. The soldiers kill the timid guardians of the silver.
7. A tempest in summer is troublesome to the foot-soldiers.
8. The laws of the Roman state were renowned.
9. Freedom of the inhabitants shall be the law of the state.
10. The forces of the Romans kill the horsemen of the Gauls with swords.

LESSON II.

Third Declension, continued (l, n, r), Pages 13 and 14.

Vocabulary.

<i>admīrātiō, ōnis (F.), admira-</i>	<i>certus, a, um, certain.</i>
<i>tion.</i>	<i>consūl, ūlis (M.), consul.</i>
<i>aggēr, ěris (M.), mound.</i>	<i>dōlōr, ōris (M.), pain.</i>
<i>ansēr, ěris (M.), goose.</i>	<i>flōs, flōris (M.), flower.</i>
<i>autumnus, i (M.), autumn.</i>	<i>frātēr, trīs (M.), brother.</i>
<i>cālōr, ōris (M.), heat.</i>	<i>hōmo, inis (C.), man.</i>

<i>invidus, a, um, envious.</i>	<i>ōdōr, ōris (M.), smell.</i>
<i>jūcunditas, ātis (F.), delight.</i>	<i>ōrātiō, ōnis (F.), oration.</i>
<i>lābōr, ōris (M.), work, hard- ship.</i>	<i>ōrātor, ōris (M.), orator.</i>
<i>laudāt, he praises.</i>	<i>pastor, ōris (M.), shepherd.</i>
<i>laudant, they praise.</i>	<i>pāter, tris (M.), father.</i>
<i>leo, leōnis (M.), lion.</i>	<i>sermo, ōnis (M.), discourse.</i>
<i>māter, ris (F.), mother.</i>	<i>sōl, sōlis (M.), sun.</i>
<i>monstrāt, he shows.</i>	<i>sōrōr, ōris (F.), sister.</i>
<i>monstrant, they show.</i>	<i>vālīdus, a, um, strong.</i>
<i>mōs, mōris (M.), manner, custom.</i>	<i>vārīus, a, um, various.</i>
<i>nēmo, inis (C.), nobody (no plural).</i>	<i>vēnātor, ōris (M.), huntsman.</i>
	<i>virgo, inis (F.), maiden.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Consulem, consulum ; patri, patres.
2. Laboris, laboribus ; more, mores.
3. Leonem, leoni ; virgines, virginum.
4. Homines invidi neminem laudant.
5. Magna fuit admiratio leonum.
6. Pueri caram matrem vocant.
7. Pastores venatori lupum monstrant.
8. Puellae fratres et sorores habent.
9. Varii sunt odores florum.
10. Sermo oratoris doctus fuerat.
11. Vita hominibus grata est, mors certa.
12. Aestate solis calor militibus saepe molestus est.

Write in Latin.

1. To the flower, of flowers ; brothers, with brothers.
2. A man (acc.), of men ; geese, to geese.
3. The maidens of the city Rome were beautiful.
4. The heat in autumn is injurious to the mother.
5. The sermons of the orators are learned.
6. The sisters were in the garden with [their] father and mother.
7. The manner of the brother gives pain to the teacher.
8. The mounds of the camp are high and broad.
9. A good oration is the delight of learned men.
10. The strong hunter kills the lion with the sword.

LESSON 12.

Third Declension, continued (I), Page 14.

Vocabulary.

āter, ātra, ātrum, <i>black.</i>	hostis, is (C.), <i>enemy (public).</i>
cānis, is (C.), <i>dog.</i>	jūvēnis, is (C.), <i>young person.</i>
civis, is (C.), <i>citizen.</i>	nāvis, is (F.), <i>ship.</i>
clādes, is (F.), <i>slaughter.</i>	nōtus, a, um, <i>known.</i>
classis, is (F.), <i>fleet.</i>	nūbes, is (F.), <i>cloud.</i>
caelum, i (N.), <i>sky, heaven.</i>	pēritus, a, um, <i>skilful.</i>
complōrātio, ōnis (F.), <i>weep-</i>	rūpes, is (F.), <i>rock.</i>
<i>ing.</i>	turris, is (F.), <i>tower.</i>
dūrus, a, um, <i>hard.</i>	vallis, is (F.), <i>valley.</i>
Germania, ae (F.), <i>Germany.</i>	vestis, is (F.), <i>garment, dress.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Cives, civium ; cladem, cladibus.
2. Hoste, hostes ; nubi, nubium.
3. Clades hostium magna fuit.
4. Multae urbes Italiae altas turres habent.
5. Classis Romana duces peritos habet.
6. Mater pulchram vestem virgini dat.
7. Nubes atrae causa tempestatis sunt.
8. Valles Germaniae hostibus notae fuerunt.
9. Dux Romanorum civibus aurum argentumque dat.
10. Juvenis complorationem sororis videt.

Write in Latin.

1. Of dogs, by a dog ; the rocks, a rock (acc.).
2. The ships, of a ship ; of citizens, with a citizen.
3. The boys kill the shepherd's dog with stones.
4. The fleet of the Romans has many ships and a skilful leader.
5. The valleys of Greece are known to the citizens.
6. Many hard rocks are in the mountains.
7. The maidens give beautiful garments to the daughters of the sailors. . [and citizens.
8. The beautiful young man is the friend of the soldiers
9. My friend, be the leader of the inhabitants !
10. Black clouds in the sky are the cause of tempests.

LESSON 13.

Third Declension, continued. (Neuter Nouns in *n, l, r, us, ta*)
Pages 12, 13, and 14.

Vocabulary.

<i>ānimāl, ālis</i> (N.), <i>animal</i> .	<i>īra, ae</i> (F.), <i>anger</i> .
<i>annus, i</i> (M.), <i>year</i> .	<i>lītūs, ōris</i> (N.), <i>shore</i> .
<i>aurēus, a, um, golden</i> .	<i>mārē, is</i> (N.), <i>sea</i> .
<i>āvis, is</i> (F.), <i>bird</i> .	<i>nōmēn, inis</i> (N.), <i>name</i> .
<i>Caesar, āris</i> (M.), <i>Cæsar</i> .	<i>ōpūs, ōris</i> (N.), <i>work</i> .
<i>calcār, āris</i> (N.), <i>spur</i> .	<i>ōs, ōris</i> (N.), <i>mouth</i> .
<i>cāpūt, itis</i> (N.), <i>head</i> .	<i>ōs, ossis</i> (N.), <i>bone</i> .
<i>corpūs, ōris</i> (N.), <i>body</i> .	<i>pēriculōsus, a, um, dangerous</i> .
<i>dēcūs, ōris</i> (N.), <i>ornament</i> .	<i>piscis, is</i> (M.), <i>fish</i> .
<i>dōmiciliūm, i</i> (N.), <i>abode</i> .	<i>pōēma, ātis</i> (N.), <i>poem</i> .
<i>ēlēphantūs, i</i> (M.), <i>elephant</i> .	<i>scēlūs, ōris</i> (N.), <i>crime</i> .
<i>fulgūr, ūris</i> (N.), <i>lightning</i> .	<i>stāt, he stands</i> .
<i>gēnūs, ōris</i> (N.), <i>race, class</i> .	<i>stant, they stand</i> .
<i>Hannibāl, ālis</i> (See p. 204.)	<i>tempūs, ōris</i> (N.), <i>time</i> .
<i>nōvus, a, um, new</i> .	<i>vulnūs, ōris</i> (N.), <i>wound</i> .

Translate into English.

1. Nominis ; fulgura ; operi ; corporum.
2. Mari ; animalium ; capitis ; calcaria.
3. Multa animalia parva capita habent.
4. Maria piscium domicilia sunt.
5. Romulus nomen Romam novae urbi dat.
6. Tempore hiemis multae aves in litore stant.
7. Opera Graecorum poetarum clara sunt.
8. Calcaria sunt decus equitis.
9. Genera animalium sunt varia.
10. Ira causa multorum scelerum semper fuit.

Write in Latin.

1. The animals ; with a spur ; of bodies ; to the wound.
2. Of the poem ; the races ; of times ; with names.
3. The crimes are known to the judge.
4. Elephants have strong bodies and large heads.
5. The time of the year is pleasant.
6. The fish has a small mouth.

7. The wounds of the soldier are large and dangerous.
8. The king gives golden spurs to the horsemen.
9. The deep sea is the abode of fishes.
10. The works of Hannibal and Cæsar were renowned.

LESSON 14.

Third Declension, continued. (Gen. in *utis, uris*, and irreg. nouns.)

Page 14.

Vocabulary.

<i>arbor, ōris</i> (F.), <i>tree.</i>	<i>pālūs, ūdis</i> (F.), <i>swamp.</i>
<i>bēnignus, a, um, kind.</i>	<i>sācer, ora, crum, sacred.</i>
<i>bōs, bōvis</i> (C.), <i>ox, cow.</i>	<i>sālus, ūtis</i> (F.), <i>safety, health.</i>
<i>cāro, carnis</i> (F.), <i>flesh.</i>	<i>sēnectus, ūtis</i> (F.), <i>old age.</i>
<i>divītiæ, ārum</i> (F.), <i>riches.</i>	<i>sēnex, is</i> (M.), <i>old man.</i>
<i>Jūpītēr, Jōvis</i> (M.), <i>Jupiter.</i>	<i>sūprēmus, a, um, supreme.</i>
<i>jūs, jūris</i> (N.), <i>right, law.</i>	<i>tellus, ūris</i> (F.), <i>earth.</i>
<i>jūventus, ūtis</i> (F.), <i>youth,</i>	<i>virtus, tūtis</i> (F.), <i>virtue.</i>
<i>ōvis, is</i> (F.), <i>sheep.</i>	<i>vis, vis</i> (F.), <i>power, strength.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Virtutem ; telluris ; paludi ; senes.
2. Virium ; bobus ; Jovem ; jura.
3. Salus populi suprema lex esto !
4. Jupiter pater deorum Romanorum erat.
5. Vires leonis magnæ sunt.
6. Donum senectutis hominibus jucundum est.
7. Numerus senum et juvenum magnus est.
8. Multi boves et equi in litore insulae stant.

Write in Latin.

1. Virtues ; with force ; of the earth.
2. Jupiter (acc.) ; of oxen ; to youth.
3. Many trees are sacred to Jupiter.
4. Oxen have great strength.
5. Virtues were the ornament of the Greeks and Romans.
6. The old man gives gold and silver to the young man.
7. The flesh of the sheep is pleasing to the wolf.
8. Great riches is the gift of the kind gods.

LESSON 15.

Adjectives with Genitive in *ius*, Page 7.

Vocabulary.

<i>alius</i> , a, ūd, <i>another</i> .	<i>onus</i> , ōris (N.), <i>burden, load</i> .
<i>alter</i> , ĕra, ĕrum, <i>the other, one of two</i> .	<i>pars</i> , partis (F.), <i>part</i> .
<i>culpa</i> , ae (F.), <i>fault, blame</i> .	<i>praeda</i> , ae (F.), <i>booty, spoil</i> .
<i>cūra</i> , ae (F.), <i>care</i> .	<i>solus</i> , a, um, <i>alone</i> .
<i>hōnōr</i> , ōris (M.), <i>honor</i> .	<i>tōtus</i> , a, um, <i>whole</i> .
<i>laus</i> , laudis (F.), <i>praise</i> .	<i>ullus</i> , a, um, <i>any</i> .
<i>neuter</i> , tra, trum, <i>neither of two</i> .	<i>ūnus</i> , a, um, <i>one</i> .
<i>novus</i> , a, um, <i>new</i> .	<i>ūter</i> , tra, trum, <i>which of two</i> .
<i>nullus</i> , a, um, <i>nones</i> .	<i>vērus</i> , a, um, <i>true</i> .
	<i>vōluptās</i> , ātis (F.), <i>pleasure</i> .

Translate into English.

1. Uter nomen novae urbi dat?
2. Cives Caesari uni honorem dant.
3. Miles ex altera parte urbis venit.
4. Virtus sola veram voluptatem dat.
5. Utri dat civitas laudem? Neutri.
6. Alii sunt docti, alii ignavi.
7. Alius vires, alius divitiae sunt magnae.
8. Alteri laudem, alteri culpam dant.
9. Nullius vita libera est curis.
10. Neutra civitas laudem ullam habet.

Write in Latin.

1. Romulus gives another name to the new city.
2. The one was pleasing to the king, the other troublesome.
3. The soldiers praise each other.
4. The leader gives the whole booty to the soldiers.
5. Neither of the men has any abode.
6. Life is a burden to no good man.
7. To which of the two boys does the teacher give a reward?
8. Some praise one thing, some another.

LESSON 16.

Adjectives and Adverbs of the Third Declension, Page 15 and 16.

Vocabulary.

arma, ōrum (N.), *arms*.
 animus, i (M.), *soul, mind*.
 ācer, āoris, ācre, *sharp*.
 aequālis, e, *equal*.
 agnus, i (M.), *lamb*.
 audax, ācis, *bold*.
 aspēr, ēra, ērum, *rough*.
 brēvis, e, *short*.
 cēlēr, ēris, ēre, *swift*.
 commūnis, e, *common*.
 consiliūm, i (N.), *plan, counsel*.
 fēlix, icis, *fortunate, happy*.
 fērōx, ōcis, *fierce*.
 fidēlis, e, *faithful*.
 grāvis, e, *heavy, severe*.
 hūmānus, a, um, *human*.
 immortālis, e, *immortal*.
 iter, itinēris (N.), *journey*.

ingens, ntis, *immense*.
 lācōrāt, he *tears*.
 mortālis, e, *mortal*.
 lēvis, e, *light*.
 omnis, e, *all, every*.
 pātiēns, ntis, *patient*.
 prūdens, ntis, *prudent*.
 praestans, ntis, *excellent*.
 praesens, ntis, *present*.
 rāpāx, ācis, *rapacious*.
 sāpiēns, ntis, *wise*.
 tōlērāt, he *bears*.
 tōlērānt, they *bear*.
 stultus, a, um, *foolish*.
 ūtilis, e, *useful*.
 vēlōx, ōcis, *swift*.
 vētus, vēteris, *old*.
 vinum, i (N.), *wine*.

Translate into English.

1. Tempus humanae vitae breve est.
2. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet.
3. Miles vulnus grave patienter tolerat.
4. Vita est breve iter.
5. Consilia ducis audacia sunt.
6. Naves hostium sunt celeres.
7. Ira regis acris erat.
8. Regina cives fideles habet.
9. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia.
10. Agricolaе vinum vetus habent.
11. Amicorum omnia sunt communia.
12. Ferox leo lacerat parvum agnum asperis dentibus.

Write in Latin.

1. A wise father often has a foolish son.
2. The labors are equal, the rewards are not equal.

3. Men have mortal bodies, but immortal souls.
4. Arms are useful to all soldiers.
5. The wounds of the horsemen are light.
6. The plan of the leader was prudent.
7. Solon gives excellent laws to the Greeks.
8. Lions are rapacious animals.
9. The present times are fortunate.
10. The grandfather gives old wine to the sick son of the teacher.

LESSON 17.

Regular Comparison, Page 17.

Vocabulary.

<i>adulatio</i> , ōnis (F.), <i>flattery</i> .	<i>ferrum</i> , i (N.), <i>iron, sword</i> .
<i>aër</i> , aëris (M.), <i>air</i> .	<i>fortis</i> , e, <i>brave, strong</i> .
<i>amabilis</i> , e, <i>lovely</i> .	<i>lūx</i> , lūcis (F.), <i>light</i> .
<i>antiquus</i> , a, um, <i>old</i> .	<i>nihil</i> (N.), (indecl.), <i>nothing</i> .
<i>Cicero</i> , ōnis (M.), <i>Cicero</i> .	<i>perniciōsus</i> , a, um, <i>destructive</i> .
<i>difficilis</i> , e, <i>difficult</i> .	<i>pugnāt</i> , <i>he fights</i> .
<i>difficile</i> (adv.), <i>difficult</i> .	<i>pugnant</i> , <i>they fight</i> .
<i>dulcis</i> , e, <i>sweet</i> .	<i>sāgāx</i> , ācis, <i>sagacious</i> .
<i>ēloquent</i> , ntis, <i>eloquent</i> .	<i>similis</i> , e, <i>similar, like</i> .
<i>facilis</i> , e (adv. facile), <i>easy</i> .	<i>tranquillus</i> , a, um, <i>calm</i> .
<i>fēlis</i> , is (F.), <i>cat</i> .	<i>ventus</i> , i (M.), <i>wind</i> .

Translate into English.

1. Miles fortior ; milites fortissimi.
2. Donum gratum ; donum gratius.
3. Aqua est gravior quam aer.
4. Aestate noctes brevissimae sunt.
5. In bello agricolae sunt miserrimi.
6. Lux velocior est vento.
7. Ferrum utilissimum est omnium metallorum.
8. Nihil amabilius est virtute.
9. Filiae matri simillimae sunt.
10. Germani cum Romanis fortissime pugnant.
11. Vetrissima vina non semper sunt dulcissima.
12. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima fuerunt.

(NOTE:— The Superlative is often translated by "very.")

Write in Latin.

1. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest.
2. The soldiers fight more bravely.
3. The son was very like his father.
4. No one of the Romans was more eloquent than Cicero.
5. Care is swifter than the winds.
6. The Rhine is a very rapid river.
7. The nights are calmer in summer than in winter.
8. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.
9. A queen is often the most wretched of all women.
10. Dogs are more sagacious than cats.

LESSON 18.

Irregular Comparison, Page 17.

Vocabulary.

Alpes, ium (F.), Alps.	confirmāt, he establishes.
aetas, ātis (F.), age.	propior, ius (prope), nearer.
āmāt, he loves.	saepe (adv.), often.
āmant, they love.	sāpientiā, ae (F.), wisdom.
callidus, a, um, cunning.	sūperus, a, um, high.
dissimilis, e, unlike.	sūus, a, um, his, their.
Eurōpa, ae (F.), Europe.	terra, ae (F.), earth, land.
lūna, ae (F.), moon.	tigris, is or idis (C.), tiger.
odīum, i (N.), hatred.	vulpes, is (F.), fox.
pōtens, ntis, powerful.	optimus, a, um, best.

Translate into English.

1. Bonus poeta, melior amicus, optimi libri.
2. Majores pueri, pessimum animal.
3. Nihil est melius sapientiā.
4. Luna minor est quam terra.
5. Plurima et maxima animalia in mari sunt.
6. Homerus est veterrimus omnium Graecorum poetarum.
7. Cicero optimus erat suae aetatis orator.
8. Omnium animalium ferocissimus est tigris, sagacissimus elephantus, callidissima vulpes.
9. Venit ex loco superiore.
10. Proximo regi dissimillimus fuit.

Write in Latin.

1. The best citizens love their native city.
2. Hatred is better than flattery.
3. The most wicked men kill the most excellent [men].
4. Very many islands are larger than Sicily.
5. The worst men are often very happy.
6. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.
7. Cæsar establishes peace with the nearest states.
8. The Alps are the highest mountains in Europe.
9. The best kings are not always the most powerful.
10. The hunter was very often in the woods.

LESSON 19.

Fourth Declension, Page 18.

Vocabulary.

<i>ăcus, ūs</i> (F.), <i>needle.</i>	<i>fructus, ūs</i> (M.), <i>fruit.</i>
<i>agmen, inis</i> (N.), <i>army</i> (on march).	<i>genu, ūs</i> (N.), <i>knee.</i>
<i>ăper, apri</i> (M.), <i>boar.</i>	<i>hospitium, i</i> (N.), <i>hotel, inn.</i>
<i>auditus, ūs</i> (M.), <i>hearing.</i>	<i>instrūmentum, i</i> (N.), <i>instrument.</i>
<i>auris, is</i> (F.), <i>ear.</i>	<i>lăcus, ūs</i> (M.), <i>lake.</i>
<i>oăsus, ūs</i> (M.), <i>fall, accident.</i>	<i>mănus, ūs</i> (F.), <i>hand.</i>
<i>contră</i> (with acc.), <i>against.</i>	<i>ocŭlus, i</i> (M.), <i>eye.</i>
<i>cornu, ūs</i> (N.), <i>horn.</i>	<i>portus, ūs</i> (M.), <i>harbor.</i>
<i>dens, dentis</i> (M.), <i>tusk.</i>	<i>quercus, ūs</i> (F.), <i>oak.</i>
<i>dŏmus, ūs</i> (F.), <i>house.</i>	<i>sensus, ūs</i> (M.), <i>sense.</i>
<i>ăquitătus, ūs</i> (M.), <i>cavalry.</i>	<i>splendĭdus, a, um, bright,</i>
<i>exercitus, ūs</i> (M.), <i>army</i> (drilled).	<i>splendid.</i>
<i>ficus, ūs</i> (F.), <i>fig-tree.</i>	<i>ungŭis, is</i> (M.), <i>claw.</i>
	<i>visus, ūs</i> (M.), <i>seeing.</i>

Translate into English.

1. Casui, casum ; exercitus, exercituum.
2. Quercubus, quercu ; domos, domŭs ; cornua.
3. Visus et auditus hominibus utiles sunt.
4. Cornua tauri acuta sunt.
5. Splendidae domus in oppido nostro sunt.
6. Pater multas altas quercŭs in silva videt.
7. Mox pueri erunt in portu, ubi multas naves vident.
8. Tauri contra leones cornibus pugnāt.
9. In alto lacu plurimi pisces sunt.
10. Non domus nostra corpus est, sed hospitium.

Write in Latin.

1. The hands, with hands ; of a needle, of needles.
2. In houses, at home ; the knees ; with the senses.
3. The fruit of the fig-tree is sweet.
4. The soldier kills the tiger with [his] hand.
5. Cæsar, with all his cavalry, fights against the army of the Gauls.
6. Bulls fight with [their] horns, boars with [their] tusks, lions with [their] claws.
7. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses.
8. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier.
9. The farmer comes home from the city.
10. Hearing and seeing are useful to all animals.

LESSON 20.

Fifth Declension, Page 18.

Vocabulary.

āciēs, ēi (F.), *line of battle.*

dies, ei (M. and F.), *day.*

dōmīna, ae (F.), *mistress.*

faciēs, ēi (F.), *face.*

fīdēs, ēi (F.), *faith.*

glōriōsus, a, um, *glorious.*

īnītiūm, i (N.), *beginning.*

jūstītiā, ae (F.), *justice.*

mēridiēs, ēi (M.), *midday.*

multitūdō, inis (F.), *multi-
tude.* [downfall.

occāsus, ūs (M.), *setting,*

plānitīes, ēi (F.), *plain.*

rēs, rēi (F.), *thing.*

sērēnus, a, um, *serene, clear.*

spēs, ei (F.), *hope.*

sub (with acc. or abl.), *under,
toward.*

Translate into English.

1. Diei, dierum ; rē, rebus.
2. Spem ; in planitie.
3. Sub terra est magna multitudo rerum utilium.
4. Exercitus in magnam planitiem venit.
5. Soror fidei est justitia.
6. Solis occasu Cæsar aciem Gallorum militibus suis monstrat.
7. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum.
8. Spes victoriae milites delectat.
9. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est hieme.
10. In acie multi pedites erant.

Write in Latin.

1. For hope ; of things.
2. For the days ; at midday (abl.).
3. Many things are hurtful to man.
4. In summer the days are longer than the nights.
5. The face of the goddess was most beautiful.
6. The reward was the beginning of hope.
7. Of all things the sun is most glorious.
8. The winter is the time of short days and long nights.
9. The leaders have very great hope of victory.
10. The next day (abl.) Cæsar will be in his camp.

LESSON 21.**Personal Pronouns, Pages 18 and 19.****Translate into English.**

1. Mihi, te, nos, vobis.
2. Ad vos, vestri, nostrum, sibi.
3. Virtus et vitium semper inter se pugnant.
4. Omnes homines se amant.
5. Nos sumus potentes, sed vos estis potentiores.
6. Tu es tristior quam pater meus.
7. Pueri in horto nobiscum ambulant.
8. Ego et frater in oppido heri fuimus. [mortalis.
9. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus im-
10. Parentes vobis cari sunt.
11. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt.
12. Plurimi nostrum patriam amant.

Write in Latin.

1. We, you, me, for us.
2. Of you, himself, against thee.
3. I am a shepherd, you are a teacher.
4. Thy mother is dear to thee ; mine to me.
5. He comes in company with you.
6. The teacher gives me a very beautiful book.
7. He has his brother with him at home. [selves.
8. Fools and the impatient are always fighting with them-
9. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, inhabitants !
10. To us the victory is joyful, to you most sad.

LESSON 22.

Demonstrative Pronouns, Pages 19 and 20.

Translate into English.

1. Hi pueri ; haec dona ; illius libri.
2. In eodem oppido ; mei fratres ipsi.
3. Haec carmina suaviora sunt quam illa.
4. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt.
5. Ista poemata nobis sunt grata.
6. Horum omnium fortissimi sũnt Belgae.
7. Pastor canisque ejus sunt fessi.
8. Illa nox erat tristissima ; hic dies est laetissimus.
9. Iste tuus amicus vir est optimus.
10. Vastae solitudines in iis locis erant.
11. Memoria harum rerum vobis jucunda erit.
12. Nomen hujus poetae clarissimum erit.

Write in Latin.

1. This city (acc.) ; the same words.
2. That letter ; of the parents themselves.
3. These apples are sweet, those sour.
4. The brothers themselves will be in school to-day.
5. These songs are most pleasing to us.
6. That man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth.
7. One of those boys is diligent, the other lazy.
8. In the same places [there] are many new buildings.
9. Why does the teacher give a reward to that tender boy ?
10. The soldiers are in that town, and the enemy in this.

LESSON 23.

Relative and Interrogative Pronouns, Page 20.

Translate into English.

1. Is erit fortissimus, qui ipse suarum cupiditatum victor fuerit.
2. Cujus vox suavior est quam luscinae ?
3. Quis tibi hunc librum dat ?
4. Animal, quod sanguinem habet, cor habet.
5. Quod animal ferocius est quam tigris ?
6. Galliae sunt partes tres, quarum unam Belgae habitant.

7. Quibus diebus erit luna plena?
8. Illi pisces, quos frater in fluvio videt, ferociter mordent.
9. Eis estote amici, qui virtutem summam adhibent.
10. Quem Cicero eloquens doctusque oratione non tenet?

Write in Latin.

1. A boy, who studies, will be wise.
2. [He] who gives honors to the bad, is hurtful to the state.
3. Many men will be great, whose life has been obscure and full of dangers.
4. That king is fortunate, whom all the citizens praise.
5. Who of the Romans was more renowned than Cicero?
6. The bowls which are here had often been full of sweet wine.
7. Let the pupils be present, to whom the teacher gives rewards.
8. Whose life has been altogether¹ free from cares?
9. To which jeweller does the queen give the greatest [sum of] money?
10. What animal has greater strength than the elephant?

¹ altogether = *omnino*.

LESSON 24.

Cardinals and Ordinals, Pages 21 and 22.

Translate into English.

1. Duodecim ; duodetriginta.
2. Quintus ; trigesimus.
3. Illi duodequinquaginta pueri.
4. Mille passūs ; duo millia passuum ; ducenta millia passuum.
5. Hic murus est altus trecentos pedes, et latus novem pedes.
6. Quota hora est? Decima.
7. Agricola filius primus est ; amici filia secunda, ille puer autem undecimus.
8. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos.

Write in Latin.

1. Fourteen ; forty-nine.
2. The fifteenth ; the nineteenth.
3. The wise [men] of Greece were seven.
4. A journey of three miles.
5. The enemy kill five thousand men in the war.
6. What time is it? 7 o'clock ; midday.¹
7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and very wicked.
8. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers, three hundred horsemen. i meridies, ii, (M.)

LESSON 25.

Active Voice. Four Conjugations. Present and Imperfect ; Indicative.
Pages 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Laudatis, laudabas ; cadunt, cadebam.
2. Tenemus, tenebamus ; veniunt, veniebatis.
3. Miles ex altera parte urbis venit.
4. Romani contra hostes pugnant.
5. Helvetii Caesaris adventum expectabant.
6. Timidae oves in medio campo errabant.
7. Occasu solis dominus cum servis ad oppidum veniebat.
8. Tota spes Romanos deserit.
9. Milites omnes periculum timent.
10. Vita mortalibus nihil dat sine magno labore.
11. Homines amplius oculis quam auribus credunt.
12. Hostes impetum legionum atque equitum non sustinebant.

Write in Latin.

1. He laughs, they were laughing ; they adorn, we did adorn.
2. You end ;¹ he saw ; they took, she takes.
3. Virtues adorn the state.
4. The general praised the valor of [his] soldiers.
5. The fierce enemy take the city.

¹ to end = *finis*.

6. This day ends the liberty of the commonwealth.
7. The Romans gave the greatest honors to good citizens.
8. The Gauls were fighting with great courage.
9. Many men were building² houses, in which they do not live.
10. The soldiers carry ladders with them, and easily enter the city.

² to build = *aedifico*.¹

LESSON 26.

Future; Indicative. Pages 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Scribam, scribemus; servabit; servabunt.
2. Habebis, habebitis; custodies; custodient.
3. Ad te semper scribemus.
4. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis.
5. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt.
6. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus.¹
7. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.
8. Imperator hanc urbem custodiet.
9. Miles corpus paludamento teget.
10. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque defendetis.
11. Hieme in urbe vivemus, aestate autem ruri vivimus.
12. Ver nobis multos flores praebebit.

¹ *punio* = to punish.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall see, they will see; he will lead, you will lead.
2. They end, they ended, they will end.
3. The trees will bloom in spring.
4. We shall laugh, you will weep.
5. Hannibal will lead his army into Rome.
6. The next day Cæsar will move his camp.
7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with [my] cloak.
8. You will not easily see a lion in Europe.
9. The soldiers will kill all the prisoners with swords.
10. Death will end all the hopes of life.

LESSON 27.

Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect; Indicative. Pages 28, 33, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Habueram, habuerunt ; veneritis, venisti.
2. Contrahebat, contraxerat, contraxēre, contrahet.
3. Ille rex urbem Romam muris munivit.
4. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit.
5. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris.
6. Suevi, Germanorum gens bellicosissima, loca fertilissima Germaniae occupaverant.
7. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuēre.
8. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat.¹
9. Cicero multas pulcherrimas orationes scripsit.
10. Militum corpora socii sepeliverint.
11. Ad rivum eundem lupus et agnus venerant.
12. Ingens monstrum virgo domuit.

¹ *detego*³ = to discover.

Write in Latin.

1. We had seized, he will have seized
2. They have covered, we shall cover, she had covered.
3. Nature has fortified Italy by the Alps.
4. Bad temper has often been-hurtful¹ to generals.
5. Cæsar arranged the line-of-battle.
6. Base fear of the enemy had seized the whole army.
7. We owe much to those, who have taught us virtue.
8. In spring the flowers will have covered the hills² and fields.
9. The senate decreed rewards to the soldiers, who had not betrayed the town.
10. This state had flourished [for] a long time, because it had always obeyed the laws.

¹ *noceo*². ² *collis, is* (M.).

LESSON 28.

Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect. Active. Four Conjugations and sum. Pages 24, 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Audiatis, audires ; curemus, curaret ; essemus.
2. Timeamus, timerem ; dicant, dicerent ; sis.
3. Laudabit puerum, ut litteras amet.
4. Magister curat, ut pueri mentem erudiat.
5. Curo, ut pueri corpus exerceam.
6. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducet, ut cum Romanis pugnet.
7. Sint tibi omnia bona.
8. Sit pauper, sit miser ; at est frater meus.
9. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret.
10. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superarent.

Write in Latin.

1. He may fight, they might fight ; you might send ; I may be.
2. We may say, thou mightst say ; you may sustain ; he might be.
3. They ask [for] aid, that they may sustain the attack of the enemy.
4. Cæsar hastened to Italy, that he might enroll¹ there two legions.
5. The general commanded, that the soldiers should keep their stations.²
6. I will take care to train³ [that I may train] the boy's mind.
7. Who does not fight, that he may preserve his country?
8. I do not doubt, that you may always praise the good.
9. My father commanded, that I should come home.
10. We did not doubt, that you might have faith in us.

¹ to enroll = *conscribo*³. ² *statio, ōnis*. ³ *erudio*.⁴

LESSON 29.

Perfect and Pluperfect, Pages 25, 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Cognoscamus, cognosceremus, cognoverimus, cognovissemus, fuerimus.
2. Studeant ; judicarent ; dubitaveris ; convenissent ; fuissent.
3. Saepe majores¹ nostri dimicaverunt, ut patriam liberarent.
4. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter studuerint.
5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites fortissime pugnaverint.
6. Convenitis, ut malum oratorem rideatis.
7. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus, malos semper vituperaverimus ?
8. Ex captivis² cognovit, quo in loco copiae hostium con-sedissent.
9. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupavisset.
10. Ita judicat judex justus, ut in omni re rectam³ conscientiam servet.

¹ majores, *um* (c.) = ancestors. ² prisoner. ³ right.

Write in Latin.

1. We might have obeyed ; he may have built ; it might have been.
2. I may take care, you might take care, he may have taken care, we might have taken care.
3. Cæsar led an army to Italy, that he might liberate the city Rome. [customs].
4. There is no doubt, that he has changed his manner
5. The Greeks took care, that the young men had obeyed all laws.
6. The father wished, that you had come home.
7. We had built houses, [in order] that others might have lived in them.
8. Nobody doubted, that we had always praised the good and blamed the bad (plur.).

LESSON 30.

Imperative. Active. Pages 29, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Amate litteras, pueri !
2. Vires semper exercete in optimis rebus !
3. Lauda mare ; litus ama !
4. Diligenter cura, mi amice, valetudinem tuam !
5. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudito.
6. Laudatote probos¹ homines, vituperatote improbos.
7. Dic, cur veneris !
8. Ne nomen muta ; muta mores !
9. Judex praemia ne dato, neve capito.
10. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripserint !

Write in Latin.

1. The children shall obey [their] parents.
2. Set² a good example to thy friends !
3. Learn these songs, boys ; they are very beautiful.
4. Carefully train your children ; praise the good ; punish
5. My son, obey thy mother ! [the bad !]
6. Let the master teach the boys the Latin language.
7. Do not destroy the city, soldiers !
8. Tell me, my son, what the friend has written (subj.) !

¹ honest. ² praeco.

LESSON 31.

Infinitives: Active. Pages 29, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Fuisse ; habiturus esse ; debere.
2. Recturus esse ; intellexisse ; studere ; futurus esse.
3. Naturam mutare difficile est.
4. Miserum est habuisse, et nihil habere.
5. Hominis est animum praeparare.
6. Milites urbem custodire debent.
7. Difficillimum est regere hominum animos.
8. Emisse facilius est quam solvere.
9. Aliud audire, aliud intelligere est.
10. Hostes urbem nostram expugnare student.

Write in Latin.

1. To be ; to have written ; to be about to praise.
2. To have been ; to be about to see ; to please.
3. It is not easy to write well.
4. He prepared to obey the authority of [his] great father.
5. It is great praise to have pleased the good.
6. It is difficult to have learned many things.
7. The general said, [that] he [se] will come with the tenth legion.
8. He who knows not to obey, knows not to command.

LESSON 32.

Participles, Gerunds, and Supines. Pages 29, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Exercitus pugnans urbem intravit.
2. Animus, se non videns, alia cernit.
3. Hostes, urbem expugnaturi, castra muniverunt.
4. Venio auditurus, quid pater scripserit.
5. Ars scribendi utilissima est.
6. Sapientia est ars vivendi.
7. Homines ad intelligendum et ad agendum nati sunt.
8. Legatos ad Caesarem miserant, rogatum auxilium.
9. Sitis difficillima est toleratu.
10. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum.

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers [when] fighting entered the city.
2. We are about-to-remove into the city.
3. We have come to Rome to look-at the games.
4. Philosophy is the art of living uprightly.
5. The senate decreed rewards to the soldiers, not having [who had not] betrayed the town.
6. Ripe grapes¹ are sweet to taste.²

¹ *uva*, *æ*, (*v*.)² *gusto*.¹

LESSON 33.

Passive Voice; Four Conjugations. Present: Indicative and Subjunctive. Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Terretur, terreantur ; fugantur, fugemur.
2. Trahitur, trahatur ; erudimur, erudiamur.
3. Castra e campo moventur, ut hostes terreantur.
4. Senex miser e domo trahitur.
5. Nonne litterae a me scribuntur ?
6. Virtus semper doceatur.
7. Multa videntur, sed intelliguntur pauca.
8. Lupi a canibus fugantur, ut oves serventur.
9. Omnia antecapiantur, ut nostri juventur.
10. Leo, ut interficiatur, a venatore petitur.

Write in Latin.

1. We are caught, he may be caught ; he is charmed, they may be charmed.
2. You may be bound ; they are taught.
3. The idle guards are caught.
4. The nightingale¹ is charmed by her own song.
5. You are bound by honor.
6. The boy may be defended by his friends.
7. The enemy are hidden in the woods.
8. The power of the Germans is feared by all nations.
9. The soldiers fight very bravely, that the town may be saved.

¹ *luscinia*, α, (F.)

LESSON 34.

Imperfect: Indicative and Subjunctive. Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Arabatur, araretur ; vincerer, vincebaris.
2. Praeberemur, praebebatis ; custodiretis, custodiremini.
3. Agri lati facile ararentur.
4. Frumentum agricolis praeberetur.
5. Lupus ferox a pastore vincebatur.
6. Fertilissima Germaniae loca colebantur.

7. Cives tantum laudabantur, ut furore occuparentur.
8. Litterae scribebantur, ut ego admonerer.
9. Portae hostibus aperiebantur, ut in urbem intrarent.
10. Patina pomis implebatur, ut ab hominibus ederentur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were chosen ; they might be bounded.
2. It was fortified ; you might be left.
3. The lion was chosen king by the animals.
4. The garden was bounded by a wall.
5. The province was left by the Germans.
6. We were fortified by a mind conscious of right.
7. You might be led home.
8. Ladders were furnished, that the walls might be destroyed.
9. The stag was held by [his] horns, that he might not escape.
10. We were deceived, that we might not receive the money.

LESSON 35.

Future. Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Turbaberis ; sustinebuntur ; finiemini.
2. Amitemur ; despiciar ; vincieris.
3. Leges Romanae mox turbabuntur.
4. Animus meus justitiā sustinebitur.
5. Plus oculis quam auribus debetur.
6. In via amittar.
7. A legatis agnoscemur.
8. Tigillum a ranis conspicietur et despicietur.
9. Bellum a stulto incipiebatur et a sapiente finietur.
10. Vos, mei inimici, vinciemini.

Write in Latin.

1. He will be blamed ; they will be filled.
2. He will be received ; you will be sent.
3. I shall be praised, but you will be blamed.
4. The ocean will be filled with fishes.
5. Our friends will be warned in vain.

6. The attack will be received by us all.
7. The power of the Romans will be broken.
8. We shall be destroyed, that you may be hidden.
9. The armies will not be sent across the Rhine.
10. The monkey will be punished, because he has seized the meat.

LESSON 36.

Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect. Indicative and Subjunctive.
Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Distingueretur, distinctus sit ; jubebitur, jussus erat.
2. Falsi sumus, fallamur ; conficientur, confecti essent.
3. Pulchra puella abrepta est ab Appio Claudio, uno ex decemviris.
4. Vocati eramus Romani, ut a posteris memoraremur.
5. Ager divisus erit in tres partes.
6. Domus colore distincta esset.
7. Verba fallacia dicta sint.
8. Hostium equitatu erepti essetis.
9. Litterae confectae erunt a diligentibus discipulis.
10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia finita erunt

Write in Latin.

1. We had been heard ; they will have been calmed.¹
2. You may have been told ; he might have been rescued.²
3. A great crash has been heard.
4. The voice of anger will have been calmed.
5. The body might have been taken to Athens.
6. The horses have been frightened by the attack of the enemy.
7. Gaul is bounded (perf.) by the river Rhine and the ocean.
8. Who doubts that Socrates has been unjustly punished ?
9. When the city shall have been fortified, the citizens will defend it.
10. Tell me, what had been written (subj.) to you by your sister.

¹ to calm = *lenio*.⁴² to rescue = *cripio*.³

LESSON 37.

Imperative, Pages 31, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Pueri, exercemini in artibus !
2. Scriba regis agnoscitor.
3. Vox populi auditor.
4. Alti montes adscenduntur.
5. De rupe puella dejicitor.
6. Amici, edite et nutrimini ! [clauduntur.¹
7. Portae prima luce aperiuntur, et ante solis occasum
8. Mi fili, probe erudire in optimis rebus !

¹ claudio,³ si, sum = to shut, close.

Write in Latin.

1. Be ye conquered, O gates !
2. Be thou sustained, O friend ! [and Gauls.
3. The peace shall be maintained among the Romans
4. Let the arms be carried into the city.
5. Evils shall be prevented at all times.
6. The man shall be blamed on-account-of¹ his guilt.²
7. Be thou always sought, O virtue !
8. Let the meat be grasped-at by the dog.

¹ on-account-of = *propter* (with acc.). ² guilt = *culpa*, *ae* (F.).

LESSON 38.

Infinitives, Pages 31, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Reddi ; conjectus esse.
2. Paratum iri ; erudiri.
3. Ager vastari non debet.
4. Timor leti deleri non potest.
5. Ciconiae in unum locum congregare solent.
6. Nuntiat se eruditum esse.
7. Leges civem Romanum verberari vetuerunt.
8. Magna pars sermonis responderi potest.
9. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.
10. De monte hastas torqueri imperator jussit.

Write in Latin.

1. To have been accused ; to be about to be taught.
2. To be betrayed ; to have been guarded.
3. To have been warned is not to have been accused.
4. It is not easy to be taught well.
5. For a man (acc.) to be changed in one day is very difficult.
6. The general commanded, [that] the line of battle be arranged.
7. It is a great wrong for a friend to be betrayed.
8. Nothing can be accomplished without labor.
9. No one, without a fault, ought to be accused.
10. The captive has been prepared to be cast into chains.

LESSON 39.**Deponent Verbs. Four Conjugations. Page 37.****Translate into English.**

1. Testis fidelis non mentitur.
2. Nunquam sapiens irascitur.
3. De multis rebus locuti sumus.
4. Subita tempestas classem morabatur.
5. Improbis plurima pollicetur, pauca perficit.
6. Cur stulta ista rana bovem imitatur ?
7. Frons, oculi, vultus, saepe mentiuntur.
8. Nox atque praeda hostes remorata sunt.
9. Omnia vetustate labuntur, nec quidquam a senectute tutum est.
10. Omnibus in vita unā cum amicis frui !
11. Tu voluptate frueris, ego utor.
12. Senectutem omnes sperant, eandem accusant adeptam.

Write in Latin.

1. At the beginning of summer the enemy set out for Rome.
2. Many of the Greeks, who had gone forth to Troy, never returned home.

3. Orgetorix persuades Dumnorix, that he may attempt the same.

4. On every side flowers sprang-up¹ in the fields and meadows.

5. Speak little, promise cautiously, remember always the benefits² of your friends.

6. The lieutenant will measure corn to the soldiers.

7. My son has reached³ the same grades⁴ of honor.

8. The soldiers are about to attack the city, which the enemy occupy.

9. There is no doubt, that the generals have promised rewards to the brave soldiers.

10. On the same day, on which the most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

¹ *orior*.² *beneficium*. ³ *adipiscor*.⁴ *gradus, ūs*.

LESSON 40.

Irregular Verbs. Possum; prosum. Page 26.

Translate into English.

1. Vulpes autem uvam tangere non potuit.

2. Duos libros tibi dare possumus.

3. Praeterita mutare non possumus.

4. Aut prodesse poetae cupiunt aut delectare.

5. Agros Remorum depopulati sunt,¹ quos adire poterant.

6. Vir sapiens luctum calcare potuerit.

7. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, cum hostes impetum fecerunt.

8. Illi minus facile eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant.

9. Alterum deinde, priusquam tertius posset consequi, interfecit.

10. Non id potuit efficere.

11. Potest ex casa magnus vir exire; virtus in omni loco nascitur.

12. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere.

¹ *depopulo*,¹ to lay waste.

Write in Latin.

1. Many cannot endure the pain of sickness.
2. He could not seize all places in Italy.
3. They will be able to enter the town to-day with all their troops.
4. He may be able to give me this letter.
5. The teacher always praises him because he is able to read better than all [other] pupils.
6. Cæsar could not defend the city, which the enemy had attacked.
7. They could not be taught the Latin language by others.

LESSON 41.

Volo; nolo; malo. Page 38.

Translate into English.

1. Noli esse amicus homini iracundo.
2. Ambo rempublicam, quam tueri potuissent, perturbare maluerant.
3. Inter Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat.
4. Visne scire, quae scripserim?
5. Ego domi manere nolo, tu ambulare non vis.
6. Soror saltare mavult, quam studere.
7. Oro te, ut mecum ludere velis. [debemus.
8. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse
9. Si vis amari, ama!
10. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles, quam obesse.¹

¹ *obsum* = to do harm.

Write in Latin.

1. What we wish, we gladly believe.
2. Love others, if you wish to be loved yourself.
3. While the greedy dog wishes to grasp the shadow, he lets-fall¹ the meat from his mouth.
4. Do you wish to walk in the fields with me? No; I prefer to remain at home.

¹ to let fall = *emitto*.²

5. They did not wish the soldiers to remain in the city.
6. Do the boys wish to play on the plain? No; they prefer to study.
7. If you wish to be happy, imitate¹ the examples of good men!
8. We had rather be useful to our country than be rich.
9. A good man will prefer to be loved rather than feared.
10. Do not follow bad examples, my son!

¹ *imitor*.¹

LESSON 42.

Fero and compounds, Page 39.

Translate into English.

1. Quid est tam nobile quam opem ferre supplicibus?
2. Senectus affert¹ prudentiam.
3. Laudo vos, quod misero auxilium fertis.
4. Nihil potest praeferri virtuti.
5. Curabamus, ut auxilium tibi ferretur.
6. Perfer patienter laborem.
7. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.²
8. Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges.
9. Agricola paupertatis onus patienter tulit.
10. Domum reditūs spes sublata est.

Write in Latin.

1. Bad citizens bear arms against [their] country.
2. Socrates bore hardships most patiently.
3. Learn to bear well pleasure and pain.
4. There is no doubt, that old age brings many sorrows with it.
5. Cæsar ordered two legions to bear aid to the cavalry.
6. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life.
7. Who can endure the discourse of this foolish man?
8. Bring back those books to me, which I gave you yesterday!

¹ *affero* = to bring.

² *perfero* = to endure.

LESSON 43.

Fio, Page 39.

Translate into English.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus.
2. Ex amico inimicus, ex inimico amicus fieri potest.
3. Senectute prudentior fis.
4. Deus dixit : Fiat, et factus est mundus.
5. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules.
6. Themistoclis consilio factum est, ut Athenienses ¹ urbem relinquerent.
7. Onus, quod bene fertur, leve fit.
8. Qui noxium adjuvabit, ² culpae socius ³ fiet.
9. His rebus fit, ut Helvetii minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possint.
10. Caesar litteris Labieni certior factus erat.

¹ Athenians. ² help. ³ ally, partner.

Write in Latin.

1. No one becomes, by chance, very base.
2. This heavy burden was made light by patience.
3. In time (*mox*) our soldiers will become bolder.
4. In winter the days become shorter and the nights longer.
5. The Athenians had become the allies of the Romans.
6. Cæsar, having been informed by the legates, ¹ set out for Rome.
7. He wished to become friendly to me.

¹ *légātus, i, (M.)*.

LESSON 44.

Eo and compounds, Page 39.

Translate into English.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis.
2. In pugna atrocissima multi fortissimi milites perierunt.
3. Curare debemus, ne vitam silentio transeamus.
4. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt.
5. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo mortem obiit.

6. Alexander ad Jovis oraculum¹ adire constituit.
7. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat.
8. Cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit.
9. Civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent.

¹ *oraculum, i* (N.) = the oracle.

Write in Latin.

1. Very many [persons] pass their lives in silence.
2. Let us go to the city ; let us return from the country.
3. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind.
4. After the battle very many perished by hunger and cold.
5. Italy is fortified by the Alps, [those] very lofty mountains, which an army cannot easily cross.
6. Go to Rome, my son, and wonder [at] the monuments of the old Romans.
7. At the beginning of winter the general wished to cross the river with all his forces on a bridge.

EXTRACTS FROM CÆSAR.

NOTE. — In the special vocabularies, only such words are included as are not found in the Vocabulary at the end of the book. The figures refer to Notes on p. 218.

I.

Vocabulary.

Aquitāni, orum, M. (pl.), *the Aquitani*, a people of Gaul.

Celtae, arum, M. (pl.), *the Celts*, inhabiting a division of Gaul.

dēligo,³ lēgi, lectum, *to select, appoint.*

inductus (induco), *instigated, induced.*

inter se, *from one another (among themselves).*

Orgētōrix, Igis (M.), *Orgelorix*, chief of the Helvetians.

orior, Iri, ortus, *begin (arise).*

praecōdo,³ cōssi, cōssum, *to surpass, excel.*

quod, (namely), *because.*

septemtriones, um, M. (pl.), *the north.*

ut . . . exirent (exeo), *to go forth.*

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam Celtae.

2. Hi omnes linguā, institutis, legibus inter se differunt.

3. Quā de causā Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt.

4. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni, spectant in septemtriones et orientem solem.

5. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix.

6. Is, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent.

7. His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum¹ pertinerent comparare.

8. Ad eas res conficiendas² Orgetorix deligitur.

¹ to the journey(ing).

² to effect these things.

II.

Vocabulary.

Casticus, 1 (M.), *Casticus*, a Sequanian chief.

cibāria, orum (N.), *supplies, provisions.*

ēnuntio, to announce, to report.

exsequor,³ *secutus*, to follow out, accomplish.

indīcium, 1 (N.), *disclosure, discovery.*

jusjūrandum, jurisjurandi (N.), *an oath.*

mōlo,³ *molui, molitum*, to grind.

obaerātus, 1 (M.), *a debtor.*

quum = *cum*, *when* (with subjunctive verb).

1. In eo itinere persuadet¹ Castico (cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat), ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet,¹ quod pater ante habuerat.

2. Hac oratione adducti, inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

3. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata.

4. Die constitutā Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad² hominum milia decem, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, conduxit; per eos se eripuit.

5. Quum civitas, ob eam rem incitata, armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, Orgetorix mortuus est.

6. Post ejus mortem, nihilominus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant.

7. Trium mensium molita cibaria quemque domo efferre jubent.

III.

Vocabulary.

Allobrōges, um, M. (pl.), *the Allobroges*, a people of Gaul.
Genēva (or **Genua**), ae (F.), *Geneva*.
inflūo,⁸ fluxi, fluxum, *to flow into*.
Jura, ae (M.), *Mount Jura*, in Gaul.
Lēmānnus, i (M.), *lake Lemannus* (now *Geneva*).
mātūro,¹ *to hasten*.
perdūco,³ duxi, ductum, *to carry, to extend*.
Sequāni, ōrum (M.), *the Sequani*.
ultērior, us (adj. in compar.), *farther*.
vādum, i (N.), *a ford (wading)*.

PHRASES : —

certiorem facere, *to inform*.

sibi esse in animo, *that it was their intention*.

1. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent ; unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum ; alterum per provinciam nostram multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod Rhodanus nonnullis locis vado transitur.

2. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvetiorum finibus, Geneva.

3. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet.

4. Caesari quum id nuntiatum esset, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest⁸ itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit.

5. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, qui dicerent⁴ : Sibi esse in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere.

6. Interea — ea legione,⁵ quam secum habebat, militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant — a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem⁶ murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit.

IV.

Vocabulary.

Aedui, a, um, *Ædian*; (plural), *the Ædii*.
angustiae, arum (F.), *narrowness, narrow pass, strait*.
conscribo,³ **scripsi**, **scriptum**, *to enroll, enlist*.
dēprēcātor, oris (M.), *an intercessor*.
Dumnōrix, is (M.), *Dumnorix*, an Ædian chief.
ēdūco,³ **duxī**, **ductum**, *to lead out*.
pōpūlor,¹ **atus**, *to lay waste, devastate*.
transdūco,³ **duxī**, **ductum**, *to lead over, conduct*.

1. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se posse⁷ iter ulli per provinciam dare.

2. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua propter angustias ire non poterant.

3. His quum persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem mittunt, ut eo deprecatore⁸ impetrarent.

4. Dumnorix apud Sequanos plurimum poterat,⁹ et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat.

5. Ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus¹⁰ contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres ex hibernis educit, et in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes ire contendit.

6. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur.

V.

Vocabulary.

cōtrā (adv. and prep. with acc.), *on this side*.
concīdo,³ **cīdī**, **cīsum**, *to cut to pieces, destroy*.
de tertiā vigiliā, *at the third watch (midnight)*.
inopīnans, tis (adj.), *not thinking of it, unaware*.
in utram partem, *in which direction*.
lēnitas, ātis (F.), *gentleness, slowness*.
Tigūrīnus, a, um, *Tigurian or Tigurine*.

1. Aedui, quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum (*supine*) auxilium.

2. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat judicari non possit.

3. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen transduxisse,¹¹ quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia, cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervenit quae nondum flumen transierat.

4. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam partem eorum concidit.

5. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est.

6. Hic pagus Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat.

VI.

Vocabulary.

Cassiānus, a, um, *Cassian*, of or with *Cassius*.

committo,³ **misi**, **missum**, to put together, commit, permit.

contūmēlia, ae (F.), *insult*, *abuse*.

Divloo, ōnis (M.), *Divico*, a *Helvetian*.

eo . . quod, for this reason, that.

lēgatio, ōnis (F.), *embassy*.

quārē (adv.), *whereby*, *why*, *for which reason*.

1. Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, legatos ad eum mittunt, cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat.

2. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.¹²

3. Quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet.

4. His Cæsar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoriâ teneret.

5. Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num recentium injuriarum deponere posse?

6. Tamen si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur facturos intelligat, et si Aeduis de injuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus, satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum.

VII.

Vocabulary.

comporto,¹ *to bring together, collect.*

dūco,² **dūxi**, **ductum** (with time), *to put off, delay.*

flāgīto,¹ *to demand.*

mājōres, **um** (C.), *ancestors.*

pābŭlum, **i** (N.), *fodder.*

praesentia, **ae** (F.), *presence; in praesentia, at present, for the present.*

prōhibeo,² **ui**, **ŭtum**, *to keep back, restrain, prevent.*

rāpīna, **ae** (F.), *plundering, rapine.*

suppēto,³ **petivi**, **petitum**, *to be supplied, to be at hand.*

1. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere non dare consueverint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem.

2. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Cæsar, et equitatum omnem praemittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.

3. Cæsar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis prohibere.

4. Interim quotidie Cæsar Aeduos frumentum quod essent publice polliciti flagitare.

5. Nam propter frigora non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat.

6. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere.¹⁸

VIII.

Vocabulary.

affinitas, atis (F.), *marriage, alliance.*

cupio,⁸ *to wish well (desire).*

dēsigno,¹ *to mark out, designate.*

diminuo,⁸ ui, ūtum, *to diminish.*

Liscus, i (M.), *Liscus*, an Æduan chief.

plurimum valēre, *to have very great weight.*

1. Tum demum Liscus proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat.

2. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit.

3. Liscum retinet; dicit liberius atque audacius.

4. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus semper alere et circum se habere.

5. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem; odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus diminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.

6. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire.

IX.

Vocabulary.

obsecro,¹ *to beg, entreat.*

offendo (obfendo),⁸ fendi, fensum, *to offend, displease.*

prendo (prehendo),⁸ ndi, nsum, *to take, grasp.*

stātuo,⁸ ūi, ūtum, *to determine, decide, place.*

suspicio (or suspitio), onis (F.), *suspicion.*

temperantia, ae (F.), *temperance, moderation.*

1. Quum ad has suspiciones certissimæ res accederent, satis esse causæ arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret,¹⁴ aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.

2. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat; nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet verebatur.

3. Divitiacus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret.

4. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimatum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.¹⁵

5. Caesar ejus dextram prendit; Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem adhibet; quæ in eo reprehendat ostendit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet.

X.

Vocabulary.

captivus, **i** (M.), *captive, prisoner.*

circuitus, **us** (M.), *circuit, a going round.*

comperio,⁴ **perl**, **pertum**, *to ascertain, disclose.*

insigne, **is** (N.), *a standard, ensign.*

PHRASES: —

equo admisso, *at full speed.*

summus mons, *the top of the mountain.*

primâ luce, *at break of day.*

1. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedissee milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent misit.¹⁶ Renuntiatum est facilem esse.

2. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum legatum pro prætore cum duabus legionibus et his ducibus summum jugum montis ascendere jubet.

3. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere quo hostes ierant ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit.

4. Prima luce, quum summus mons a Tito Labieno tenebatur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admissus ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem a Labieno occupari voluerit ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse.

NOTES.

1. *persuadet . . ut . . occuparet, persuades to seize.*
2. *ad = to the number of.*
3. *quam maximis potest, the greatest possible; contendit, pushes on.*
4. *qui dicerent, to say (who were to say).*
5. *ea legione, with that legion (a military phrase); secum (= cum se), with him.*
6. *milia . . . novem, nineteen miles (in length); pedum, etc., 16 feet in height.*
7. *negat se posse, says he cannot; ulli, to anybody.*
8. *eo deprecatore = by his intercession.*
9. *plurimum poterat, = had very great power; in matrimonium duxerat, had married.*
10. *magnis itineribus, = by forced marches.*
11. *tres . . transduxisse, that the Helv. had already taken across, &c.*
12. See page 251 of the Grammar. The teacher should explain this and the following constructions, *familiarly and orally.*
13. *conferri, etc., it (the corn) was being got together, was on the way, was close by, they said) hist. infin.: Rule 40, p. 163.*
14. *animadvertere in = to punish.*
15. *futurum uti averterentur = would be turned away.*
16. *qui cognoscerent misit, he sent [men] to learn.*

Caesar's Landing in Britain.

Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quòd nāvēs propter
for reason because on-account-of
 magnitudinem in altō cōstitui nōn poterant ; militibus¹ autem
size deep stationed
 —ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravi onere
unknown encumbered weight
 armōrum oppressis — simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum¹ et in
loaded at-the-same-time (had-to) leap-down
 fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum ;
wave stand-firm
 cū illi aut ex aridō, aut paulum in aquam prōgressi, omni-
while dry (land) a-little advanced
 bus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimis locis, audacter tēla conjice-
limb free well-known boldly dart hurl
 rent, et equōs insuefactōs incitārent.

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs² longās (quārum et
when perceive (acc.)
 speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōr, et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior)
appearance unusual motion service
 paulum removēri² ab onerāriis nāvibus, et rēmīs incitāri,² et
remove of-burden oar push-on
 ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui,² atque inde fundis, sagittis,
side open thence sling
 tormentis hostēs submovēri jussit.² Atque, nōstris militibus
engine (acc.) driven order
 cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, [is] qui
delay chiefly on-account-of depth
 decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deōs ut ea rēs
tenth appealing-to
 legiōni fēliciter ēveniret: *Dēsilite*, inquit, *militēs*, *nisi vultis*
happily turn-out
aquilam hostibus prōdere. *Ego certē meum rei pūblicae atque im-*
abandon at-least
peratōri officium praestitēro. Hōc cū vōce magnā dixisset, sē
duty fulfil
 ex nāvi prōjēcit, atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum
cast-forward
 nōstri, cohortāti inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur,
cheering shame permit
 ūniversi ex nāvi dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis nāvibus
all-at-once also nearest
 cū cōspexissent, subsecūti hostibus adpropinquārunt.
caught-sight-of follow-close approach

¹ The construction is, *militibus* (dat.) *dēsiliendum erat*, "the soldiers had to," &c. — ² The construction is, *jussit nāvēs removēri*, etc.

VOCABULARY.

No. I.—ENGLISH AND LATIN.

NOTE.—For the principal parts of verbs (when not given in full), and for the inflection of some proper names, see Vocabulary No. II. For Numerals, see pages 21, 22. The figures in parenthesis refer to the Table of Synonymes.

A, usually not expressed; a certain,
quidam, quaedam, quoddam.

Abode, *domicilium, ī, N.*; *habitatio, ōnis, F.* (39).

About (adv.), *circiter, ferē*; (prep.),
circā, circum.

Abroad, *foris* (place where); *forās*
(whither).

Abundance, *cōpia, ae, F.*

Accomplish, *perficio, 3 efficio, 3 feci, fectum.*

Accuse, *accūsō, 1 arguo, 3 ī, ūtum.*

Acorn, *glāns, dis, F.*

Across, *trāns* (acc.).

Admire, *mīror, 1 ārī, ātus.*

Admonish, *moneo, 2 admoneo, 2 uī, ium.*

Adorn, *orno, 1*

Advance (v.), *prōgredior, 3 gressus.*

Advantage, *ūtilitās, ātis, F.*

Advantageous, *ūtilis, e.*

Affair, *rēs, reī, F.*

After, *post* (acc.).

Afterwards, *postēd.*

Again, *iterum*; again and again,
etiam atque etiam.

Against, *contrā, in* (acc.).

Age, *aetās, ātis, F.* (7).

Aid, *auxilium, ī, N.*

Alarmed, *territus, a, um.*

All, every, *omnis, e*; whole, *tōtus, a, um* (gen. *tōtius*); all things,
omnia (77).

Allowed, it is —, *licet, uit, itum.*

Alone, *sōlus, a, um* (gen. *sōlius*).

Along with, *und cum* (abl.).

Already, *jam.*

Also, *quoque, etiam.*

Always, *semper.*

Am, see **Be**.

Ambassador, *lēgātus, ī, M.*

Among, *inter* (acc.).

Ancient, *antiquus, a, um.*

And, *et, atque* (ac), *-que.*

Anger, *ira, ae, F.*

Animal, *animal, ālis, N.* (14).

Another, *alius, a, ud* (gen. *alius*);
of two, *alter, era, erum* (p. 7)

Answer (v.), *respondeo, 2 dī, sum.*

Answer (n.), *respōsum, ī, N.*

Ant, *formīca, ae, F.*

Antiquities, *rēs antiquae* (plur.).

Antony, *Antōnius, ī, M.*

Any, *ullus, a, um* (gen. *ūs*); after
negatives, *quisquam*; anybody
(emphatic), *quīvīs, quacvīs*; in-
terrog. *numquīs.*

Apparel, *vestitus, ūs, M.*

Appear, *videor, 2 visus*; *appāreo, 2 uī.*

Appearance, *speciēs, ēī, F.*

Apple, *pōmum*, *ī*, N.
Approve, *probo*.¹
Are, *sumus, estis, sunt*; a sign of the present.
Arms, *arma, ōrum*, N. (16).
Army, *exercitus, ūs*, M. (5).
Arrange, *dispōno*,³ *posui, positum*.
Arrangement, *dispositio, ōnis*, F.
Arrive, *pervenio*,⁴ *vēni, ventum*.
Art, *ars, artis*, F.
As, *ut*; as . . . as, *tam . . . quam*; such . . . as, *tālis . . . quālis* (see *quantus, quot, quotiēs*, § 106); as if, *quasi, tamquam*.
Ashamed, usually with *pudet* (impers. see § 221. b, c); as, I am ashamed, *mē pudet*.
Aside (in compos.), *sē*: as, *sē-voco*,¹ to call aside.
Ask, *oro*,¹ *rogo*,¹ (two acc.); *peto*,³ *īvi, itum (ab)*, (79).
Asp, *aspis, idis*, F.
Assembly, *conventus, ūs*, M.
Asylum, *asylum, ī*, N.
At, locative (see § 258. c, d); = near, *ad*; = on account of, on occasion of, *ad* (acc.); at last, *dēnum*; at length, *tandem*.
Attack (v.), *aggredior*,³ *oppugno*.¹
Attack (n.), *impetus, ūs*, M.
Attempt (v.), *cōnor*.¹
Attempt (n.), *cōndtus, ūs*, M.
Attention, to give, *operam dare*.
Audacity, *audāciās, ātis*, F.
Authority, *auctōritās, ātis*, F.
Avarice, *avāritia, ae*, F.
Axle, *axis, is*, M.

B.

Back (n.), *tergum, ī*, N.
Back (adv.), *retro, re-* (in compos., as, *re-fero*).

Bad, *malus, a, um*; bad people, *improbi* (66).
Barbarian, *barbarus, a, um*.
Barbarous (in character), *im-mānis, e* (93).
Base (adj.), *turpis, e*.
Battle, *proelium, ī*, N. (22).
Be, *esse (sum, fui, futūrus)*.
Bear (v.), *fero, ferre, tuli, lātum*; (suffer), *patior*,³ *passus*.
Bear (n.), *ursus, ī*, M.; *ursa, ae*, F.
Beard, *barba, ae*, F.; bearded, *barbātus, ī*.
Beautiful, *pulcher (or cer), cra, crum* (91).
Beauty, *pulcritūdo, inis*, F.; *decor, ōris*, M.
Because, *quia, quod*.
Become, *fiō, fieri, factus*; it is becoming, *decet* (acc.).
Before, as prepos., *ante* (acc.); as conj., *ante . . . quam*.
Beg, *oro*,¹ *implōro*,¹ *peto*,³ (79).
Beginning, *initium, ī*, N.; in the — of summer, *prīmā aestate*.
Behalf (in behalf of), *pro* (abl.).
Behold, *specto*.¹ **Believe**, *crēdo*.³
Beseech, *implōro*,¹ (acc. of thing and abl. of person with *ab*); *oro*.
Betray, *prōdo*,³ *didī, ditum*.
Betrothed, *spōnsus, ī*, M.; *spōnsa, ae*, F.
Better, *melior, melius*.
Between, *inter* (acc.).
Bind, *necto*,³ *xui, ctum*; *vincio*,⁴ *nxi, nctum* (63).
Bitter, *acerbus, a, um*.
Bitterness, *acerbitās, ātis*, F.
Blame (v.), *culpo*,¹ *vitupero*,¹ *reprehendo*,³ *di, sum*.
Blame (n.), *culpa, ae*, F.
Blessing, *bonum, ī*, N.
Blood, *sanguis, inis*, M.; when shed, *cruor, ōris*, M.

Blooming, *flōrens, tis*.
Blossom, *flōs, flōris*, M.
Boar, *aper, aprī*, M.
Boast (v.), *glōrior*.¹
Boast (n.), *glōria, ae*, F.
Body, *corpus, oris*, N.
Bond, *vinculum, ī*, N.
Book, *liber, librī*, M.
Border, *fīnis, is*, M. (rarely F.).
Born, to be, *nascor*,³ *nātus*.
Both, *ambo, ae, o*; *utroque, utraque, utrumque* (gen. *utriusque*); — of whom, *quī utriusque*; both . . . and, *et . . . et*; on both sides, *utrimque*.
Bound (v.), *contineo*,² *uī, tentum*.
Bountiful, *beneficus, a, um*.
Bounty, *beneficium, ī*, N.
Bowl, *pōculum, ī*, N.
Boy, *puer, puerī*, M.
Bramble-thicket, *dūmētum, ī*, N.
Branching, *rāmōsus, a, um*.
Brave, *fortis, e*.
Bravely, *fortiter*.
Breadth, *lātītudo, inis*, F.
Break, *frango*,³ *frēgī, fractum*.
Breaking, *fractūra, ae*, F.
Brevity, *brevitās, atis*, F.
Brief, *brevis, e*.
Bright, *clārus, lūcidus, a, um*.
Brightness, *clāritās, atis*, F.
Bring, *adfero (affero)*; bring on (cause), *efficio*,³ *infero*.
Broad, *lātus, a, um*.
Broken, *fractus, a, um*; — piece, *fragmentum, ī*, N.
Brother, *frāter, tris*, M.
Bull, *taurus, ī*, M. [*levior, us*.]
Burdensome, *gravis, e*; less —,
Bury, *sepelio*,⁴ *ivī, sepultum*.
Business, *negōtium, ī*, N.
Busy, *occupātus, a, um*.
But, *sed*; *autem* (following one or more words).

By (agent after passives), *ā, ab* (abl.); by no means, *nullō modō, nēquāquam*; by day, *interdiū*; by night, *noctū*; of means, abl.

C.

Calus, *Gāius, ī*, M. (initial, C.).
Cake, *libum, ī*, N.
Calamity, *calamitās, atis*, F.
Call, *voco*,¹ *appello*.¹
Camp, *castra, ōrum*, N. plur.
Can, *possum, posse, potuī*; cannot, *non possum, nequea, ire, vī, itum* (87).
Cannae, at —, *Cannēnsis, e* (adj.).
Capital (chief town), *caput, itis*, N.
Capitol, *Capitōlium, ī*, N.
Care, *cūra, ae*, F. (38).
Carry, *porto*,¹ *fero* (irr.).
Carthage, *Carthāgo, inis*, F.
Cast down (v.), *dējicio*³ (*dēicio*), *jēcī, jectum*.
Cat, *fēlis, is*, M. or F.
Catch, *cipio*,³ *excipio*³ (25).
Cautious, *cautus, a, um*; *prūdēns*.
Cautiously, *cautē, ius, issimē*.
Cavalry, *equitātus, ūs*, M.
Censor, *cēnsor, ōris*, M.
Certain(a), *quīdam* (see A.).
Chain, *catēna, ae*, F.
Change (v.), *mūto*.¹
Change (n.), *versūra, ae*; *mūlatio, ōnis*, F.
Changeable, *mūtābilis, e*.
Charge (v.), *arguo*,³ *accūsō*¹ (acc. and gen.); = attack, *impetum facere in* (acc.).
Charge (n.), *crīmen, inis*, N. (32).
Charm (v.), *dēlecto*.¹
Cheerful, *hilaris, e*.
Chief (n.), *dux, ducis*, M. or F. (42).
Chief (adj.), *maximus, a, um*.

Chiefly, maximē.

Child, puer, erī, M.; children (of the family), *liberī, ōrum*; (in general), *puerī*.

Choose (prefer), mālō (irreg.); (select), dēligo,³ legī, lectum; (elect), *creo*.¹

Citadel, arx, arcis, F.

Citizen, cīvis, is, M. or F.

City (buildings, &c.), urbs, is, F.; (as organized state), *civitas, atis*

Glad, vestitus, a, um. [(98).]

Claw, unguis, is, M.

Clear (as the sky, weather, &c.), serēnus, a, um; (transparent), *lucidus, liquidus*.

Clothe, vestio.⁴

Clothing, vestitus, ūs, M.; *vestis, is, F.* (99).

Cold (n.), frīgus, oris, N.; *algor, ōris, M.*

Cold (adj.), frīgīdus, a, um.

Clusians, Clūsini, ōrum, M.

Come, venio,⁴ vēnī, ventum.

Comedy, comoedia, ae, F.

Coming, adventus, ūs, M.

Command (v.), jubeo,³ jussī, jussum (acc. and inf.); *impero¹ (dat. and ut with subj.)*.

Commander, imperātor, ōris, M.

Commend, commendo.¹

Commerce, mercātūra, ae, F.

Common, commūnis, e; common people, *plēbs, bis, F.*; common-wealth, *rēs publica*.

Companion, socius, ī, M; *comes, itis, C.* (29).

Compare, comparo.¹

Complain, queror,³ questus.

Complete, perfectus, a, um.

Completely, omnino, penitus.

Complexion, color, ōris, M.

Conceal, cēlo¹ (two acc.: 2).

Concerning, dē (abl.).

Condemn, damno.¹

Confess, fateor,² fassus.

Confide, fūdo³ (confīdo), fīsus (dat. or abl.).

Conflagration, incendium, ī, N.

Conquer, vinco,³ vīcī, victum.

Conquering (adj.), victor, ōris, M.; *victrix, icis, F.*

Conscious, cōnsciūs, a, um; to be —, *sibi cōscīre*.

Consent, cōsēnsio, ōnis, F.; *cōsēnsus (adsēnsus), ūs, M.*

Consider, exīstimo¹ (92).

Conspicuous, to be —, ēmineo,² uī.

Conspiracy, conjūrātio, ōnis, F.

Conspirator, conjūrātus, ī, M.

Conspire, conjūro.¹

Constant, perpetuus, a, um; as moral quality, *constāns, tis*.

Consul, cōsul, ulis, M.

Corinth, Corinthus, ī, F.; adj. *-ius*.

Corn, frūmentum, ī, N. (94).

Could, past tenses of possum.

Counsel, cōsiliū, ī, N. (31).

Countenance, vultus, ūs, M.

Country (native), patria, ae, F.; (opposed to city), *rūs, rūris, N.*; in the —, *rūrī*; from the —, *rūre*; to the —, *rūs* (acc.).

Courage, virtūs, ūtis; *fortitudo, inis, F.*

Court (pay respect to), colo.³

Cover, tego,³ texī, tectum; *operio,⁴ uī, opertum*.

Covered, opertus.

Covering (means of), tegmentum, ī, N.

Covetous, avārus, a, um (20).

Cow, vacca, ae, F.

Coward, ignāvus, a, um (adj.).

Cowardice, ignāvia, ae, F.

Crash, fragor, ōris, M. (97).

Creature, animal, ālis, N. (14).

Crocodile, crocodilus, ī, M.

Crops, *frūgēs*, *um*, F. plur. (94).
Cross (v.), *trānseo* (irreg.).
Cruel, *crūdēlis*, *e*; *sævus*, *a*, *um*,
Cure, *remedium*, *ī*, N. [(93).
Custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, M. (70).

D.

Daily, *quotidiē*; adj. *quotidiānus*,
a, *um*.
Danger, *periculum*, *ī*, N.
Darkness, *tenebrae*, *ārum*, F.
Dated, *datus*, *a*, *um* (of a letter ;
i. e. *given* to the messenger).
Daughter, *fīlia*, *ae*, F. (p. 4. *a*).
Day, *diēs*, *ēī*, M. (§ 73; see p. 18)
by day, *interdiū*; in one day,
ūnō diē; every day, *quotidiē*.
Deal (a great), *multum*, *plūrimum*.
Dear, *cārus*, *a*, *um*.
Death, *mors*, *tis*, F.; condemn to
—, *capitis damndre*.
Deceltful, *fallāx*, *ācis*.
Deceive, *fallo*,³ *fefellī*, *falsum* (45).
Decree (v.), *dēcerno*,³ *crēvī*, *crētum*.
Decree (n.), *dēcrētum*, *ī*, N.
Deed, *factum*, *ī*, N.; *facinus*, *oris*, N.
Deeds, *rēs gestae*, F.
Defence, *praesidium*, *ī*, N.; means
of —, *mūnimentum*, *ī*, N.
Defend, *dēfendo*,³ *dī*, *sum*; *tueor*.²
Defender, *dēfēnsor*, *ōris*, M.
Delay (v.), *moror*.¹
Delay (n.), *mora*, *ae*, F.
Delight (v.), trans. *dēlecto*¹; in-
trans. *gaudeo*,² *gāvisus*.
Delight (n.), *gaudium*, *ī*, N.
Dense, *dēnsus*, *a*, *um*.
Deny, *nego*,¹ *recūso*.¹
Depart, *dēcēdo*,³ *cēssī*, *cēssum*; (set
out), *proficiscor*,³ *fectus* (3).
Departure, *profectio*, *ōnis*, F.
Deprive, *prīvo*.¹
Desire (v.), *cupio*,³ *ēvī*, *ītum* (33).

Desire (n.), *cupīdo*, *inis*, F.
Desist, *dēsisto*,³ *stītī*, *slitum*.
Destiny, *fātum*, *ī*, N.
Destroy, *dēleo*,² *ēvī*, *ētum*; *perdo*,³
dīdī, *dītum*.
Devour, *voro*,¹ *dēvoro*.¹
Die, *morior*,³ *mortuus*.
Differ, *disto*¹ (no perf.), *differo*
(irr.) *ab*; — in opinion, *dissen-*
tio,⁴ *sī*, *sum*.
Difficult, *difficilis*, *e*.
Difficulty, *difficultās*, *ātis*, F.
Dignity, *dignitās*, *ātis*, F.
Diligent, *diligēns*, *tis*.
Disaster, *clādēs*, *is*, F. (24).
Discussion, *disputatio*, *ōnis*, F.
Disease, *morbis*, *ī*, M.
Dispute (v.), *disputo*.¹
Dispute (n.), *disputatio*, *ōnis*, F.
Distance, *spatium*, *intervallum*, *ī*,
N.; at a —, *procul*.
Distrust, *diffīdo*,³ *fīsus* (dat.).
Divine, *dēvīnus*, *a*, *um*; or expr.
by the gen. *dēōrum*.
Do, *facio*,³ *fecī*, *factum*; *ago*,³ *ēgī*,
actum; as auxiliary, in questions
or commands, not translated; to
be done, *fieri*; do not, *nōlī*, *nē*.
Doctor, *medicus*, *ī*, M.
Doe, *cerva*, *ae*, F.
Dog, *canis*, *is*, C. (gen. plur. *um*).
Doubt (v.), *dubito*.¹
Doubt (n.), *dubitatio*, *ōnis*, F.
Doubtful, *dubius*, *a*, *um*.
Doubtless, *sānē*.
Dove, *columba*, *ae*, F.
Dove-cote, *columbārium*, *ī*, N.
Dread, *reformīdo*¹ (69).
Dreadful, *terribilis*, *e*; *formīdo-*
lōsus, *a*, *um*.
Drive (in defeat), *fugo*.¹
Dropping, *gutta*, *ae*, F.
Duck, *anas*, *atis*, C.
Duty, *officium*, *ī*, N. (57).

E.

Each, *quisque, quaeque, quodque* ;
(of two), *uterque, traque, trumque*.
Eagle, *aquila, ae, F.*
Early, *priscus, a, um* (100).
Earth, *terra, ae, F.*
Easily, *facile, facilius, facillimē*.
Either, *uter, ultra, utrum* (gen. *ius*) ;
either . . . or, *aut . . . aut, vel*
. . . *vel* ; not —, *nec, neque*.
Elder, *major nātū*.
Elect, *creo*.¹
Eloquence, *eloquentia, ae, F.*
Eloquent, *eloquēns, tis* (72).
Empire, *imperium, ī, N.*
End, *fīnis, is, M.* (rarely *F.*).
Endure, *tolero*.¹
Enemy (public), *hostis, is, M.* ;
(personal), *inimicus, ī, M.* (54).
Enjoy, *fruo*,³ *fructus* (abl.).
Enter, *intro*.¹
Entirely, *omnino, plānē*.
Envy (v.), *invideo*,² *dī, sum* (dat.).
Envy (n.), *invidia, ae, F.*
Equal, *par, paris* ; (well-balanced)
aequus, a, um (6).
Escape (v.), *effugio*,³ *fūgī, fugi-*
tum.
Escape (n.), *fuga, ae, F.* ; *effugium*,
ī, N.
Even, *et, etiam, vel* ; not —, *ne . . .*
quidem.
Even (adj.), *aequus, a, um* (6)
Ever, *unquam (umquam)*.
Every, *omnis, e* ; — thing, *omnia*.
Evil, *malus, a, um* (66) ; as noun,
malum, ī, N.
Excel, *praesto*,¹ *stītī, stitum* ; *ante-*
*cello*³ (dat.).
Excellent, *excellēns, tis* ; *prae-*
stāns, tis.
Exhort, *horior*.¹
Exile, *exsilium, ī, N.*

Extraordinary, *singulāris, e* ; *ex-*
imius (egregius), a, um.

Extreme, *summus, a, um*.

Eye, *oculus, ī, M.* ; dim. *ocellus*.

F.

Face, *vultus, ūs, M.*

Fair, *serēnus, a, um* ; *albus*.

Faith, *fīdēs, eī, F.*

Faithful, *fīdus, a, um* ; *fīdēlis, e*.

Fall, *cado*,³ *cecidī, cāsum* ; *ruo*.³

Fame, *fāma, ae* ; *glōria, ae, F.* (46)

Famous, *ēgregius, a, um* ; *nōbilis, e*.

Far, *longē*.

Farmer, *agricola, ae, M.*

Fasting, *inedia, ae, F.*

Father, *pater, tris, M.*

Fatherland, *patria, ae, F.*

Fault, *vīlium, ī, N.* ; *culpa, ae, F.*

Favor (v.), *faveo*,² *fāvī, fautum*
(dat.).

Favor (n.), *grātia, ae, F.*

Favorable, *secundus, a, um*.

Fear (v.), *timeo*,² *uī* ; *metuo*,³ *uī* ;
vercor,² *itus* (69).

Fear (n.), *timor, ōris, M.*

Fertile, *fertilis, e*.

Fever, *febris, is* (im, *ī*), *F.*

Few, *paucī, ae, a*.

Fidelity, *fīdēlītās, ātis* ; *fīdēs, eī, F.*

Field, *ager, agrī, M.* (8).

Fierce, *ferōx, ōcis* (93).

Fight, *pugno*¹ (90), *cōnfligo*.

Fill, *compleo (impleo)*,² *ēvī, ētum*.

Finger, *digitus, ī, M.*

Fire, *ignis, is, M.* ; set on —, *in-*
cendo,³ *dī, sum*.

Fish, *piscis, is, M.*

Fit, *idōneus, a, um* (30).

Flattery, *adsentātio, ōnis, F.*

Flock, *pecus, oris, N.* (51).

Flow, *fluo*,³ *fluxī, fluxum*.

Flower, *flos, flōris, M.* ; made of
flowers, *flōreus, a, um*.

Fly (flee), *fugio*,³ *fūgī*, *fugitum*.
Follow, *sequor*,³ *secūtus* (95).
Folly, *stultitia*, *ae*, F.
Food, *cibus*, *ī*, M. (36).
Fool, *stultus*, *ī*, M. (adj. as noun).
Foolish, *stultus*, *a*, *um*.
Foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, M.
Footstep, *vestigium*, *ī*, N.
For (conj.), *nam*, *enim*; (prep.), *prō* (abl.); often expressed by dative.
Forbid, *veto*,¹ *uī*, *itum* (acc. and inf.); *prohibeo*,² *uī*, *itum* (with *nē* and subj.).
Force, *vīs*, *vim*, *vī*; pl., *vīrēs*, F. (p. 14).
Forces (troops), *cōpiæ*, *ārum*, F.
Foreign, *externus* (*aliēnus*), *a*, *um*.
Foreigner, *peregrīnus*, *ī*, M.
Forest, *silva*, *ae*, F. (96).
Forget, *oblīviscor*,³ *oblītus*.
Forgetful, *oblītus*, *a*, *um*.
Fortify, *mūnio*.⁴
Fortunate, *fēlīx*, *īcis*; *fortūnātus*, *a*, *um* (47).
Fortune, *fortūna*, *ae*, F.
Fountain, *fōns*, *fontis*, M.
Fox, *vulpēs*, *is*, F.
Frail, *fragilis*, *e*.
Free, *liber*, *era*, *erum* (62).
Frequent, *frequēns*, *tis*.
Fresh, *recēns*, *tis*.
Friend, *amicus*, *ī*, M.
Friendly, *amicus*, *a*, *um*.
Friendship, *amicitia*, *ae*, F.
Frighten, *terreo*,² *uī*, *itum*.
Frightened, *territus*, *a*, *um*.
Frog, *rāna*, *ae*, F.
From, away from, *ā*, *ab* (abl.); out of, *ē*, *ex*; as denoting cause, express by ablative (1).
Fruit, *fructus*, *ūs*, M.
Full, *plēnus*, *a*, *um* (gen. or abl.).

Furnish, *præbeo*,² *uī*, *itum*; *ministro*.¹

Future, *futūrus*, *a*, *um*.

G.

Garb, *habitus*, *ī*, M.
Garden, *hortus*, *ī*, M.
Gate, *porta*, *ae*, F. (86).
Gathering, *conventus*, *ūs*, M.
Gaul, the country, *Gallia*, *ae*, F.; the people, *Gallus*, *ī*, M.
General, *imperātor*, *ōris*, M.
Get together, *comparo*.¹
Giant, *gigās*, *antis*, M.
Gift, *dōnum*, *ī*; *beneficium*, *ī*, N.
Give, *do*,¹ *dedī*, *datum* (37).
Glad, *laetus*, *a*, *um*; I am — to hear, *libenter audio*; to be, *gaudeo*.
Gladly, *libenter*.
Glorious, *clārus* (*præclārus*), *a*, *um*.
Glory, *glōria*, *ae*, F. (46).
Go, *eo*, *īre*, *ivī* (*ivī*), *itum* (§ 141); — away, *abeo*, *discēdo*³; — out or forth, *exeo*, *proficiscor*,³ *fectus* (3).
God, *deus*, *ī*, M. (p. 5. e).
Goddess, *dea*, *ae*, F. (p. 4. a).
Gold, *aurum*, *ī*, N.
Good, *bonus*, *a*, *um* (p. 6).
Goose, *ānser*, *eris*, M.
Grace, *grātia*, *ae*, F.
Grasp, *prehendo* (*comprehendo*),³ *dīsum*; grasp at, *adripio*.³
Great, *magnus*, *māior*, *maximus*.
Greatness, *magnitūdo*, *inis*, F.
Greece, *Graecia*, *ae*, F.
Greedy, *avidus*, *a*, *um*.
Greek (Grecian), *Graecus*, *a*, *um*.
Grief, *dolor*, *ōris*; *lūctus*, *ūs*, M. (38).
Grieve, *doleo*,² *uī*; *lūgeo*,² *xī*, *ctum*.
Guard, *custōs*, *ōdis*, C.
Gulf, *gurgēs*, *itis*, M.; *sinus*, *ūs*, M.

H.

Hand, *manus*, *ūs*, F. (p. 18).
Happily, *beatē*.
Happy, *beatūs*, *a*, *um* (47).
Harbor, *portus*, *ūs*, M.
Hard, *dūrus*, *a*, *um*.
Hardship, *labor*, *ōris*, M. (58).
Hasten, *festīno*,¹ (*propere*).¹
Hate (v.), *odī*, *ōsus* (§ 143. b)
Hate (n.), *odium*, *ī*, N. (76).
Have, *habeo*; ² I —, *est mihi*.
He, *is*, *ille*; but generally implied in 3d person (52).
Head, *caput*, *itis*, N.
Health, *salūs*, *ūtis*, F.; state of, *valētudo*, *inis*, F.
Healthful, *salūber*, *bris*, *bre*.
Heart, *cōr*, *cordis*, N.; *animus*, *ī*.
Heaven, *caelum*, *ī*, N.; plur., *caeli*.
Hear, *audio*.⁴
Heavy, *gravis*, *e*.
Height, *altitudo*, *inis*, F.
Helm, *gubernāculum*, *ī*, N.
Help (v.), *prōsum*, *prōdesse*, *prōfui*; *subvenio*,⁴ *vēnī*, *ventum* (dat.).
Help (n.), *auxilium*, *ī*, N.
Hence, *hinc*.
Her (obj.), *eam*; (poss.), *ejus*; her own (emph.), *ipsius*; (refl.), *suus*, *a*, *um*.
Herdsmān, *bulculus*, *ī*, M.
Here, *hīc*.
Hidden, *occultus*, *a*, *um*.
Hide, *cēlo*¹ (2 acc.); *occulo*,³ *uī*, *occultum*.
High, *altus*, *a*, *um* (10).
Highest, *summus*, *a*, *um*.
Himself (emph.), *ipse*; (refl.), *sē*.
His, *ejus* (gen. of *is*); his own (emph.), *ipsius*; (refl.), *suus*, *a*, *um*: omitted when it is implied from the context.

Hold, *teneo* (*obtineo*),² *uī*, *tentum*; *habeo*,² *uī*, *itum*; (regard), *dūco*.³
Holding, power of, *capācitās*, *ātis*, F.
Home, *domus*, *ūs*, F. (p. 18); at —, *domī*; towards —, *domum*; from —, *domō*.
Honey, *mel*, *mellis*, N.
Honest, *probus*, *a*, *um* (23).
Honesty, *probītās*, *ātis*, F.
Honor (v.: do honor to), *honōro*.¹
Honor (n.), *honor*, *ōris*, M. (46).
Honorably, *honestē*.
Hope (v.), *spēro*¹ (acc.).
Hope (n.), *spēs*, *spēī*, F.
Horn, *cornū*, *ūs*, N.; with horns (horned), *cornūtus*, *a*, *um*.
Horse, *equus*, *ī*, M.
Horseman, *eques*, *itis*, M.
Hostile, *infēnsus*, *inimicus*, *a*, *um*.
Hotly, *acriter*.
House, *domus*, *ūs*, F. (p. 18: 39).
How? *quōmodo*; however, *quāvis* (= yet, *tamen*); how great, *quantus*, *a*, *um*; how many, *quot*.
Human, *hūmānus*, *a*, *um*.
Humble, *dēmissus*, *a*, *um*.
Hunger, *famēs*, *is*, F.
Hunter, *vēnātor*, *ōris*, M.
Hurl, *torqueo*,² *sī*, *tum*; *jacio* (*con-jicio*)³, *jēcī*, *jactum* (*jectum*).

I.

I, *ego*, *meī*, *mihi*, *mē*.
Ibis, *ibis*, *is* (*idis*), F.
Ice, *glaciēs*, *ēī*, F.
Ides, *idūs*, *uum*, F. **If**, *sī* (p. 103)
Idle, *ignāvus*, *a*, *um*; *iners*, *tis*.
Ignorance, *ignōrantia*, *ae*, F.
Ignorant, *ignārus*, *a*, *um*.
Immortal, *immortālis*, *e*.
Impatient, *impatiens*, *tis*.
Impiety, *impietās*, *ātis*, F.

Implore, *implōro*¹ (79).
Impudence, *impudentia*, *ae*, *F*.
In, *in* (abl.); often by abl. alone.
Inconstant, *levis*, *e*.
Indulgence, *indulgentia*, *ae*, *F*.
Inferior, *inferior*, *us* (with abl.).
Inform, *certiorem facere* (*dē*).
Innocence, *innocentia*, *ae*, *F*.
Insolence, *insolentia*, *ae*, *F*.
Intending to, express by future participle.
Interest, it is one's, *interest* (gen.); it is my —, *meā interest*.
Into, *in* (acc.).
It, *id*, *illud*; it is, *est*; itself (for itself), *sibi*.
Italy, *Italia*, *ae*, *F*.

J.

Javelin, *pīlum*, *ī*, *N*. (16).
Jealous, *invidus*, *a*, *um*.
Jeweller, *gemmārius*, *ī*, *M*.
Joining, *junctura*, *ae*, *F*.
Journey, *iter*, *itineris*, *N*. (56).
Jove, *Juppiter*, *Jovis*, *M*.
Joy, *gaudium*, *ī*, *N*.
Judge (v.), *jūdicō*,¹ *aestimo*.¹
Judge (n.), *jūdex*, *icis*, *M*.
June (of), *Jūnius*, *a*, *um*.
Justice, *jūstitia*, *ae*, *F*.
Just, *jūstus*, *aequus*, *a*, *um*.

K.

Keep, *servo*,¹ *teneo*,² *uī*.
Kindness, *beneficium*, *ī*, *N*. (40).
King, *rex*, *rēgis*, *M*.
Kingdom, *regnum*, *ī*, *N*.
Know (know how), *scio*.⁴
Knowledge, *scientia*, *ae*, *F*.

L.

Labor, *labor*, *ōris*, *M*. (58).
Lack, *ego* (*indigeo*),² *uī* (gen. or abl.); *careo*,² *uī* (abl.: 26).
Ladder, *scala*, *ae*, *F*.
Lake, *lacus*, *ūs*, *M*. [*bus*]
Lame, *claudus*, *a*, *um*; *aeger pedis*.
Lamentable, *stēbilis*, *e*.
Land, *terra*; native —, *patria*, *ae*, *F*; by — and sea, *terrā marique*.
Language, *lingua*, *ae*, *F*.
Large, *magnus*, *a*, *um* (65).
Last, *ultimus*, *a*, *um*; at —, *dēnum*.
Lasting, *diūturnus*, *a*, *um*.
Lately, *nūper*, *paulō ante*.
Latin, *Latinus*, *a*, *um*.
Laugh (v.), *rideo*,² *risi*, *risum*.
Laugh (n.), *risus*, *ūs*, *M*.
Law, *lex*, *lēgis*, *F*. (57).
Lawful, *fās* (indecl.), *lēgitimus*, *a*, *um*.
Lay aside, *dēpono*,³ *posui*, *situm*.
Lazy, *piger*, *gra*, *grum*; *iners*, *tis*.
Lead, *dūco*,³ *xī*, *ctum*.
Leader, *dux*, *ducis*, *C*.
Leaf, *folium*, *ī*, *N*.
League, *foedus*, *eris*, *N*.
Learn, *disco*; ³ *learned*, *doctus*.
Leave, *relinquo*,³ *liqui*, *lictum*.
Left hand, *sinistra*, *ae*, *F*; (adj.), *laevus*; on the —, *ad laevum*.
Leg, *crūs*, *crūris*, *N*.
Legion, *legio*, *ōnis*, *F*. (61).
Length, *longitudo*, *inīs*, *F*; at —, *tandem*.
Less, *minor*, *minus*.
Lest, *nē* (followed by subjunctive).
Letter, *epistola*, *ae*, *F*; letters (literature), *litterae*, *arum*, *F*.
Liar, *mendāx*, *dcis*.
Liberator, *liberātor*, *ōris*, *M*.
Liberty, *libertās*, *ātis*, *F*.

Lie (speak falsely), *mentior*.⁴

Lieutenant, *lēgātus*, ī, M.

Life, *vīta*, ae, F. [inis, N.

Light (n.), *lux*, *lūcis*, F.; *lūmen*,

Light (adj.), *levis*, e.

Like, *similis*, e (gen. or dat.);
very —, *consimilis* (6).

Line-of-battle, *aciēs*, ē, F. (5).

Link, *hamus*, ī, M.

Lion, *leo*, *ōnis*, M.

Live, *vīvo*,³ *vixī*, *victum*; *habito*.¹

Log, *tignum* (*tigillum*), ī, N.

Load, *onus*, *oneris*, N.

Long, *longus*, a, um; (time), *diū*;
so —, *tamdiū*.

Longer, *diūtius*; no —, *nōn jam*.

Look, *videor*,² *visus*.

Love (v.), *amo*.¹

Love (n.), *amor*, *ōris*, M.

M.

Magistrate, *magistrātus*, ūs, M.

Maiden, *puella*, ae; *virgo*, inis, F.

Maintain (keep), *teneo*,² *uī*, *tentum*; (hold an opinion), *disputo*.¹

Make, *facio*,³ *fēci*, *factum*; passive,
fīo, *fieri*, *factus*.

Man, *vir*, *virī*, M. (53); a person
in general, *homo*, inis; a little —,
homunculus, ī, M.; meaning persons
of a certain quality or descent,
expressed by adjectives.

Manly, *virilis*, e; *fortis*, e (23).

Mantle, *amictus*, ūs, M.; *pallium*,
ī, N. (99). [rimī.

Many, *multī*, ae, a; very —, *plū-*

March, *iter*, *itineris*, N. (56).

March (of), *Martius*, a, um.

Marsh, *palūs*, ūdis, F.

Master (teacher), *magister*, trī;
(of property), *dominus*, ī, M.

May (it is permitted), *licet*, § 146. d;
in purpose clauses, *ut* with subj.;
of wish, pres. subj.

Meadow, *prātum*, ī, N. (8).

Mean, *vilis*, e; *objectus*, a, um.

Means: by no —, *nullō modō*, *nē-*
quāquam.

Measure (v.), *metior*,⁴ *mēnsus*.

Measure (n.), *modus*, ī, M.; a
little —, *modulus*, ī, M.

Meat, *cāro*, *cārnis*, F.

Meeting, *conventus*, ūs, M.

Merciful, *clēmēns*, tis.

Mercifully, *clēmēnter*. [tis (65).

Mighty, *magnus*, a, um; *ingēns*,

Mild: to grow —, *mīlesco*.³

Mile, *mille passuum*.

Milk, *lāc*, *lactis*, N.

Mind, *animus*, ī, M. (13).

Mindful, *memor*, oris.

Mingling, *mixtura*, ae, F.

Misery, *miseria*, ae, F. (38).

Mob, *turba*, ae, F.; *tumultus*, ūs, M

Money, *pecūnia*, ae, F.

Monkey, *simia*, ae, F.

Monstrous, *immānis*, e (93).

Monument, *monumentum*, ī, N.

Moon, *lūna*, ae, F.

More, *plūs*, *plūris* (§ 86. c); adv.,
magis; also, sign of comparative.

Mortal, *mortālis*, e.

Most (men), *plērīque*; adv., *plūri-*
 mum, *maximē*; sign of superl.

Mother, *māter*, tris, F.

Mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, M.

Mourn, *lūgeo*,² *lūxī*, *lūctum*.

Mournful, *tristis*, e.

Mouth, *ōs*, *ōris*, N.

Move, *moveo*,² *mōvī*, *mōtum*; in-
trans., use passive.

Much, *multum*; by —, *multō*.

Must, generally by part. in *dus*.

My, *meus*, a, um; voc. M., *mī*.

Myrtle (of), *myrteus*, a, um.

N.

Narrow, *angustus*, *a*, *um*.
Name, *nōmen*, *inis*, N. (74).
Nation, *gēns*, *tis*; *nātio*, *ōnis*, F.
Native land, {
Native city, { *patria*, *ae*, F.
Near, *prope* (acc.); nearly, *ferē*.
Necessary, *opus* (§ 243. *e*); necessities, *res necessariae*.
Neck, *collum*, *ī*, N. [a, *um*.]
Neighbor, *proximus*, *fīnitimus*,
Neither (of two), *neuter*, *tra*, *trum* (gen. *triūs*); neither . . . nor, *nec* . . . *nec*.
Never, *nunquam*.
New, *novus*, *a*, *um*.
News, *nuntius*, *ī*, M.; *fāma*, *ae*, F.
Night, *nox*, *noctis*, F.; by —, *noctū*.
Nightly, *nocturnus*, *a*, *um*.
No (adj.), *nullus*, *a*, *um* (gen. *īus*); no man, no one, *nēmo*, *inis*, C. (for gen. and abl., *nullius*, *nullō*).
Noise, *streptus*, *ūs*, M. (97).
Nor, *neque*, *nec* (see **neither**).
North wind, *Aquilo*, *ōnis*, M.
Nose, *nāsus*, *ī*, M.; epith., *nāso*.
Not, *nōn*; interrog. *nōnne*; not even, *nē* . . . *quidem*; imperat., *nē*.
Nothing, *nihil*, *nihilum*, *ī*, N.
Notice, *animadverto*,³ *tī*, *sum*.
Now, *nunc*; = already, *jam*.
Number, *numerus*, *ī*, M.
Nymph, *nympha*, *ae*, F.

O.

Obedience, *obēdientia*, *ae*, F.
Obey, *pareo*,² *uī*, *itum* (dat.).
Obscure, *obscurus*, *a*, *um*.
Ocean, *ōceanus*, *ī*, M.
Of, expressed by genitive; of separation, by ablative; = concerning, *dē* (abl.).

Offence, *injūria*, *ae*, F.
Often, *saepe*; very —, *saeptissimē*.
Old, *vetus*, *eris*, (100); — man, *senex*, *is*, M.; — age, *senectūs*, *ūtis*, F.; older, *major natū*.
Older, *senior*.
Omen, *ōmen*, *inis*, N.
On, *in* (abl.); of time or instrument, expressed by ablative.
Once, *semel*; (formerly), *quondam*.
One, *ūnus*, *a*, *um* (gen. *īus*); any one, *quis*, *aliquis*; one . . . another, *alius* . . . *alius*; one . . . the other, *alter* . . . *alter*; no one, *nēmo*.
Open (v.), *aperio*,⁴ *uī*, *apertum*.
Open (adj.), *apertus*; be —, *patco*.²
Opinion, *sententia*, *ae*, F. (31).
Opportunity, *occāsio*, *ōnis*, F.
Or, *aut*, *vel*; either . . . or, *aut* (*vel*) . . . *aut* (*vel*); whether . . . or, *utrum* . . . *an*.
Oration, *oratio*, *ōnis*, F.
Orator, *orator*, *ōris*, M.
Order, *jubeo*,² *jussī*, *jussum*.
Other, *alius*, *a*, *ud*; — of two, *alter*; of others, *aliēnus*, *a*, *um*.
Ought, *dēbeo*,² *uī*, *itum*.
Our, *nōster*, *tra*, *trum*.
Ourselves (emph.), *ipsī* (with verb in 1st pers. plur.); refl., *nōs*.
Owe, *dēbeo*,² *uī*, *itum*.
Own, *proprius*, *a*, *um*; *suus* or gen. of *ipse* (89).
Ox, *bōs*, *bovis* (d. plur. *bōbus*).

P.

Pain, *dolor*, *ōris*, M. (38).
Pardon, *ignosco*,³ *nōvī*, *nōtum* (dat.).
Parent, *parēns*, *tis*, M. or F.
Partner, *socius*, *ī*, M. (29).
Patience, *patientia*, *ae*, F.
Pattern, *forma*, *ae*, F.; a little —, *formula*, *ae*, F.

Peace, *pax, pācis*, F.
 People, *populus*, *ī*, M.; common —, *plēbs, plēbis*, F. (85).
 Perform, *fungor*,³ *functus* (abl.).
 Peril, *periculum*, *ī*, N.
 Perish, *pereo*, *ire, īvī (iī)*, *itum*.
 Persuade, *persuādeo*,² *sī, sum* (dat. and *ut* with subj.).
 Pestilence, *pestis*, *is*, F.
 Phalanx, *phalanx, angis*, F. (61).
 Philosopher, *philosophus*, *ī*, M.
 Philosophy, *philosophia*, *ae*, F.
 Physician, *medicus*, *ī*, M.
 Pity, *misereor*,² *misertus* (gen.).
 Place, *locus*, *ī*, M.; pl., *loci*, N.
 Plain (n.), *campus*, *ī*, M. (8).
 Plain (adj.), *plānus, aequus, a, um*.
 Plan, *cōsiliū*, *ī*, N. (31).
 Plaything, *lūdibrium*, *ī*, N.
 Please, *placeo*,² *uī, itum* (dat.).
 Pleasing, *grātus, a, um*.
 Plough, *aro*.¹
 Point (spot, place), *locus*, *ī*, M.
 Politics, *rēs publica*.
 Pompey, *Pompēius*, *ī*, M.
 Poor, *pauper, eris*.
 Possession, take — of, *occupo*.¹
 Poverty, *paupertās, ātis*, F.
 Power, *potestās, ātis*, F.; *potentia, ae*, F. (88).
 Powerful, *potēns, tis*.
 Powers, *virēs, virium*, F.
 Praise (v.), *laudo*.¹
 Praise (n.), *laus, laudis*, F. (46).
 Prayer, *precis, em, e* (no nom.), F.
 Precept, *praeceptum*, *ī*, M.
 Prepare, *paro*.¹
 Prepared, *parātus, a, um*.
 Presently, *mox*.
 Prevent, *impedio*⁴ (with *quōminus* or *quā*).
 Priam, son of, *Priamidēs, ae*.
 Priest, *sacerdōs, ōtis*, C.
 Prisoner, *captīvus, ī*, M.

Proconsul, *prōcōsul, is*, M.
 Promise, *prōmitto*,³ *misī, missum*; *pollicor*,² *cius* (84). [*eī*, F.
 Protection, *praesidium*, *ī*, N.; *fidēs*.
 Proud, *superbus, a, um*.
 Prove, *probo*.¹
 Province, *prōvincia, ae*, F.
 Providence, *prōvidentia, ae*, F.
 Punish, *pūnio*,⁴ *castigo*; ¹ *supplicium sumere de* (abl.).
 Puppy, *catulus*; dim., *catellus, ī*, M.
 Put on, *induo*,³ *uī, ūtum* (on one's self, pass. with abl.); — to flight, *fugo*.¹

Q.

Quarrel, *rixa, ae*, F.
 Queen, *rēgina, ae*, F.
 Quite, *prorsus, omnino*.

R.

Race, *gēns, gentis*, F. (50).
 Rampart, *vallum, ī*, N.
 Rarely, *rārō*.
 Ravage, *vasto*.¹
 Reach, *pervenio*,⁴ *vēnī, ventum* (ad).
 Read, *lego*,³ *lēgī, lectum*.
 Ready, *parātus, a, um*.
 Recall, *revoco*.¹
 Receive, *accipio*,³ *cēpī, ceptum* (25).
 Reckon, *puto*,¹ *exīstimo*¹ (92).
 Reckoning, *ratio, ōnis*, F.
 Refuse, *recūso*,¹ *nego*.¹
 Regard, *existimo*,¹ *dūco*³ (92).
 Region, *locus, ī*, M.; pl., *loci*, N.
 Reign, *regno*.¹
 Remain, *maneo*,¹ *mānsī, mānsum*.
 Remarkable, *īnsignis, e*; *eximius*.
 Remedy, *remedium, ī*, N.
 Remember, *memini* (§ 38, 1); imperat., *memento*.
 Remote, *remōtus, longinquus, a, um*.

Remove, *migro*;¹ *discēdo*,³ *cēssī*,
cēssum; *abeo* (irr.).
 Reply, *respondeo*,² *dī*, *sum*.
 Report, *renuntio*.¹
 Republic, *rēs publica*.
 Restrain, *cohibeo*,² *uī*, *itum*.
 Return, *revertor*,³ *sus*.
 Reverence, *reverentia*, *ae*, *F*.
 Reward, *praemium*, *ī*, *N*. (40).
 Rhine, *Rhēnus*, *ī*, *M*.
 Rhodes, *Rhodus*, *ī*, *F*.
 Rhone, *Rhodanus*, *ī*, *M*.
 Rich, *dīves*, *dīvitis* (p. 16); superl.
 more commonly *dītissimus*.
 Riches, *dīvitiæ*, *arum*, *F*. (78).
 Right, *jūs*, *jūris*, *N*. (57); — hand,
dextra (*tera*), *ae*, *F*.
 Ripe, *mātūrus*, *a*, *um*.
 River, *flūmen*, *inis*, *N*. (49).
 Road, *via*, *ae*, *F*. (56).
 Robber, *latro*, *ōnis*, *M*.
 Robe, *vestis*, *is*, *F*. (99).
 Royal, *rēgius*, *a*, *um*.
 Rumor, *fāma*, *ae*, *F*. (46).
 Run, *curro*,³ *cucurri*, *cursum*.

S.

Sacred, *sacer*, *cra*, *crum*.
 Sad, *tristis*, *e*.
 Safe, *tūtus*, *a*, *um*.
 Safety, *salūs*, *ūtis*, *F*.
 Sagacious, *sagāx*, *acis*.
 Sage, *sapiēns*, *tis*.
 Sail (v.), *nāvigo*.¹
 Sake (for the sake of), *causā*.
 Salute, *salūto*.¹
 Same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*.
 Samnite, *Samnīs*, *ūtis*.
 Sapling, *surculus*, *ī*, *M*.
 Save, *servo*.¹
 Say, *dīco*,³ *dīo*, *inquam* (64).
 Scarcely, *vix*.
 Scream, *clāmo*.¹

Sea, *mare*, *maris*, *N*. (67).
 See, *video*,² *vidī*, *vīsum*.
 Seek, *quaero*,³ *sīvī*, *sītum* (79).
 Seem, *videor*,² *vīsus*.
 Seize, *prehendo*,³ *dī*, *sum*.
 Self, emph., *ipse*; refl., *sē*, *suī*.
 Sell, *vendo*,³ *didī*, *dītum*.
 Senate, *senātus*, *ūs*, *M*.
 Send, *mitto*,³ *misī*, *missum*.
 Serious, *gravis*, *e*; *sevērus*, *a*, *um*.
 Seriousness, *gravitās*, *ātis*; *sevē-*
ritās, *ātis*, *F*.
 Servant, *servus*, *villicus*, *ī*, *M*.
 Serve, *servio*⁴ (dat.).
 Set out, *profiscor*,³ *profectus*.
 Severe, *sevērus*, *a*, *um*; *tristis*, *e*.
 Severely, *acriter*, *graviter*.
 Severity, *sevēritās*, *ātis*, *F*.
 Shade, shadow, *umbra*, *ae*, *F*.
 Shall, sign of fut. or imperat.
 Sharer, *particeps*, *cipis*.
 Sharp, *acūtus*, *a*, *um*.
 Sheep, *ovis*, *is*, *F*.
 Shepherd, *pastor*, *ōris*, *M*. [(28).
 Shield, *scūtum*. *ī*, *N*.; *clipeus*, *ī*, *M*.
 Shining, *fulgēns*, *tis*; *nitidus*, *a*,
um.
 Ship, *nāvis*, *is*, *F*. (73); belonging
 to —, *nāvālis*, *e*.
 Short, *brevis*, *e*.
 Should, sign of mood or tense.
 Shoulder, *humerus*, *ī*, *M*.
 Sicilian, *Siculus*, *a*, *um*.
 Sicily, *Sicilia*, *ae*, *F*.
 Sick, *aegrōtus*, *a*, *um*.
 Sickly, *morbidus*, *a*, *um*.
 Sickness, *morbis*, *ī*, *M*.
 Sides: on both —, *utrimque*; on
 all —, *undique*.
 Sign, *signum*, *ī*, *N*.
 Silence, *silentium*, *ī*, *N*.
 Silly, *stultus*, *a*, *um*.
 Silver, *argentum*, *ī*, *N*.
 Simple, *simplex*, *icis*.

Since, *cum* (with subj.); *quoniam*.
 Sinew, *nervus*, ī, M.
 Sinewy, *nervōsus*, a, um.
 Sing, *cano*,³ *cecinī*, *cantum*.
 Sister, *soror*, *ōris*, F.
 Sit, *sedeo*,³ *sēdī*, *sessum*.
 Size, *magnitudo*, *inis*, F.
 Skillfully, *scienter*, *prūdentē*.
 Skin, *pellis*, *is*, F. (34).
 Sky, *caelum*, ī, N.
 Slaughter, *clādēs*, *is*, F.
 Slave, *servus*, ī, M.
 Slay, *interficiō*,³ *fēcī*, *fectum*.
 Sleep, *somnus*, ī, N.
 Slender, *tenuis*, e.
 Sluggard, *ignāvus*, ī, M. (adj.).
 Small, *parvus*, a, um (minor, mini-
 Snow, *nix*, *nivis*, F. [nus]).
 Snowy, *nivōsus*, a, um.
 So, *ita*, *sic*; so great, *tantus*; so
 many, *tot*; so . . . as, *tam* . . .
quam; so long, *tamdiū*.
 Society, *societās*, *ātis*, F.
 Soft, *mollis*, e.
 Softness, *mollitia*, ae, F.
 Soldier, *miles*, *itis*, M.; belonging
 to —, *militāris*, e.
 Soldiership, *rēs militāris*.
 Some time, *aliquando*; (duration),
aliquamdiū.
 Son, *filius*, ī, M.; voc., *fili*.
 Song, *cantus*, *ūs*, M.; (the words),
carmen, *inis*, N. (27).
 Soon, *mox*; as — as, *simul atque*.
 Sorrow, *dolor*, *ōris*; *luctus*, *ūs*, M.
 Sorrowing, *maestus*, a, um. [(38).
 Sorry: to be —, *doleo*,² *uī*; I am
 —, *me paenitet*; *aegrē fero* (with
quod or acc. and infin.).
 Sound, in general, *sonus*, ī, M.; —
 of voice, *vox*, *vōcis*, F.; — of
 arms, &c., *sonitus*, *ūs*, M. (97).
 Sour, *acerbus*, a, um.
 South-east wind, *Eurus*, ī, M.

Spain, *Hispania*, ae, F. [(81).
 Spare, *parco*,³ *pepercī*, *parcitum*.
 Speak, *loquor*,³ *locūtus* (ad or *cum*).
 Spear, *hasta*, ae, F. (16).
 Speech, *contio* (*ōrātio*), *ōnis*, F.;
sermo, *ōnis*, M.
 Speed, *celeritās*, *ātis*, F.
 Spirited, *fortis*, e.
 Spoil, *praeda*, ae, F.
 Spring (v.), *salio*,⁴ *uī*, *saltum*.
 Spring (n.), *vēr*, *vēris*, N.
 Sprung, *ortus* (part. of *orior*).
 Spur, *calcar*, *āris*, N.
 Stag, *cervus*, ī, M.
 Stand, *sto*,¹ *stetī*, *statum*.
 Standard, *signum*, ī, N.
 Star, *stella*, ae, F.
 State, *civitās*, *ātis*, F.
 Stature, *statūra*, ae, F.
 Stir up, *cicio*,² *civī*, *citum*.
 Stock, *stirps*, *stirpis*, F.
 Stoic, *Stoicus*, ī, M.
 Stone, *lapis*, *idis*, M. (59).
 Storm, *hiems*, *is*, F.; *tempestas*, *ātis*.
 Stout (thick-set), *crassus*, a, um.
 Stream, *flūmen*, *inis*, N. (49).
 Strength, *vīrēs*, *ium*, F., plur.
 Strive (to do a thing), *nitor*
 (*ēnitor*), *nīsus*; (contend), *certo*,¹
contendo,³ *dī*, *tum*.
 Strong, *validus*, a, um.
 Sudden, *subitus*, a, um.
 Suffer, *patior*,³ *passus*.
 Sullen, *mōrōsus*, a, um.
 Summer, *aestās*, *ātis*, F.; adj., *aes-
 tivus*, a, um.
 Sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, M.
 Sunset, *solis occāsus*, *ūs*.
 Superior, *praestāntior*, *us*. [um.
 Superstitious, *superstitiōsus*, a,
 Support (means), *colūmen*, *inis*, N.
 Suppose, *puto*¹ (or subj., p. 100).
 Sure, *certus*, a, um.
 Surname, *cognōmen*, *inis*, N. (74).

Sustain, *sustineo*,² *uī*, *tentum*.
Swan, *cygnus*, *ī*, M.
Sweet, *dulcis*, *suāvis*, *e* (41).
Sweetness, *suāvitās*, *ātis*, F.
Swift, *vēlōx*, *ōcis*; *celer*, *eris*, *ere*.
Swine, *sūs*, *suis*, C. (p. 18).
Sword, *gladius*, *ī*, M.

T.

Take, *cipio*,³ *cēpī*, *captum* (25).
Talent, *talentum*, *ī*, N.
Tall, *prōcerus*, *a*, *um*.
Task, *opus*, *eris*, N. (58).
Teach, *doceo*,² *uī*, *doctum*.
Teaching, means of, *documentum*.
Tell, *nuntio*,¹ *dīco*,³ *xī*, *ctum*; —
a lie, *mentior*.⁴ —
Temper, *animus*, *ī*, M. (13).
Tempest, *tempestās*, *ātis*, F.
Temple, *templum*, *ī*, N.
Tend, *cūro*.¹
Terrify, *terreo*,² *uī*, *itum*.
Territory, *finēs*, *ium*, M. (plur.).
Terror, *terror*, *ōris*; *metus*, *ūs*, M.;
be in —, *trepidō*,¹ *there is —*,
trepidātur.
Than, *quam* (or abl. after comp.).
That, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; conj., *quod*;
purpose, ut (subj.); — *nōt*, *quān*.
Themselves, see **Self**.
Then (at that time), *tum*; (there-
upon), *deinde*. [estne?
There, *ibi*; *there is*, *est*; *is there*?
Therefore, *itaque*, *igitur*.
Thin, *tenuis*, *e*; *gracilis*, *e* (44).
Thing, *rēs*, *reī*, F.; *good things*,
bona, N.
Think, *puto*,¹ (reflect), *cōgito*.¹
Thinness, *tenuitās*, *ātis*, F.
This, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc* (p. 19: 52).
Those, *illī*, *ae*, *a*.
Threatening, *mināx*, *dcis*.
Thrice, *ter*.

Through, *per* (acc.); abl. (cause).
Throughout, express by *tōtus*.
Thunderbolt, *fulmen*, *inis*, N. (75).
Thus, *ita*, *sic*.
Time, *tempus*, *oris*, N.; for some
—, *aliquamdiu*; *times*, see p. 22.
Timorous, *pavidus*, *a*, *um*.
To, of motion, *ad* (acc.); of rela-
tion, *dat.*; before a verb, *infin*.
To-day, *hodiē*; *adj.*, *hodiernus*.
Tomb, *sepulcrum*, *ī*, N.
To-morrow, *crās*; *adj.*, *crāstinus*,
a, *um*.
Tongue, *lingua*, *ae*, F.
Too much, *nimis*, *nimumum*.
Tooth, *dēns*, *dentis*, M.
Town, *oppidum*, *ī*, N. (98).
Tray, *ferculum*, *ī*, N.
Treat, *cūro*.¹
Tree, *arbor*, *oris*, F. (15).
Tribune, *tribūnus*, *ī*, M.
Trophy, *tropaeum*, *ī*, N.
Troy, *Trōja*, *ae*, F.
True, *vērū*, *a*, *um*.
Truly, *rectē*.
Truth, *vērītās*, *ātis*, F.
Try, *experior*,⁴ *expertus*.
Trying, means of, *experimentum*.
Tusk, *dēns*, *dentis*, M.

U.

Ulysses, *Ulixēs*, *is* or *ī*.
Under, *sub* (acc. or abl.).
Uncertain, *incertus*, *a*, *um*. [(25).
Undertake, *suscipio*,³ *cēpī*, *ceptum*
Uneasy, *sollicitus*, *a*, *um*. [erum.
Unhappy, *infēlix*, *icis*; *miser*, *era*,
Unless, *nisi*.
Untimely, *immātūrus*, *a*, *um*.
Unworthy, *indignus*, *a*, *um* (abl.).
Upon, *in* (acc. or abl.).
Use (v.), *utor*,³ *ūsus*.
Use (n.), *utilitās*, *ātis*, F.

V.

Vain : in —, *frustrā*.
Valiant, *strenuus* ; *fortis*, *e*.
Valor, *virtūs*, *ūtis*, *F*.
Vast, *ingēns*, *tis* (65).
Very, expr. by superl. or *per*-.
Vespasian, *Vespasiānus*, *i*, *M*.
Vice, *vitium*, *i*, *N*.
Victor, *victorious*, *victor*, *trix*.
Victory, *victōria*, *ae*, *F*.
Vine, *vītis*, *is*, *F*.
Violent, *violēns*, *ingēns*, *entis*.
Virtue, *virtūs*, *ūtis*, *F*.
Voice, *vōx*, *vōcis*, *F*.

W.

Wake, *vigilo*.¹
Walk, *ambulo*.¹
Wall, *mūrus*, *i*, *M*.
Wanton : to be —, *lūdo*,⁸ *lascīvio*.⁴
War, *bellum*, *i*, *N*. (22).
Warlike, *bellicōsus*, *a*, *um*.
Warn, *monco* (*admonco*)² *uī*, *itum*.
Watching, *vigilāns*, *tis*.
Water, *aqua*, *ae*, *F*.
Way, *via*, *ae*, *F*. (56).
We, *nōs* (expr. only for emphasis).
Wealth, *dīvitiae*, *ārum*, *F*. (78).
Weary, *fessus*, *a*, *um*.
Weep, *fleo*,² *flēvī*, *flētum*.
What, *quod*, *id quod* ; interr. *quid* ?
Whatever, *quicquid* (*quidquid*).
When, *ubi*, *cum* (see p. 106).
Where, *ubi*. [an.
Whether, *an* ; — . . or, *utrum* . .
Which ? *quis* ? — of two, *uter* ?
While, *cum* ; *dum* (pres. indic.).
Whirl, *torqueo*,² *torsī*, *tortum*.
Who, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.
Who ? **what** ? *quīs*, *quae*, *quid* ?
Wholly, *omnīno*.
Why, *cūr*, *quamobrem*.
Wicked, *improbis*, *a*, *um* (66).

Wild, *ferus*, *a*, *um* ; *agrestis*, *e*.
Will (v.), *volo*, *velle*, *voluī* (or fut.).
Will (n.), *voluntās*, *ātis*, *F*.
Wind, *ventus*, *i*, *M*. (19).
Winter, *hiems* (*hiemps*), *is*, *F*. ; adj.,
hibernus, *a*, *um* ; — quarters, *hiberna*, *ōrum*, *N*. pl.
Wing, *āla*, *ae*, *F*. ; of army, *cornū*, *N*.
Wisdom, *sapientia*, *ae*, *F*.
Wise, *sapiēns*, *tis*.
Wish, *volo*, *velle*, *voluī* ; *cupio*³ (33).
With (accompaniment), *cum* ; instrum., express by abl.
Within, *intrā* (acc.) ; abl. of time.
Without, *sine* (abl.).
Wolf, *lupus*, *i*, *M*. ; *lupa*, *ae*, *F*.
Woman, *mulier*, *eris*, *F*.
Wonder, *miror*.¹
Wood (forest), *silva*, *ae*, *F*. (96).
Word, *verbum*, *i*, *N*.
Work, *opus*, *eris*, *N*. (58).
Worse, *pējor*, *us*.
Worship, *adoro* ;¹ *colo*,³ *uī*, *cultum*.
Wound (v.), *vulnero*.¹
Wound (n.), *vulnus*, *eris*, *N*.
Wounded, *vulnerātus*, *a*, *um*.
Wreath, *corōna*, *ae*, *F*. ; *sertum*, *i*, *N*.
Wrath, *ira*, *ae* ; *irācundia*, *ae*, *F*.
Wretched, *misere*, *era*, *crum*.
Write, *scribo*,³ *pī*, *ptum*.
Wrong : to do —, *pecco* ;¹ — is done, *peccātur* (impers.).
Wrong (n.), *injūria*, *ae*, *F*. ; to do a —, *injuriā inferre*.

Y.

Year, *annus*, *i*, *M*.
Yesterday, *herī* ; adj., *hesternus*.
Yet, *tamen* ; not —, *nondum*.
You, *tū*, *vōs* ; **Your**, *tuus*, *vester*.
Young man (youth), *juvenis*, *is* ;
adolescēns, *tis*, *M*.
Youth, *juventūs*, *tūtis*, *F*.

VOCABULARY.

No. II. — LATIN AND ENGLISH.

The figures in parenthesis refer to the List of Synonyms.

- ā, ab** (abl.), *from, away from, by*; in compos., *away, off* (1).
abdo,⁸ ere, didī, ditum, *to put away, hide* (2).
abeo, īre, īi, itum, *go away* (3).
abfero (aufero), ferre, abstulī, ablātum, *bear away*.
abhorreo,² ēre, uī, *shrink away, hold aloof*.
abiēs, etis, F., *fir-tree*.
abjicio³ (ābicio), ere, jēcī, jectum, *throw away, cast down*.
Aboriginēs, um, plur. M., *the early inhabitants of Italy*.
abripio³ [rapio], ere, ripuī, reptum, *snitch or drag away*.
abscedo,⁸ ere, cēssī, cēssum, *move off, withdraw*.
absēns, tis (part. of absum), *absent*.
absentia, ae, F., *absence*.
absolvo,⁸ ere, solvī, solūtum, *acquit, relieve of an obligation or burden, pay off, complete*.
abstinēns, tis, *abstinent, temperate*; part. of
abstineo² [teneo], ēre, tinuī, tentum, *to hold off, refrain*.
absum, esse, fuī, *to be absent*; non multum abest quin, *it is not far [from being the case] that*.
abundo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to overflow, abound (unda)*.
abūtor,⁸ ī, ūsus, *to abuse, take advantage of*.
ac (atque), *and, as*.
accēdo,⁸ ere, cēssī, cēssum, *move up to, approach, be added* (with ut, = *and besides*).
accendo,³ ere, dī, sum, *kindle, inflame*.
accido⁸ [cado], ere, cidī, *be fall, happen* (4).
accingo,² ere, nxī, nctum, *gird, brace up*.
accipio³ [capio], ere, cēpī, ceptum, *receive, accept* (25).
accurro,³ ere, currī, or cucurri, cursum, *to run up to*.
accūsātor, ōris, M., *accuser, public prosecutor*.
accūsō [ad, causa],¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to accuse*.
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, eager*.
acerbus, a, um, *sharp, sour*.
acidulus, a, um, *rather sour*.
acidus, a, um, *sour*.
aciēs, ēī, F., *edge, eyesight; the battle-array of an army* (5).
ācritēr (ācrius, ācerrimē), *sharply, eagerly; ācrius, too eagerly*.
acus, ūs, F., *needle*.
acūtus, a, um, *sharp, keen*.
ad (acc.), *to, at, towards, about* (to the number of), *for, near*; in comp., *in, upon, to, with*.
adclāmo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to cry out at*.
adcumbo,³ ere, cubuī, cubitum, *recline or sit near* (at table).
addo,⁸ ere, didī, ditum, *add*.
addūco,⁸ ere, xī, ctum, *bring, draw to* (a thing), *induce*.
adeō, *so* (to that degree).
adeo, īre, īi, itum, *go to, approach*.
adeptus, a, um, *gained, or having gained* (part. of adipiscor³).

adfero, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear to, bring.*

adfacio,³ ere, fēcī, sectum, *affect with*; — supplicio, *to punish*; — honoribus, *to reward with honors.*

adflicto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *dash about violently, afflict.*

adfligo,³ ere, flixī, flictum, *dash against.*

adhibeo,² ēre, uī, itum, *apply, furnish, employ.*

adhūc, *hitherto, till now.*

adimo,³ ere, ēmī, emptum, *take away.*

adipiscor,³ cī, adeptus, *reach, attain.*

aditus, ūs, M., *access, approach, entrance.*

adjūmentum, ī, N., *aid, help.*

adjungo,³ ere, nxī, nctum, *to join, annex.*

adlātus, see **adfero**.

adloquor,³ loqui, locūtus, *speak to, address.*

administro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *serve, supply, perform, direct.*

admīrātio, ōnis, F., *admiration.*

admīror,¹ ārī, ātus, *to admire.*

admodum, *to a degree, quite.*

admoneo,² ēre, uī, itum, *admonish.*

admoveo,² ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move towards.*

adolescēns, adolescentia, see **adulescens**, &c.

adorior,⁴ irī, adortus, *attack, accost.*

adpeto,³ ere, ivī, itum, *aim at, attack, seek, long for, approach.*

adrēpo,³ ere, psī, ptum, *creep towards.*

adrīdeo,² ēre, rīsī, rīsum, *smile at* (in token of good humor).

adscendo,³ ere, dī, sum, *mount, ascend.*

adscēnsus, ūs, M., *ascent.*

adsentior,⁴ irī, sēnsus, *agree with, assent to.*

adsequor,³ quī, secūtus, *follow close, come up with, reach* (95).

adspectus, ūs, M., *aspect, view.*
adspicio,³ ere, spexī, spectrum, *look at, view.* [hand.]

adsum, esse, fuī, *be present, at*
adulātio, ōnis, F., *fawning, flattery.*

adulescēns, tis, M., *young man* (properly, from 17 to 30).

adulescentia, ae, F., *youth, early manhood.*

advento,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *come to, approach.*

adventus, ūs, M., *coming, approach.*

adversus (acc.), *turned towards, against.*

adversus, a, um, *turned to, opposite, in front, adverse.*

adverto,³ ere, vertī, versum, *turn to*; *animum adverto*, *turn the mind to, notice.*

advesperascit,³ ere, āvit, *to approach evening, grow late.*

aedēs, is, F., *temple*; plur., *house* (39).

aedificium, ī, N., *building, edifice.*

aedifico,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *build, erect.*

aeger, gra, grum, *sick, weary*; — *pedibus*, *lame.*

aemulus, ī, M., *rival.*

Aenēās, ae, M., *Aeneas*, son of Anchises and Venus, a prince of Troy.

Aeolus, ī, M., *Æolus*, god of Winds.

aequālis, e, *of the same or equal age* (6).

aequitās, ātis, F., *equity, justice, calmness.*

aequo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *make equal.*

aequor, oris, N., *level, sea* (67).

aequus, a, um, *level, even, equal, just* (6).

āēr, āēris (acc. āēra), M., *air.*

aerumna, ae, F., *grief* (38).

aerumnōsus, a, um, *full of grief.*

aes, aeris, N., *copper, money.*

aestās, ātis, F., *summer.*

aestimo,¹ *āre, āvī, ātum, value, esteem, reckon.*

aestivus, a, um, *summer (adj.), of summer.*

aestuo,¹ *āre, āvī, ātum, to boil up, seethe, surge, suffer heat.*

aestus, ūs, M., *surge, tide, heat.*

aetās, ātis, F., *age, period of life (7).*

aeternitās, ātis, F., *eternity, immortality.*

Aetna, ae, F., *Mount Etna.*

aevum, ī, N., *age, period, lapse of time (7).*

afficio⁸ [ad facio], see **adfacio**.

affirmo,² *āre, āvī, ātum, confirm, strengthen.*

affligo,⁸ see **adffligo**.

Africānus, ī, M., a title of P. Scipio, as conqueror of Carthage, and of his grandson by adoption as its destroyer.

Agamemnōn, onis (acc. ona), *Agamemnon, king of the Greeks at Troy.*

ager, agrī, M., *field, territory (8).*

Agēsilaus, ī, M., a king of Sparta.

aggredior,⁸ dī, gressus, *approach, attack, undertake.*

agito,¹ *āre, āvī, ātum, drive, move, stir, agitate, pass, hunt.*

agmen, inis, N., *band, troop (5).*

agna, ae, F., *ewe-lamb.*

agnosco⁸ [ad, GNO], *noscere, nōvī, nitum, to recognize.*

agnus, ī, M.; *agna*, ae, F., *lamb.*

ago,⁸ *agere, ēgī, actum, to lead, do, drive; agere gratias, thank.*

agrestis, e, *wild, rustic, rude.*

agricola, ae, M., *farmer.*

agricultūra, ae, F., *agriculture.*

ahēneus, a, um, *brazen, of brass.*

āin, for *āisne, do you say so?*

āio (defect.), *say, say yes (64).*

Ājāx, ācis, M., *Ajax, a Grecian hero.*

āla, ae, F., *wing (61).*

alacritās, ātis, F., *activity, eagerness, alacrity.*

Albānus, a, um, of *Alba*, a town near Rome.

albeo,² *ēre, to be white.*

albus, a, um, *white (9).*

ālea, ae, F., *die (of a pair of dice), hazard.*

āles, itis, C., *winged creature, bird (21).*

Alexander, drī, M., *Alexander, king of Macedonia, conqueror of Asia.*

algeo,² *ēre, alsī, to be or endure cold.*

algor, ōris, M., *cold (the feeling).*

aliās, *otherwise, elsewhere, at any other time.*

aliēnus, a, um, *belonging to another, foreign, others'.*

āliger, gera, gerum, *winged.*

alimentum, ī, N., *food; pl. kinds of food.*

aliquamdiū, *for some time.*

aliquando, *at some time, sometimes, at length.*

aliquis, qua, quod, or quid (p. 21), *some, some one.*

aliquō, *to some place.*

aliquot, *some, several, a number of.*

aliter, *otherwise.*

alius, a, ud (p. 7), *other, another; al. . . al., one . . . another.*

almus, a, um, *cherishing, benignant.*

alo,⁸ *alere, aluī, alitum, feed, keep (of animals).*

Alpēs, ium, F., *the Alps.*

altāria, ium, N. plur., *altars.*

alter, tera, terum (p. 7), *other (of two), second, the other;*

alter . . alter, the one, the other.

altercor,¹ *ārī, ātus, quarrel, dispute.*

alternus, a, um, *alternate.*

altitūdo, dinis, F., *height, depth.*

altus, a, um, *high, deep (10).*

alumnus, ī, M., *foster-child.*

alveus, ī, M., *river-channel.*

amābilis, e, *lovely.*

amāns, tis, *loving, fond (amo).*

amārus, a, um, *bitter.*

ambāgēs, um, F. plur., *obscurity (dark hints); also in abl. sing.*

ambitus, ūs, M., *circuit, going around*.
ambo, ae, o (p. 7), *both*.
ambulatio, ōnis, F., *a walk*.
ambulo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to walk*.
āmēns, tis, *distracted, insane*.
amicitia, ae, F., *friendship*.
amicus, a, um, *friendly, fond*.
amicus, ī, M., *a friend*.
amitto,⁸ ere, misī, missum, *to lose* (83).
amo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to love* (11).
amoenus, a, um, *pleasant, charming* (to the eye : 41).
amor, ōris, M., *love*.
amplitudo, inis, F., *fulness, grandeur*.
amplius, *more*.
amplus, a, um, *full, abundant, grand, large* (65).
amputo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *prune away, cut off*.
Amūlius, ī, M., *Amulius, king of Alba*.
an, *whether, or* (sign of interr.).
Anacharsis, is, M., *a philosophical Scythian*.
anas, anatis, C., *duck*.
Anchīsēs, ae, M., *Anchises, father of Æneas*.
aucilla, ae, F., *handmaid* (fem. of *servus, slave*).
ancora, ae, F., *anchor*.
ango,⁸ ere, nxī, nctum, *to choke, distress*.
anguis, is, C., *snake, serpent* (12).
angulus, ī, M., *corner*.
angustus, a, um, *narrow*.
anima, ae, F., *breath, life* (13).
animadverto³ [animum adverto], ere, tī, sum, *to perceive*.
animal, ālis, N., *animal* (14).
animus, ī, M., *mind, soul, courage* (13); *animum adverto* (acc.), *perceive*.
anniversārius, a, um, *yearly*.
annōna, ae, F., *the grain-crop* (year's growth), *grain* (in market), *price of grain* (94).
annus, ī, M., *year*.
annuus, a, um, *yearly*.

ante (acc.), *before* (prep. and adv.); *ante . . . quam, before* (rel. adv.); *non ante . . . quam, not . . . until*; *ante duas horas, two hours ago*.
antecapio,⁸ ere, cēpī, captum, *anticipate*.
antecēdo,⁸ ere, cēssī, cēssum, *precede, walk in front, excel*.
antepōno,³ ere, posuī, positum, *set before, prefer*.
Antiochia, ae, F., *Antioch, a city of Syria*.
antiquitās, ātis, F., *antiquity*.
antiquus, a, um, *ancient* (100).
Antōnius, ī, M., *Antony, a Roman family name*.
antrum, ī, N., *cave, grotto*.
ānulus, ī, M., *ring, bracelet*.
apage (def.), *away! begone!*
aper, aprī, M., *boar*.
aperio,⁴ īre, uī, apertum, *open, uncover, disclose* (80); *aperi caput, take off your hat*.
apertus, a, um (part. of *preceding*), *opened, open*.
apiārium, ī, N., *bee-house, apiary*.
apis, is, F., *bee*.
Apollo, inis, M., *Apollō, god of music and art*.
appāreo,² ēre, uī, itum, *appear*.
apparo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to make ready*.
appello,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *call*.
appeto,⁸ (see *adpeto*).
approbatio, ōnis, F., *approval*.
approbo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *approve*.
apto,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *fit, adapt*.
aptus, a, um, *fitted, fit*.
apud (acc.), *at, near, among, with, in* (of authors).
aqua, ae, F., *water, spring*.
aquāticus, a, um, *of the water*; M. or F. plur., *water-fowl*.
aquatio, ōnis, F., *watering-place*.
aquila, ae, F., *eagle* (the Roman standard).
Aquilo, ōnis, M., *Aquilo* (the North wind), *the North*.
Arabs, Arabis, *Arabian*.

Arar, aris, M., a river in Gaul (the *Saône*).
arātor, ōris, M., *ploughman*.
arātrum, ī, N., *plough*.
Arātus, *Arātus*, a Greek poet.
arbitror,¹ ārī, ātus, *judge, think, suppose* (92).
arbor (ōs), ōris, F., *tree* (15).
arbustum, ī, N., *orchard* (15).
Arcadius, ī, a man's name.
arceo,² ēre, arcuī, *to shut off, restrain*.
Archelāus, ī, M., a man's name.
Archīās, ae, *Archias*, M., a poet.
arcus, ūs, M., *a bow*.
ardēns, tis (participle of *ardeo*), *blazing*.
ardeo,² ēre, arsi, arsum, *blaze, burn*.
ardor, ōris, M., *heat, warmth*.
arduus, a, um, *steep, difficult*.
ārea, ae, F., *open space, area, court-yard*.
argentārius, a, um, *pertaining to silver or money; argentarius, a money lender; argentaria, (sc. res), banking business*.
argentum, ī, N., *silver*.
argūmentum, ī, N., *argument*.
arguo,³ ere, uī, ūtum, *to assert, declare, accuse*.
arista, ae, F., *wheat-ear, harvest*.
Aristotelēs, is, M., *Aristotle*, a Greek philosopher.
arma, ōrum, N., *arms, weapons; ad arma, to war; in armis, under arms* (16).
armātus, a, um, *armed; pl., armed men*.
aro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *plough*.
ars, artis, F., *art, skill* (17).
artē (tius, tissimē), *closely*.
articulātum (tē), *articulately*.
artifex, ficis, M., *artist, artisan, workman*.
artus, ūs, M., *joint, limb* (dat. pl. *ubus*).
arundo, inis, F., *reed, stick*.
arvum, ī, N. [*aro*], *a field for tillage* (8).
arx, arcis, F., *tower, citadel*.

Ascanius, ī, M., son of *Æneas*.
ascēnsus, ūs, M. (see *adscensus*).
asinus, ī, M., *ass, donkey*.
aspectus, ūs, M., *sight, view, aspect*.
asper, era, erum, *rough, harsh, sharp*.
aspernor,¹ ārī, ātus, *spurn, scorn*.
aspis, idis, F., *asp* (a poisonous serpent).
asporto¹ [abs, porto], āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off*.
astrologia, ae, F., *astronomy* (knowledge of the stars).
astrum, ī, N., *star, heavenly body*.
asylum, ī, N., *asylum, refuge*.
at, but, but yet, still.
āter, ātra, ātrum, *black* (9).
Athēnae, ārum, *Athens*, the most famous city of Greece.
Atlās, antis, M., *Atlas*, a Titan, changed to a mountain.
atque (ac), *and, as, and even*.
Atreus, eos or ī (p. 5), M., *Atreus*, father of Agamemnon.
Atridēs, ae, M., son of *Atreus*.
atrōx, ōcis, *fierce, cruel* (93).
attendo,³ ere, dī, tum, *stretch towards, attend, listen*.
attentus, a, um, *attentive*.
attingo⁸ [tango], tingere, tigī, tactum, *touch on, touch, reach*.
attonitus, a, um, *thunderstruck*.
auctōritās, ātis, F., *authority*.
auctumnus, ī, M., *autumn* (from *augeo*, the increase of harvest).
audācia, ae, F., *boldness* (usually in a bad sense).
audāx, ācis, *bold, daring*.
audeo,² audēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture* (18).
audio,⁴ īre, īvī, ītum, *hear*.
auditio, ōnis, F., *hearsay*.
aufero [ab, fero], auferre, abstulī, ablātum, *bear away, remove*.
augeo,² augēre, auxī, auctum, *to increase, enlarge*.

augur, uris, M., *augur* (inter-
preter of omens).
auguror,¹ ārī, ātus, *to interpret*
omens, interpret, predict.
aula, ae, F., *hall, palace.*
aura, ae, F., *breeze, air* (19).
aureus, a, um, *golden, of gold.*
aurīga, ae, C., *driver, charioteer.*
auris, is, F., *ear.*
auritus, a, um, *having ears.*
aurum, ī, N., *gold.*
auster, trī, M., *the south wind.*
ausus, a, um, part. of **audeo**.²
aut, or; **aut** . . **aut**, *either . . or.*
autem, *but, however, moreover.*
auxilium, ī, N., *aid, help.*
avāritia, ae, F., *avarice, greed.*
avārus, a, um, *greedy, avari-*
cious (20).
āverto,³ ere, tī, sum, *to turn*
away, avert.
avis, is, F., *bird* (21).
āvoco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to call*
away.
āvolo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to fly*
away.
avus, ī, M., *grandfather.*
axis, is, M., *axle, axis* (of the
earth).

B.

balneum, ī, N., *bath*; plural, ae,
ārum, F.
bālo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to bleat.*
barba, ae, F., *beard.*
barbarus, a, um, *barbarian* (93).
beātus, a, um, *blessed, happy,*
wealthy (47).
Belga, ae, M., *a Belgian.*
Bellerophōn, ontis, M., *a hero*
of Greek fable, slayer of the
Chimæra.
bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike.*
bellicus, a, um, *warlike.*
bellum, ī, N., *war* (22).
bellus, a, um, *pretty, fine* (91).
bēlua, ae, F., *beast, monster,*
strange animal (14).
bene, well.

benefacio,³ facere, fēcī, factum;
pass., **benefio**, *do good, benefit.*
beneficium, ī, N., *a kindness,*
benefit; favor, gift (40).
benevolentia, ae, F., *good will,*
kindness.
bestia, ae, F., *animal, beast,*
brute (14).
Biās, antis, M., *a Greek philo-*
sopher.
bibo,⁸ ere, bibī, itum, *to drink.*
biennium, ī, N., *a period of two*
years.
bis, *twice.*
blandimentum, ī, N., *flattery.*
bonus, a, um, *good, kind* (23).
Boreās, ae, M., *the North wind,*
north.
bōs, bovis (p. 14), C., *ox, cow;*
plur. cattle.
brāchium (bracchium), ī, N., *arm*
(properly the fore-arm; com-
pare lacertus).
brevis, e, *short; brevī, in a short*
time.
Britannia, ae, F., *Britain.*
Britannus, a, um, *British, a*
Briton.
Brundisium, ī, N., *a seaport in*
the S. E. of Italy.
bubulcus, ī, M., *a ploughman,*
herdsman.

C.

C, initial for *Gāius* (*Caius*) The
spelling *Gaius* is the correct
one, but is not usually pre-
served in English.
CAD, *fall* (**cado**, **accido**).
cado,³ cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall.*
caeco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to make*
blind.
caecus, a, um, *blind.*
caedēs, is, F., *destruction, muti-*
lation, slaughter (24).
caedo,³ caedere, cecidī, caesum,
fell, cut down, kill, beat.
caelum, ī, N.; pl. caelī, ōrum,
M., *sky, heaven, climate.*

Caepio, ōnis, M., a man's name.
Caesar, aris, M., *Cæsar*.
caesariēs, ēī, F., *head of hair, locks*.
calamitās, ātis, F., *a calamity* (originally a hailstorm, which beats down stalks of grain).
calamus, ī, M., *stalk, reed, pen*.
calco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to trample, tread, travel*.
caleo,² ēre, uī, *be hot or warm*.
calesco,³ ere, *grow hot or warm*.
calidus, a, um, *hot*.
calix, icis, M., *cup*.
callidus, a, um, *cunning*.
cālo, ōnis, M., *camp-servant*.
campus, ī, M., *field, plain* (8).
CAN, *sing* (**cano**³).
candēns (part. of **candeo**), tis, *glowing, hot*.
candidus, a, um, *white, bright* (9).
canis, is, C.; gen. pl., **um**, *dog*.
Canius, ī, M., a proper name.
Cannæ, ārum, F., *Cannæ*, a town in S. E. Italy, where the Romans were defeated by Hannibal, B.C. 216.
cano,³ ere, cecinī, cantum, *sing, crow, sound, play* (on an instrument).
canōrus, a, um, *clear-voiced, melodious*.
cantillo,¹ āre, *sing feebly, chirp*.
canto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *sing*.
cantus, ūs, M., *song, chant* (27).
cānus, a, um, *white, hoary* (9); pl., **cānī**, *gray hair*.
CAP, *take* (**capio**, **accipio**).
capāx, ācis, *capacious, roomy*.
caper, caprī, M., *goat*.
capesso,³ ere, ivī, itum, *take hold of, seize, grasp*.
capillus, ī, M., *hair*.
capio,³ ere, cēpi, captum, *take, catch* (25); *captus oculis*, *blind*.
Capitōlium, ī, N., *the Capitol*, a hill in Rome.
capra (more commonly **capella**), ae, F., *she-goat*.
capto,¹ āre, āvī. ātum, *to catch at, seize, reach eagerly for*.

Capua, ae, F., a town of South Italy, near Naples.
caput, capitis, N., *head, chief* (town, dish, &c.).
carcer, eris, M., *prison, dungeon*.
careo,² ēre, uī, itum, *to be free, be relieved* (of annoyance), *do without, be destitute* (26).
cāritās, ātis, F., *dearness*, both as *affection* and as *high price*.
carmen, inis, N., *song* (27).
caro, carnis, F., *flesh, meat*.
Carolus, ī, M., *Charles*.
Carthāgo, inis, F., *Carthage*, a city of N. Africa. [ian.
Carthāginiēnsis, e, *Carthagin-
 casa*, ae, F., *cottage*.
caseus, ī, M., *cheese*.
Cassandra, ae, F., *Cassandra*.
cassēs, ium, M., *hunting-net*.
Cassius, ī, M., one of the con-
 spirators against Cæsar.
castanea, ae, F., *chestnut*.
castellum, ī, N., *fort*.
castra, ōrum, N. pl., *camp*.
castrēnsis, e, *of the camp*.
cāsus, ūs, M., *downfall, chance, accident* (**cado**).
catellus, ī, M., *little puppy*.
catēna, ae, F., *chain*.
Catilīna, ae, M., *Catiline*.
Cato, ōnis, M., a Roman name.
catulus, ī, M., *whelp, puppy*.
caula, ae, F., *a sheep-fold, stall*.
causa, ae, F., *cause, motive*; *causā*, *for the sake of*.
caveo,² ēre, cāvī, cautum, *to beware; to be on one's guard*;
cave, with pres. subj. (used in prohibitions), *don't*.
cecidī, see **cado**.
cecidī, see **caedo**.
cecinī, see **cano**.
cēdo,³ ere, cēssī, cēssum, *move, move away, yield, retire, resign, be inferior*.
celeber, bris, bre, *thronged, celebrated, numerous*.
celebro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to throng, celebrate*.
celer, eris, ere, *swift*.

celeritās, ātis, F., *swiftness*.
celeriter, *swiftly*.
cēlo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum (with two acc.), *hide, cover* (2).
celsus, a, um, *lofty* (10).
cēna, ae, F., *dinner* (36).
cēno,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *dine, sup.*
cēnseo,² ēre, suī, sum, *estimate, reckon* (92).
cēnsor, ōris, M., *censor* (a Roman magistrate).
cēnsus, ūs, M., *census*, a register and valuation of citizens.
centēsimus, a, um, *hundredth*.
centum, a *hundred*.
cēra, ae, F., *wax*; pl., *wax tablets* (for writing).
Cerēs, eris, F., *Ceres*, goddess of grain and harvest.
cōreus, a, um, *waxen*.
cerno,³ ere, crēvī, crētum or certum, *distinguish, descry, decide*.
certāmen, inis, N., *contest, rivalry*.
certātīm, *emulously*.
certō, *surely, at any rate*.
certiōrem facere, *to inform one*.
certō, *certainly*.
certo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *decide, vie, strive, contend* (90.)
certum est, *it is resolved*.
certus, a, um (part. of cerno), *decided, certain, sure, resolved*.
cervix, icis (F.; generally plur.), *neck, shoulders*.
cervus, ī, M., *stag*.
cēspe, itis, M., *turf*.
cēssō,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *cease*.
[cēterus], a, um (masc. sing. not used), *other, the rest*.
Chrysippus, ī, M., *Chrysippus*, a Stoic philosopher.
cibus, ī, M., *food* (36).
cicāda, ae, F., *tree-locust, katydid*.
Cicero, ōnis, M., *Cicero*.
cicōnia, ae, F., *stork*.
cieo,² ēre, civī, citum, *to rouse, stir*.
Cinna, ae, M., a Roman name.
circā, *about, around* (acc.).

circiter, (adv. or prep.), *about*.
circum-aro,¹ *to plough around*.
circumcīdo,³ ere, cidī, cīsum, *to cut or trim around*.
circumcīsus, a, um, *cut off all around*.
circumdo,¹ dāre, dedī, dātum, *to put round*.
circum-fero, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to cast around*.
circumplīco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *fold or wrap round, surround*.
circumsedeo,² ēre, sēdī, *to sit round, besiege*.
circumspecto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to look round upon*.
circus, ī, M., *circus* (for exhibitions, races, &c.).
citātus, a, um, *hastening, stirred*.
cīvilis, e, *of a citizen, civil*.
cīvis, is, C., *citizen*; — meus, *my fellow-citizen*.
cīvitās, ātis, F., *city, state* (as organized commonwealth : 98).
clādēs, is, F., *massacre, loss* (24).
clāmito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to shout, call* (freq. of clāmo¹).
clāmor, ōris, M., *shout, scream, cry* (97). [loud.
clārus, a, um, *bright, famous, classicum*, ī, N., *trumpet-signal*.
classia, is, F., *fleet*.
Claudius, ī, M., *Claudius*, a Roman family name.
claudus, a, um, *lame*.
clēmēns, tis, *merciful, gentle*.
clēmēntia, ae, F., *mercy*.
cliēns, tis, C., *client, dependant*.
clipeus, ī, M., *shield* (28).
cloāca, ae, F., *drain, sewer*.
Clusinus, a, um, *of Clusium*.
Cn. for *Gnaeus* or *Cneius*.
coactus, a, um (part. of cogo), *compelled, gathered*.
cochlea, ae, F., *snail*.
Cocles, itis, M., a surname of Horatius ("one-eyed").
coctilis, e, *baked*.
coepī, def. (§ 38, 1. a), *I began*.
coērceo,² ēre, cuī, citum, *compel, restrain* (arceo).

coetus, ūs, M., *assembly*.
cōgito,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to think, reflect*.
cognātio, ōnis, F., *relationship (by blood)*.
cognōmen, inis, N., *surname, family name (74)*.
cognosco,⁸ ere, nōvī, nitum, *learn, recognize, know*.
cōgo,⁸ ere, coēgī, coactum, *to gather, compel (co, ago)*.
cōhortor,¹ āri, ātus, *to encourage, exhort*.
collēga, ae, M., *colleague*.
collego (or **colligo**),³ ere, lēgī, lectum, *gather, collect*.
colligo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to bind together*.
collis, is, M., *hill*.
collum, ī, N., *neck*.
colo,⁸ ere, coluī, cultum, *cherish, till, worship*.
colōnus, ī, M., *farmer, colonist*.
color, ōris, M., *color*.
columba, ae, F., *dove*.
coma, ae, F., *hair*; pl. (poetically), *foliage*.
comes, itis, C., *companion (29)*.
comētēs, ae, M., *comet*.
cōmis, e, *kind, courteous (41)*.
comitium, ī, N., *place of gathering*; plur., *election*.
commemoro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *call to mind, relate, recount*.
commendo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to put in charge, intrust*.
commigro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to migrate, remove*.
commilito, ōnis, M., *fellow-soldier, comrade*.
commodē, *conveniently*.
commoditās, ātis, F., *convenience, advantage, fitness*.
commodum, ī, N., *convenience, advantage, profit*.
commoveo,² ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move, disturb (violently), stir*.
communis, e, *common*.
communitās, ātis, F., *community (con, munus)*.
compāreo,² ēre, uī, *to appear*.

comparo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to get together, procure, compare*.
compēnsō,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to recompense, repay, compensate*.
compes, edis, F., *fetter*.
complector,⁸ tī, plexus, *embrace*.
compleo,² ēre, ēvī, ētum, *to fill*.
complētus, a, um, *full, complete*.
complūrēs, a or ia, *very many*.
compōno,³ ere, posuī, positum, *to arrange, settle, put together*.
comprehendo,⁸ ere, dī, sum, *to seize, perceive, comprehend*.
comprobo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *make good, prove, verify*.
computo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *reckon, compute*.
concēdo,³ ere, cēssī, cēssum, *allow, retreat, withdraw*.
concerpo,⁸ [con, carpo], ere (no perf.), cerptum, *pluck, gather*.
concessus, ūs, M., *concession, permission*.
concilio,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *win, acquire, unite, conciliate*.
concilium, ī, N., *council*.
concito,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *rouse, excite (strongly)*.
conclāmo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *cry aloud*.
conclūdo,⁸ [con, claudio], ere, clūsī, clūsum, *to shut up*.
conclūsus, a, um (part. of last), *shut up*.
concordia, ae, F., *concord, harmony*.
concoro, cordis, *harmonious, friendly (oor)*.
concursum, ūs, M., *concourse, a running together*.
concutio,⁸ [con, quatio], ere, cussī, cussum, *shake, clash*.
condemno,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *condemn*.
condicio (conditio), ōnis, F., *condition, terms*.
condimentum, ī, N., *seasoning, sauce*.
condio,⁴ īre, īvī (īī), itum, *to season, embellish*.

condo,³ *dere, didi, ditum, put together, found, build, put to rest, get in, cure* (of crops).
condocefactus, a, um, *trained, tamed.* [together, hire.
condūco,³ *ere, xi, ctum, bring*
cōnfectus, a, um (part. of **conficio**), *wrought, reduced.*
cōnfero, *ferre, tuli, lātum (collātum), to bring together, compare, betake (one's self), put upon, convey.*
cōnfertus, a, um, *full, crowded.*
cōnficio,³ *ere, feci, fectum, make thoroughly, finish, prepare.*
cōnfirmo,¹ *āre, āvi, ātum, confirm, strengthen, affirm.*
cōnfiteor,² *ērī, fessus [fateor], confess, acknowledge, admit.*
cōnfluo,³ *ere, fluxi, flow together, throng.*
cōnfringo,³ *ere, frēgi, fractum, break in pieces [frango].*
cōnfugio,³ *ere, fugi, to flee for refuge.*
congrego,¹ *āre, āvi, ātum [grex], gather in flocks, congregate.*
conjicio (**cōncicio**),³ *ere, jēci, jectum, to cast, to hurl.*
conjunctio, ōnis, F, *a joining, companionship.*
conjunctus, a, um, *joined.*
conjungo,³ *ere, junxi, junctum, to join closely.*
conjunx (or **conjux**), jugis, C., *partner, i.e. husband or wife.*
conjūrātio, ōnis, F., *conspiracy.*
conjūrātus, ī, M., *conspirator.*
conjūro,¹ *āre, āvi, ātum, to conspire (con; jūro, swear).*
conligo,¹ *āre, āvi, ātum, to bind, fasten together (= colligo¹).*
conloquor,³ *quī, locūtus, to converse.*
cōnor,¹ *ārī, ātus, try, endeavor, attempt* (18).
conquīro [**con; quaero**],³ *ere, quisivi, quisitum, to inquire, search out.*
cōnscientia, ae, F., *consciousness, conscience.*

cōnscio,⁴ *īre, to be conscious.*
cōnsecro,¹ *āre, āvi, ātum, consecrate (con; sacer).*
cōnscius, a, um, *conscious.*
cōnsenesco,³ *ere, senuī, to grow old (con; senex).*
cōnsēnsus, ūs, M., *consent, fellow-feeling (con; sentio).*
cōnsequor,³ *sequi, secūtus, to follow close, overtake* (95).
cōnservātio, ōnis, F., *preservation (con; servo¹).*
cōnsessus, ūs, M., *meeting, assembly (con; sedeo²).*
cōnsidero,¹ *āre, āvi, ātum, to consider, ponder.*
cōnsido,³ *ere, sēdi, sessum, to sit down (con; sideo³).*
cōnsilium, ī, N., *counsel, plan, wise counsel, wisdom* (31).
cōnsimilis, e, *very like, just like.*
cōnsisto,³ *ere, stiti, stitum, to stand fast, halt, stay.*
cōnsocio,¹ *āre, āvi, ātum, to associate with, join, connect.*
cōnsōlātio, ōnis, F., *consolation.*
cōnspectus, ūs, M., *sight, view.*
cōnspicio,³ *ere, spexi, spectrum, to view, behold.*
cōnspicor,¹ *ārī, ātus, to get sight of.*
cōnstāntia, ae, F., *firmness.*
cōnstituo,³ *ere, stitui, ūtum, to establish, resolve [statuo].*
cōnsto,¹ *stāre, stiti, stātum, consist, be established; constat, it is settled (fact or resolve).*
cōnstringo,³ *ere, strinxī, strictum, to bind fast.*
cōnsuesco,³ *ere, suēvi, suētum, become accustomed.*
cōnsuētūdo, inis, F., *custom* (70).
cōnsul, ulis, M., *consul* (chief executive officer of Rome).
cōnsulātus, ūs, M., *consulship.*
cōnsulo,³ *ere, ui, sultum, to consult (acc.), consult for (dat.).*
cōnsultō, *on purpose.*
cōnsultum, ī, N., *counsel.*
cōnsurgo,³ *ere, surrexi, surrectum, to rise up, revolt.*

contemno,³ ere, tempſi, temp-
tum, *to despise*.
contemptus, ūs, M., *contempt*,
scorn.
contendo,³ ere, dī, tum, *stretch*
towards, strive, contend; con-
tendo ab, *urge upon*.
contentio, ōnis, F., *strife, con-*
test.
contero,³ ere, trīvī, tritum, *to*
wear away, bruise, waste.
conterritus, a, um, *terrified*.
contexo,³ ere, texuī, textum,
weave together.
conticesco,³ ere, ticuī, *to grow*
silent (incept. of taceo²).
continēns, tis (part. of con-
tineo), *continuous*; as a noun,
the continent.
contineo,² ēre, continuī, tentum
[con; teneo], *hold together,*
contain, keep.
contingo,³ ere, tigī, tactum [tan-
go], *to touch, befall*; contin-
git, *it happens* (4).
continuō, *immediately*.
continuus, a, um, *constant, in*
succession.
contrā, as prep. (acc.), *against,*
over against; as adv., *on the*
other hand.
contraho,³ ere, xī, ctum, *to draw*
together, contract, restrain.
contrārius, a, um, *contrary*.
contremisco,³ ere, tremuī, *to be*
seized with trembling.
contulī, see confero.
convenio,⁴ īre, vēnī, ventum,
to meet, gather.
conventus, ūs, M., *meeting, con-*
course.
converto,³ ere, tī, sum, *turn*.
convīva, ae, C., *fellow-guest,*
companion (at table).
convīvium, ī, N., *feast, banquet*.
convoco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *call*
together.
cōpia, ae, F., *abundance, oppor-*
tunity (78); plural, *forces*.
cōpiōsus, a, um, *abounding in*
resources.

coquo,³ ere, coxī, coctum, *to cook*.
cōr, cordis, N., *heart*.
cōram, *openly*; (with abl.), *in the*
presence of.
Corinthius, a, um, *Corinthian*.
Corinthus, ī, F., *Corinth*, a city
of Greece.
Cornēlia, ae, F., a Roman matron,
daughter of Scipio and mother
of Gracchus.
cornicen, cinis, M. [cornu; cano],
horn-blower.
cornū, ūs (ū), N., *horn*.
corpus, ōris, N., *body*.
corripio,³ ere, ripuī, reptum, *to*
seize (25).
corruptus, a, um (part. of cor-
rumpo), *spoiled, corrupt*.
cortex, icis, M. or F., *bark, hull*.
corvus, ī, M., *a crow*.
crās, *to-morrow*.
crāstinus, a, um, *belonging to*
the morrow; crastinus (sc.
dies), ī, M., *the morrow*.
crēber, bra, brum, *thick, close,*
frequent.
crēbresco,³ ere, bruī or buī,
grow dense, thicken, increase.
crēdo,³ ere, didī, ditum, *to give*
in trust, trust, believe (92).
creo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to create,*
elect. [dīn.]
crepitus, ūs, M., *noise* (rattling),
Crēs, Crētis, C., *Cretan*.
creasco,³ ere, crēvī, crētum, *grow,*
increase.
Crēta, ae, F., *Crete, an island*.
crēta, ae, F., *chalk*.
crētāceus, a, um, *of chalk*.
Crētēnsis, e, *be'onging to Crete*.
crīminor, ārī, ātus, *to accuse*.
crīnis, is, M., *hair*.
crōcio,⁴ īre, *to croak* (as a raven).
crocodīlus, ī, M., *crocodile*.
crucio,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *torment,*
torture.
crūdēlis, e, *bloody, cruel* (93).
crūdēlitās, ātis, F., *cruelty*.
cruentus, a, um, *bloody*.
cruror, ōris, M., *blood* (when it is
shed).

crūs, crūris, N., *leg.*
 crux, crucis, F., *cross.*
 ‡CUB, *to lie* (-cumbo³).
 cubiculum, ī, N., *chamber.*
 cucūlo,¹ āre, *to call "cuckoo."*
 cucūlus, ī, M., *a cuckoo.*
 culpa, ae, F., *fault* (32).
 culpo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to blame.*
 cultrix, icis, F. [colo], *she that tills, &c.*
 cultūra, ae, F., *cultivation.*
 cultus, ūs, M., *tillage, worship, mode of living, attention.*
 cum (prep. abl.), *with.*
 cum (adv.), *when; cum primum, as soon as; cum . . . tum, while . . . so also; both . . . and.*
 cūnābula, ōrum, N., *cradle.*
 cūnae, ārum, F., *cradle.*
 cunctatio, ōnis, F., *delay.*
 cunctator, ōris, M., *delayer.*
 cunctor,¹ āri, ātus, *to delay.*
 cunctus, a, um, *all* (77: more often in the plural).
 cuniculus, ī, M., *rabbit.*
 cupiditās, ātis, F., *eager desire, cupidity.*
 cupido, inis, F., *desire.*
 cupidus, a, um, *eager, desirous, greedy* (20).
 cupio,⁸ ere, ivi, itum, *desire* (33).
 oūr, *why.*
 cūra, ae, F., *care, anxiety* (38).
 cūrātio, ōnis, F., *care, treatment.*
 Curēs, ium, M., F., *a Sabine town.*
 cūria, ae, F., *senate-house.*
 cūro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *provide, take care of.*
 curro,³ ere, cucurri, cursum, *run.*
 currus, ūs, M., *chariot, car.*
 cursus, ūs, M., *running, course, race, voyage.*
 curvus, a, um, *crooked, bent.*
 custōdia, ae, F., *custody, guard.*
 custōdio,⁴ ire, ivi, itum, *guard.*
 custōs, ōdis, M., *guard, guard-ian.*
 cygnus, ī, M., *a swan.*
 cymba, ae, F., *a boat* (73).
 Cyrus, ī, M., *Cyrus, a Persian king.*

D.

damno,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *condemn.*
 dē (abl.), *down from, of, about* (1).
 dea, ae, F., *goddess* (p. 4, a).
 dēbeo,² ēre, uī, itum, *to owe, ought.*
 dēbilis, e, *weak, feeble.*
 dēcēdo,³ ere, cessi, cessum, *to withdraw, retreat* (3).
 decem, *ten.*
 decemvir, viri, M., *decemvir* (one of a board of ten).
 dēcerno,³ ere, crēvi, crētum, *to decree.*
 dēcerpo,⁸ ere, psi, ptum, *to pluck, gather* [carpo].
 dēcerto,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to contend, strive* (90).
 decet,² uit, *it is becoming.*
 dēcido,⁸ ere, di, *to fall off, fail* [cado].
 decimus, a, um, *tenth.*
 dēclāro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *make clear, show, declare.*
 dēclīno,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to bend aside, avoid.*
 decor, ōris, M., *beauty, grace.*
 decōrus, a, um, *beautiful, becoming* (91); *ad decōrum, neatly.*
 dēcreasco,⁸ ere, crēvi, crētum, *to decrease.*
 dēcuro,⁸ ere, curri or cucurri, cursum, *run down, advance.*
 decus, oris, N., *ornament, honor, dignity* (46).
 dēdecet, uit, *it is unbecoming.*
 dēdecus, oris, N., *dishonor.*
 dēdo,⁸ didi, ditum, *to surrender.*
 dēdūco,³ xi, ctum, *to lead away.*
 dēfectio, ōnis, F., *revolt, eclipse.*
 dēfendo,³ ere, di, sum, *to defend.*
 dēfēnsor, ōris, M., *defender.*
 dēflecto,³ ere, flexi, flexum, *bend, turn off* (down or away).
 deinde, *then.*
 dējicio (dēcicio),⁸ ere, jēcī, jectum, *to cast down; dejectus, downcast.*
 dēlectatio, ōnis, F., *delight.*

dēlecto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *delight, please.*

dēlectus, ūs, M., *a levy of troops.*

dēleo,² ēre, ēvī, ētum, *blot out, destroy, annihilate.*

dēlicātus, a, um, *delicate, effeminate, dainty.*

dēlictum, ī, N., *fault* (32).

dēlitesco,³ ere, lituī, *to lie hid* (lateo).

Dēlos, ī, F., *an island of the Ægean, sacred to Apollo.*

dēmentia, ae, F., *madness, folly.*

dēmergo,³ ere, sī, sum, *to plunge*, (trans.); pass., *to dive, sink.*

dēmetior,⁴ irī, mēnsus, *to measure out* (sparingly).

dēmeto,⁸ ere, messuī, messum, *to reap, mow, cut off.*

dēmigro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to remove.*

Dēmostenēs, is, M., *an orator of Athens.*

dēmum, *at length, in short.*

dēnique, *at length, in short.*

dēns, dentis, M., *tooth, tusk.*

dēnsus, a, um, *crowded, dense, close.* [down.

dēpendeo,² ēre (no perf.), *hang*

dēpendo,³ ere, dī, sum, *to weigh out, pay.*

dēpōno,² ere, posuī, positum, *to lay down or aside.*

dēposco,³ ere, poposci, *to demand, claim, request* (79).

dēprehendo,² ere, dī, sum, *to catch, seize, arrest.*

dēpugno,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *fight* (out a battle).

dēscendo,³ ere, dī, sum, *to descend.*

dēsorībo,⁸ ere, scripsi, ptum, *to describe, write about, trace, draw, mark off.*

dēsero,² ere, dēseruī, dēsertum, *forsake, desert* [sero, bind].

dēsiderium, ī, N., *a longing for.*

dēsidero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *want, desire, feel the want of* (33).

dēsilio⁴ [de; salio], īre, siluī, sultum, *leap down.*

dēsino,² ere, dēsivī (dēsī), dēsī-
tum, *leave off, cease.*

dēsipio,³ ere, *to be foolish.*

dēspero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to despair of.*

dēsprocio,³ ere, spexī, spectrum, *to look down on, despise.*

dēstitūtus, a, um, *left alone.*

dēsūm, esse, fui, *to be wanting.*

dēterreo,² ēre, uī, itum, *to terrify, alarm.*

dētrimentum, ī, N., *loss, damage* (de; tero: 35).

dētrūdo,³ ere, sī, sum, *to thrust away, push back.*

deus, ī, M., plur. deī, diī or dī (p. 5. ē), *a god, divinity.*

dēvasto,¹ āre, ātum (no perf.), *to lay waste.*

dēversor,¹ arī, ātus, *turn aside.*

dēversōrium, ī, N., *a resting-place, inn.*

dēvinco,³ ere, vicī, victum, *to conquer.*

dexter, tera (tra), terum (trum), *right, right hand.*

†DIC, say (dico,² disco,³ dico¹).

dicio, ōnis, F., *sway, subjection.*

dico,² ere, xī, ctum, *say, tell* (64); imperat., dic.

dictito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *keep saying, repeat.*

didici, see **disco**.²

Didō, ōnis (or Dīdūs), F., *Dido, queen of Carthage.*

diēs, diēī, M. (rarely F.), *day.*

diffēro, ferre, distulī, dilātum, *to delay, differ, defer.*

difficilis, e, *difficult.*

diffugio,² ere, fugī, *scatter, flee away.*

diffundo,³ ere, fudī, fūsum, *pour far and wide, pour out, spread.*

digitus, ī, M., *finger, toe.*

dignitās, tātis, F., *dignity.*

dignor, arī, ātus, *to deem worthy.*

dignus, a, um, *worthy* (abl.).

dilābor,² ī, lāpsus, *fall apart, glide away.*

diligēns, tis, *diligent.*

diligenter, *diligently.*

diligentia, ae, F., *diligence*.
dilligo,³ ere, lexi, lectum, *love*
 (less strong than **amo**: 11).
dimico,¹ are, avi or ui, atum, *to*
fight, contend (90).
dimidium, i, N., *half*.
dimitto,³ ere, misi, missum, *send*
away, dismiss.
Dion, onis, M., *Dion*, a patriot of
 Sicily.
directus, a, um (part. of **dirigo**),
straight, perpendicular.
direptio, onis, F., *plundering*.
dirimo,³ ere, emi, emptum, *to*
divide, put asunder [**dis**, **emo**].
dirus, a, um, *dreadful* (93).
Dis, Ditis, *Pluto*, god of the
 Lower World.
dis (in comp.), *apart*.
discēdo,³ ere, cessi, cessum, *de-*
part, pass away, cease.
discepto,¹ are, avi, atum, *to dis-*
pute, discuss.
discessus, ūs, M., *departure,*
separation.
discidium, i [**discindo**], N., *sep-*
aration, parting, quarrel.
discindo, ere, cidi, cissum, *to*
cut apart, separate, divide.
disciplina, ae, F., *system of teach-*
ing, discipline, training.
discipulus, i, M., *scholar, dis-*
ciple.
disco,³ ere, didici, *to learn*.
discordia, ae, F., *discord*.
disorimen, inis, N., *decision* (by
 conflict), *crisis, peril*.
discurro,³ ere, curri (cucurri),
 cursum, *to run about*.
disertus, a, um, *eloquent* (72).
dispar, paris, *unequal, unlike*.
disputo,¹ are, avi, atum, *to dis-*
pute (think apart), *discuss,*
deliver an opinion.
dissēnsio, onis, F., *disagreement*.
dissentio,⁴ ire, sēnsi, sum, *to*
disagree.
dissimilis, e, *unlike*.
distinctē, *distinctly*.
distinctus, a, um [**distinguo**],
studded, marked, set-off.

distineo [**teneo**²], ere, ui, ten-
 tum, *to hold apart, divide*.
distinguo,³ ere, nxi, nctum, *to*
set-off, mark, distinguish.
disto,¹ are, *to be distant or apart,*
to differ.
dītor, dītissimus, *richer, richest*
 (used as compar. and superl.
 of **dives**).
diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, *long* (of
 time), *in a long time*.
diūturnitās, atis, F., *long dura-*
tion.
diūturnus, a, um, *long* (in time),
lasting, durable, long con-
tinued.
diversus, a, um, *inconsistent*.
dīves, itis, *rich*.
divido,³ ere, isī, isum, *to divide*.
divinus, a, um, *divine, godlike,*
superhuman.
divitiae, arum, F., *riches, wealth*
 (78).
do, dare, dēdi, dātum, *give* (37);
 in compos., *place*.
doceo,³ ere, docui, doctum, *teach,*
tell (followed by two acc.).
doctor, ōris, M., *teacher*.
doctus, a, um, *learned, skilled*.
doleo,³ ere, dolui, *be painful, feel*
pain, grief, suffer (with abl. of
 that from which one suffers).
dolor, ōris, M., *pain, grief* (38).
dolus, i, M., *trick, fraud, craft*.
domesticus, a, um, *of the house*
or family.
domi (loc.), *at home*.
domicilium, i, N., *home, resi-*
dence.
domina, ae, F., *queen, mistress*.
dominātus, ūs, M., *dominion,*
tyranny.
dominor,¹ ari, atus, *to rule, be*
master or tyrant.
dominus, i, M., *master, lord;*
domine (voc.), *sir*.
domo,¹ are, domui, domitum,
subdue, tame, break in.
domus, ūs, F. (p. 18. b), *house;*
domi, at home (39).
dōnec, *until*.

dōno,¹ āre, āvī, ātum (§ 51, 1. c),
to give, present (37).

dōnum, ī, N., gift (40).

dormio,⁴ ire, ivi, itum, to sleep.

dōs, dōtis (g. pl. ium), F., dowry.

Druidēs, um, *Druids*, the priestly class of Gaul.

dubitatio, ōnis, F., doubt.

dubito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum (with an or quin), doubt; (with infin.), hesitate.

dubius, a, um, doubtful.

duc, lead (**dūco**,³ **dux**).

ducenti, ae, a, two hundred.

dūco,³ ere, dūxī, dūctum; imperat., **dūc**, to lead, hold, think.

dulcēdo, inis, F., charm, sweetness.

dulcis, e, sweet, fresh (of water).

dum, with indic., while; with subj. (generally), until.

dūmētum, ī, N., bramble-thicket.

dūmus, ī, M., brier, bramble.

duo, ae, o (see p. 7), two.

duplico,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, double.

dūritia, ae, F., hardness.

dūro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, endure, last, hold out.

dūrus, a, um, hard, hardy (93).

dux, ducis, C., leader, guide (42).

H

ē (**ex**), from, out of (1); in compos., out, completely.

ea, fem. of **is**; **eam**, her.

ecquid, what? any, at all?

edāx, ācis, greedy.

ēdisco,³ ere, didicī, to learn thoroughly.

ēditus, a, um (part. of **ēdo**), prominent.

ēdo,³ ere, ēdidi, ēditum, exhibit, put forth, utter, produce.

ēdo, edere or esse, ēdi, ēsum (Gr. p. 80), eat.

effemino,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, debase by luxury, enfeeble [**fēmina**].

effero, ferre, extulī, elātum, carry out, carry away.

efficientia, ae, F., efficacy, potency.
efficio,³ [ex; facio], ere, fecī, fecum, make out, effect.

effigēs, iēi, F., an image, apparition.

effluo,³ ere, fluxī, to flow out, or away.

effodio,³ ere, fōdī, fossum, dig up or out.

effugio,³ ere, fugī, to flee away, escape from.

egēs, tis (part. of **egeō**), destitute (82).

egeō,² ēre, egui, be destitute, need (abl. or gen.).

Egeria, ae, F., nymph of a grotto near Rome.

Egerius, ī, M., a proper name.

egēstās, ātis, F., poverty, destitution.

ēgi, **ēgeram**, see ago.³

ego, mei, mihi, mē (p. 18), I.

egomet, I myself.

ēgredior,³ dī, gressus, to go forth.

ēgregius, a, um, excellent, distinguished, unusual, fine, remarkable [e; grex].

ējus, eī (gen. and dat. of **is**), his, hers, &c.

elātus, a, um (part. of **effero**), carried away, uplifted.

ēlegāns, tis, fine, elegant.

ēlegantia, ae, F., elegance.

elementum, ī, N., beginning.

elephāntus, ī, M., elephant.

ēlevo,¹ āre, ātum (no perf.), disparage, make light of [levis].

ēligo,³ ere, ēlēgi, ēlectum, pick out, elect, select, choose.

ēloquēns, eloquent (72).

ēloquentia, ae, F., eloquence.

ēlūdo,³ ere, sī, sum, to delude, mock, make game of [lūdus].

ēmergo,³ ere, sī, sum, to emerge.

ēmineo,² ēre, uī, to project, be conspicuous [ē; maneo].

emo,³ ere, ēmī, emptum, buy (originally take).

emptor, ōris, M., purchaser.

empturio,⁴ ire, I want to buy.

ēn (exclam.), behold! ho!

ēnervo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *enervate, unman, enfeeble* [nervus].
enim, *for* (following one or more words).
Ennius, ī, M., *Ennius*, an early poet of Rome.
ēsis, is, M., *sword* (poetic).
ēnumero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to recount, reckon* (numerus).
eō, *thither*.
eō . . quō (with comparatives), *the . . the*: see § 106. c.
eo, īre, īvī, itum (p. 39), *go* (43).
Epaminōndās, ac, a general and statesman of Thebes.
epistola (ula), ae, F., *a letter*.
epulae, ārum, F., *banquet* (36).
eques, itis, M., *rider, horseman, knight*; pl., *cavalry* (equus).
equester, tris, tre, *belonging to cavalry, equestrian*.
equidē, *in fact, for my part* (concessive), *it is true, to be sure*.
equitātus, ūs, M., *cavalry*.
equito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to ride*.
equus, ī, M., *horse*.
ergā, *towards* (acc.).
ergō, *therefore, then*.
Eriphylē, ēs, F., wife of Amphiarāus.
ēripio,⁸ ere, ripuī, reptum, *snatch away, remove, rescue* (rapio).
erro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *wander, err, stray, mistake*.
ērudio,⁴ īre, īvī (ii), itum, *to instruct, train* (e; rudis).
ērumpto,³ ere, ērupī, ēruptum, *to break out, burst forth, begin to flow* (verb-root RUP).
esca, ac, F., *food, bait*.
esse (see sum), *to be*.
ēsurio,⁴ īre, īvī (ii), itum, *to fast, be hungry* (desider. of edo).
et, *and even*; **et** . . **et**, *both . . and*; **on the one hand . . on the other**.
etenim, *for* (you see, you know).
etiam, *also, even, yes*.
Etruscus, a, um, *Etruscan*.
eum, *him* [is].

Eurōtās, ae, M., a river of Sparta.
ēvādo,⁸ ere, sī, sum, *come out, escape, pass out*.
ēvenio,⁴ īre, vēnī, ventum, *to come forth, happen* (4).
ēventus, ūs, M., *event, result*.
ēverto,³ ere, tī, sum, *overturn*.
ex, *out of, from, of, directly after, on account of, according to* (1).
exanimo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to render lifeless* (ex; anima).
exaudio,⁴ īre, īvī (ii), itum, *hear* (at a distance), *overhear*.
excēdo,³ ere, cēssī, cēssum, *to go forth, withdraw*.
excello,⁸ ere, ūi, sum, *to excel*.
excipio,³ ere, cēpī, ceptum, *to overtake, receive, welcome* (25).
excito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to rouse, excite, stir up* (ex; cieo).
exclāmo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *cry out, exclaim*.
exclūdo,³ clūdere, clūsī, clūsum, *shut out, hatch* (ex; claudio).
excūsatio, ōnis, F., *excuse*.
exedo,³ ere, ēdī, ēsum, *eat out, consume, wear away*.
exemplum, ī, N., *sample, pattern, example*.
exeo, īre, īi, itum, *go forth* (3).
exerceo,³ cēre, cui, citum, *keep busy, manage*; (in passive), *train one's self* (ex; arceo).
exercitatio, ōnis, F., *exercise*.
exercitus, ūs, M., *army* (5).
exēsus, see exedo.
exigo,³ ere, ēgī, actum, *to drive out* (ex; ago).
exiguus, a, um, *small, mean, scanty*.
exilis, e, *slender, feeble* (44).
existimatio, ōnis, F., *estimate, judgment*.
existimo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *think, deem, reckon* (aestimo: 92).
existo, see exsisto.
exitium, ī, N., *destruction, ruin* (ex; eo: lit., *a going out*).
exordium, ī, N., *the beginning, origin* (ex; ordior).
exorior,⁴ īrī, ortus, *arise*.

expeditus, a, um, *unencumbered, rapid* (ex; pes = foot-free).
expello,³ ere, expulī, expulsum, *to drive out, expel*.
expergēfacio,³ ere, fēcī, factum, *to rouse, awaken*.
expergiscor,³ cī, experrectus, *to rouse one's self, wake*.
experimentum, i, M., *trial, experiment*.
experior,⁴ irī, expertus, *to try, prove, test*.
expers, tis, *without a share, destitute* (ex; pars).
expeto,³ ere, petivī (ii), petitum, *to seek, claim* (79).
explico,¹ āre, uī, itum (or āvī, ātum), *to unfold, explain*.
explōrātor, ōris, M., *searcher, scout*.
exprimo,³ ere, pressī, pressum, *to press out, express* (premo).
exprōmo,³ ere, mpsī, mptum, *to take out, exhibit, declare*.
expugno,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to take by siege, storm, conquer*.
expulsor, ōris, M., *expeller*.
expulsus, see **expello**.³
exsilio,⁴ ire, siluī, sultum, *to leap forth, start up* (salio).
exsilium, i, N., *exile, banishment* (exsul).
exsisto,³ ere, stitī, stitum, *arise, appear, exist* (sisto, STA).
expecto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *look out for, expect, wait*.
extinguo,³ ere, stinxī, nctum, *to extinguish, destroy, kill*.
exsto,¹ stāre (no perf. or sup.), *stand forth, rise*.
exsul, ulis, C., *an exile*.
extemplō, *instantly*.
externus, a, um, *foreign; as a noun, stranger*.
extrā (acc.), *outside of, beyond*.
extraho,³ ere, traxī, tractum, *draw out, drag*.
extrēmus, a, um, *last; extrēma insula, the end of the island*.

F.

‡FA, say (for, ¹ fātum).
fabricārier = fabricārī, old inf. of
fabricor,¹ ārī, ātus, *manufacture, fabricate, forge*.
fābula, ae, F., *fable, tale* (for).
‡FAC, make, do (facio).³
facesso,³ ere, i, itum, *to do eagerly; facesso negotium, bring trouble upon* (dat.).
facētia, ārum, F., *wit, fun*.
facētus, a, um, *elegant, funny*.
facile, easily.
facilis, e, easy.
facinus, oris, N., *act, crime* (of violence: 32).
facio,³ ere, fēcī, factum, *make, do; imperat., fac; pass., fio*.
facultās, ātis, F., *opportunity, ability* (88).
fāgus, i, F., *beech-tree*.
fallāx, ācis, *treacherous, deceitful*.
fallo,³ ere, fefellī, falsum, *cheat, deceive, disappoint* (45).
falsō, *falsely*.
falsus, a, um (part. of fallo), *deceived, false*.
falx, falcis, F., *sickle, pruning-knife*.
fāma, ae, F., *common talk, report, fame* (46).
famēs, is, F., *hunger, famine*.
familia, ae, F., *household, family, especially the slaves* (famulus).
familiāris, e, *belonging to a family, familiar; (noun), friend*.
fasciulus, i, M., *bundle, faggot*.
fateor,² ērī, fassus, *to confess*.
fatigo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to weary, distress*.
fātum, i, N., *fate, destiny*.
faucēs, ium, F., *jaws, throat, passage* (into any thing).
fautor, ōris, M., *favorer, supporter*.
faveo,² ēre, fāvī, fautum, *to favor* (dat.).

fax, facis, F., *torch, firebrand*.
fēcundus, a, um, *fertile, productive, prolific*.
fēlis (or **fēlēs**), is, C., *cat*.
fēlix, icis, *happy, fortunate, of good omen* (47).
fēmina, ae, F., *woman, female* (root FE: "the producer").
fenestra, ae, F., *window*.
fēnus, oris, N., *interest, usury, profit* (root FE, in **fetus**).
fera, ae, F., *wild creature, wild animal or beast* (14).
ferāx, ācis, *fertile, productive*.
ferē, almost, *for the most part, about*.
ferēns, tis, *bearing, bringing*.
fēriæ, ārum, F., *holidays*.
ferio⁴ (no perf. or sup.), *to strike*.
feritās, ātis, F., *wildness, fierceness*.
fermē, *nearly, almost, about*.
fero, ferre, tulī, lātum (p. 39); *bear, carry, tell; prae se ferre, to show, exhibit*.
ferōx, ōcis, *fierce, cruel* (93).
ferreus, a, um, *of iron*.
ferrum, ī, N., *iron*.
fertilis, e, *fertile*.
fertilitās, ātis, F., *fertility*.
ferus, a, um, *wild, fierce* (93).
ferveo² ēre, buī, *to glow, burn, be hot*.
ferus, a, um, *weary*.
festino¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to hasten*.
festus, a, um, *festal*. [*prolific*.
fētus, a, um, *producing, full*,
†FID, *split* (**fīndo**,³ **fissio**).
fidēlis, e, *faithful*.
Fidēnās, ātis, of *Fidenæ*.
fidēs, is, F., *string*; plur., *lyre*.
fidēs, eī, F., *faith*.
fīdo⁸ ere, fīsus, *to trust* (dat.).
fīdus, a, um, *faithful*.
†FIG, *shape* (**fīngo**,³ **fictilis**).
figūra, ae, F., *figure, shape*.
figūro¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *fashion, shape*.
filia, ae, F. (see p. 4, a), *daughter*.
filiola, ae, F., *little daughter*.
filiolus, ī, M., *little son*.

filius, ī, M., *son*; voc., *fili*.
fīndo³ ere, fīdi, fīssum, *to split, divide, separate*.
fīngo⁸ ere, fīnxi, fīctum, *fashion, form, imagine* (root FIG).
fīnio⁴ ire, īvī (ii), ītum, *to limit, bound, fix*.
fīnis, is, M., *end*; plur., *bounds, limits, territory* (48).
fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring*.
fīo, fierī, factus, *become, be made, be done* (used as passive of **facio**:⁸ p. 39).
fīrmus, a, um, *firm, steady*.
fīssio, ōnis, F., *cleft, cleaving*.
fīstula, ae, F., *pipe, reed, flute*.
flagrāns, tis, *blazing*.
flāmen, inis, N., *blast of wind*.
flamma, ae, F., *blaze, flame*.
flāvesco⁸ ere, *to grow yellow*.
flāvus, a, um, *yellow*.
flecto³ ere, xi, xum, *to bend, turn*.
flextuosus, a, um, *crooked, bending*.
flōrēns, tis, *flourishing*.
flōreo² ēre, flōrui, *to flourish, bloom* (flos).
flōresco⁸ ere, *begin to bloom*.
flōs, flōris, M., *flower*.
†FLU, flow (**fluo**,³ **fumen**).
fluctus, ūs, M., *wave, flood*.
flūmen, inis, N., *flowing water, stream, river* (49).
†FOD, dig (**fodio**,³ **fossa**).
fluo⁸ ere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow*.
foculus, ī, M., *fire-pan, brazier*.
focus, ī, M., *fire-place, hearth*.
fodio⁸ ere, fōdī, fossum, *to dig, pick*.
foedus, eris, N., *a treaty, league*.
foedus, a, um, *foul, disgraceful*.
folium, ī, N., *leaf*.
fōns, fontis, M., *spring, fountain*.
fore, will be (fut. inf. of **esse**).
forma, ae, F., *inward form* (organization), *form, shape*.
formica, ae, F., *ant*.
formīdo, inis, F., *dread, terror*.
formīdolōsus, a, um, *formidable*.
formōsus, a, um, *beautiful, shapely* (91).

formula, ae, F., *little model, pattern, rule, writ* (legal).
 fortis, e, *sturdy, strong, brave, valiant* (23).
 fortiter, *bravely*.
 fortitūdo, inis, F., *bravery, courage, fortitude*.
 fortuna, ae, F., *fortune*.
 fortunātus, a, um, *fortunate* (47).
 forum, ī, N., *forum* (public square).
 fossa, ae, F., *ditch, trench* (FOD).
 foveo,¹ ēre, fōvi, fōtum, *warm, fondle, cherish, brood over*.
 †FRAG, break (*frango,³ fragor*).
 fragilis, e, *frail, easily broken*.
 fragor, ōris, M., *crash, crashing noise* (97).
 frango,³ ere, frēgī, fractum, *break*.
 frāter, tris, M., *brother*.
 fraudo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to cheat, deprive* (45).
 frēno,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to check, curb*.
 fretum, ī, N., *strait, a narrow sea* (67).
 frigidus, a, um, *cold*.
 frius, oris, N., *cold*.
 frōns, dis, F., *leaf*.
 frōns, tis, F., *brow, forehead*.
 †FRU, enjoy (*fruo,³ fruges*).
 fructuōsus, a, um, *fruitful, profitable*.
 fructus, tūs, M., *fruit* (94), *fruits* (generally), *profit*.
 frūgēs, um, F., *grain, produce*.
 frūgī (a dat. used as indecl. adj.), *good, honest, thrifty*.
 frūgifer, fera, ferum, *productive*.
 frūmentum, ī, N., *grain* (94).
 fruor,³ ī, fructus, *enjoy* (abl.).
 frustrā, *in vain*.
 frustror,¹ āri, ātus, *to deceive, disappoint, elude* (45).
 frustum, ī, N., *piece, fragment*.
 †FUD, pour (*fundo,³ fusus*).
 fui, see sum.
 fugio,³ ere, fūgī, itum, *to flee*.
 fugo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to drive, put to flight*.
 fulgeo,² ēre, fulsī, *to shine, glow*.

fulgur, uris, N., *lightning* (75).
 fulmen, inis, N., *thunderbolt, flash of lightning* (75).
 fumo,¹ āre, *to smoke*.
 funditus, utterly, *from the bottom*.
 fundo,³ ere, fūdi, fūsum, *to pour, pour forth*.
 fundus, ī, M., *ground, estate*.
 fūnestus, a, um, *fatal*.
 fungor,³ ī, functus, *to fulfil, perform* (abl.).
 fūr, fūris, M., *thief*.
 furor, ōris, M., *madness* (raving), *rage* (mad).
 fūror,¹ āri, ātus, *steal* (by craft).
 furtim (adv.), *by stealth*.
 fustis, is, M., *club*.
 fūsus, a, um [*fundo*], *poured forth, routed*.
 futūrus, a, um [*sum*], *about to be*.

G.

Gāius, Caius, M., a proper name, e.g., C. Laelius.
 galea, ae, F., *helmet*.
 Gallia, ae, F., *Gaul*, including France, with part of Belgium and Switzerland.
 Gallicus, a, um, *of Gaul, Gallic*.
 gallina, ae, F., *a hen*.
 Gallus, ī, M., *a Gaul*.
 gallus, ī, M., *a cock*.
 gannio,⁴ īre, *to snarl, yelp*.
 garrulus, a, um, *chattering*.
 gaudeo,² ēre, gāvīsus, *to rejoice*.
 gelū, ūs, N., *frost, cold*.
 geminus, a, um, *twin*.
 gemma, ae, F., *a bud, gem, jewel*.
 gemitus, ūs, M., *groan, sigh*.
 gemmātus, a, um, *jewelled*.
 †GEN, produce (*gnascor, gigno*).
 gener, erī, M., *son-in-law*.
 genero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to generate, produce*.
 genetrīx, trīcis, F., *mother*.
 genitus, a, um (*gigno*³), *born*.
 gēns, gentis, F., *race, nation* (50).
 genu, ūs, N., *knee*.

genus, eris, N., *race, family, descent, kind, class* (50).

Germānus, a, um, *German*.

gero,³ ere, gessi, gestum, *carry, carry on, bear, wear, do* [GES]

gestus, ūs, M., *gesture, bearing; agere gestūs, make motions*.

gigno,⁸ ere, genui, genitum, *pro-duce* (verb-root GEN : gi-*geno*).

glaciālis, e, *icy*.

glaciēs, ēī, F., *ice*.

gladiātor, ōris, M., *swordsman, gladiator*.

gladiolus, ī, M., *little sword*.

gladius, ī, M., *sword* (16).

glæba, ae, F., *sod, turf* (of untilled ground).

glōria, ae, F., *glory* (46).

glōrior,¹ āri, ātus, *glory, glory in* (abl.), *boast* (with accus. of a neuter pronoun).

†GNO, *know* (gnosco, gnovi).

Gracchus, ī, M., the name of two brothers, Tiberius and Caius, leaders of the people's party in Rome.

gradus, ūs, M., *step, stride*.

Graecia, ae, F., *Greece*.

Graecus, a, um, *Greek*; Graeci, pl., *the Greeks*.

grāmen, inis, N., *grass*.

grandia, e, *large, big, tall* (65); — natu, *old*.

grando, inis, F., *hail*.

grassor,¹ āri, ātus, *to roam, advance upon*.

grātia, ae, F., *favor, influence, good will* (88); gratiā (with gen.), *for the sake of*; plur., *thanks*.

grātiōsus, a, um, *favorite, popular*.

grātulatio, ōnis, F., *congratulation*.

grātus, a, um, *pleasing*.

gravātē, *reluctantly*.

gravis, e, *heavy, weighty, respectable, influential, oppressive*.

graviter, *heavily, severely*.

grex, gregis, M., *flock, herd* (51).

grunio,⁴ īre, īvi, itum, *to grunt*.

gubernō,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *steer, govern*.

gusto,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to taste*.

gymnasium, ī, N., *gymnasium*.

H.

habeo,² ēre, uī, itum, *hold, have, keep, imply, have in itself, consider, have for; bene se habet, that is right*.

habilis, e, *handy*.

habito,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *inhabit, live*.

habitus, ūs, M., *habit, suit, bearing*.

haereo,² ēre, sī, sum, *to cling, stick*.

haesito,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to hesitate* (intens. of haereo).

hāmus, ī, M., *link, hook*.

Hannibal, alis, M., *Hannibal, a Carthaginian general*.

hasta, ae, F., *spear* (16).

haud, *not* (modifying only one word).

haurio,⁴ īre, sī, stum, *to drain, drink in*.

Helvētīi, ōrum, *people of Helvetia* (Switzerland).

hem (interj.), *ah! indeed!*

Henna, ae, F., *Enna, a vale in Sicily*.

Hennēnsis, e, *of Enna*.

Hēraclidēs, is, M., *a name of a philosopher*.

herba, ae, F., *grass, turf*.

Herculēs, is, M., *the most famous hero of Greek fable*.

herī, *yesterday*.

hērōicus, a, um, *heroic*.

hērōs, ōis (acc. sing. ōa, pl. ōās), *hero* (a Greek word).

herus, ī, M., *master* (less approved spelling for erus).

heu, *alas!*

heus (interj.), *ho! hallo!*

hīberna, ōrum, N., *winter quarters of an army*.

Hibernia, ae, F., *Ireland*.

hic, here.

hic, haec, hōc, this (near the speaker : 52).

hiems (hiemps), hiemis, F., winter, storm.

hilaris, e, cheerful.

hilariter, cheerfully.

hinc, hence, next; hinc . . hinc, on this side . . on the other.

hinnio,⁴ ire, to neigh, whinny.

hio,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to gape.

hirundo, inis, F., a swallow.

Hispania, ae, F., Spain.

Hispanus, a, um, Spanish, Spaniard.

histōria, ae, F., history.

hodiē, to-day.

hodiernus, a, um, to-day's; hodierno die, to-day.

Homērus, ī, M., Homer, the Greek poet.

homo, hominis. M., man (as a human being), *person, fellow* (53; see p. 125).

honestus, a, um, becoming, honorable.

honor (ōs), ōris, M., respect, honor (46).

honōrificē, honorably; — appello, salute with titles of honor.

honōrificus, a, um (comp. -centior; superl. -centissimus), *honorable, giving honor.*

honōro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to honor (do honor to).

hōra, ae, F., hour; omnium horarum homo, a man for any thing.

Horātius, ī, M., a Roman name

horreo,² ēre, horruī, shudder (at).

horridus, a, um, rough, horrid.

hortor, ¹ āri, ātus, exhort.

hortulus, ī, M., little garden.

hortus, ī, M., garden.

hospes, itis. M., host, guest.

hospitium, ī, N., office of host, hospitality, an inn.

hostilis, e, of an enemy.

hostis, is, C., enemy (54).

hūc, hither.

hūmānitās, ātis, F., refinement, courtesy, culture.

hūmānus, a, um, of man, human.

hūmēns, tis, moist.

humerus, ī, M., shoulder.

hūmidus, a, um, moist.

humilis, e, low, lowly.

humo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, bury.

humus, ī, F., ground; humī, on the ground.

huncine (interrog.), acc. of **hic** = **huncne**.

I

I, go (eo, ire; iter).

Iāsōn, onis, M., Jason, leader of the Argonauts.

ibi, there.

ibis, is, F., ibis, a sacred bird of Egypt.

ico,² ere, icī, ictum, to strike, hit.

idem, eadem, idem, the same.

identidem, again and again, now and then.

ideō, so, therefore, for this purpose.

idōlon, ī, N. (a Greek noun), an image, apparition.

idōneus, a, um, fit, apt, capable (with **ad** or rel. clause).

igitur, therefore.

ignārus, a, um, unaware, ignorant.

ignāvia, ae, F., sloth, cowardice.

ignāvus, a, um, cowardly, sluggish.

ignis, is, M., fire.

ignōro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to be ignorant; pass., to be unknown.

ignosco,² ere, nōvī, nōtum, to pardon (dat. of person : GNO).

ille, illa, illud, that (away from speaker : 52).

illūc, to that place.

illūstro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to shine upon, brighten, bring to light.

illūstris, e, bright, well-lighted, illustrious. [tion.

imāgo, inis, F., image, apparition.

imber, bris (ium), M., a rain-storm (75).

imitor,¹ āri, ātus, *imitate*.

immānis, e, *monstrous* (93).

immānitās, ātis, F., *cruelty, ferocity*.

immemor, oris, *unmindful*.

immēnsus, a, um, *measureless, immense, unbounded*.

immitto,³ ere, mīsi, missum, *to let in, send upon*.

immo, nay, on the contrary, nay rather.

immortālis, e, *immortal*.

immortālītās, ātis, F., *immortality* (in-; mors).

immūtābilis, e, *unchangeable*.

impavidus, a, um, *without terror* (in-; paveo).

impedimentum, ī, N., *hindrance*; plur. *baggage*.

impedio,⁴ īre, īvī, itum, *to hinder, impede* (in-; pes).

impendeo,² ēre, *to overhang, threaten*.

impendo,³ ere, dī, sum, *to pay, bestow* (weigh out to).

imperātor, ōris, M., *commander* (in chief: 42).

imperitus, a, um, *unacquainted, unskilled* (gen.).

imperium, ī, N., *authority, command, state* (as a power: 88.)

impero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *command, require* (dat. and ut).

impetro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *accomplish, obtain* (a request).

impetus, ūs, M., *attack, violence, impulse*; animī *impetus, impetuosity of feeling*.

impiger, gra, grum, *vigorous*.

impius, a, um, *impious, wicked*.

impleo,² ēre, ēvī, ētum, *to fill*.

implico,¹ āre, cui, citum (or āvī, ātum), *entwine, entangle*.

implōro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to implore, entreat*.

impōno,³ ere, posui, positum, *to place upon, impose, inflict*.

importo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to import*.

impotēns, tis, *impotent, uncontrollable*.

impotentia, ae, F., *impotence, ungovernableness*.

improbis, a, um, *bad, wicked, mischievous, obstinate* (66).

impūbēs, is or eris, *youthful, beardless*.

impudēns, tis, *shameless*.

impudentia, ae, F., *impudence*.

imūs, a, um, *lowest, foot of*.

in (acc.), *into, for, towards*; (abl.), *in, in regard to, upon*.

inānis, e, *empty, unreal*.

incantāmentum, ī, N., *enchantment*.

incēdo,³ ere, cēssi, cēssum, *move on, advance*.

incendium, ī, N., *fire* (conflagration).

incendo,³ ere, dī, sum, *set on fire, inflame*.

incertus, a, um, *uncertain*.

inchoo (or *inchoo*),¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to begin, undertake*.

incoīdo,³ ere, cidi, cāsum, *to fall upon, happen* (in; cado).

incoīdo,³ ere, cidi, cisum, *to cut upon, inscribe* (in; caedo).

incipio,³ ere, cēpī, ceptum, *to begin* (in; capio, take hold).

inoīto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to incite, rouse*.

inclūdo,³ ere, sī, sum, *to shut in, enclose* (in; claudio).

incolo,³ ere, colui, *to inhabit*.

incolumis, e, *safe, unhurt*.

incommodum, ī, N., *annoyance, inconvenience, disaster* (by a euphemism: 35).

inconditus, a, um, *unfashioned, rude* (ill put together).

incrēdibilis, e, *incredible*.

increpo,¹ āre, uī, itum, *to chide, shout at*.

incultus, a, um, *uncultivated, rude* (in; colo).

incumbo,³ ere, cubui, cubitum, *lie upon, devote one's self to*.

inoūnābula, ōrum, N., *cradle*.

indē, *thence, then*.

indecōrus, a, um, *unbecoming, dishonorable*.

index, icis, C., *guide*.

indico,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *point out, indicate*.

indico,² ere, xī, ctum, *to declare*.

indigeo,² ēre, uī [egeō], *to need* (with gen: 26).

indignor,¹ ārī, ātus, *to be indignant, deem unworthy*.

indignus, a, um, *unworthy* (abl.).

inditus, a, um, *put on, given*.

indo,² ere, didī, ditum, *to put upon, bestow*.

indolēs, is, F., *talent, disposition* (13).

indūco,² ere, xī, ctum, *to lead or bring on*.

indūro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *harden*.

indulgentia, ae, F., *indulgence*.

indulgeo,² ēre, si, sum, *to indulge* (dat.).

induo,² ere, uī, ūtum, *to put on*.

industria, ae, F., *industry, diligence*; de —, *on purpose*.

indūtus, a, um, *clad*.

inedia, ae, F., *fasting, famine*.

ineptē, *foolishly*.

inerro,¹ āre, *to wander in or over, pass before* (dative).

iners, tis, *stupid, lazy*.

infacētus, a, um, *without humor*.

infāmis, e, *ill-famed, infamous*.

infāndus, a, um, *shocking, unspeakable*.

infāns, tis, C., *infant*. [tunate.

infelix, icis, *unfruitful, unfor-*

infēnsus, a, um, *angry, hostile*.

inferior, ius (comp. of *inferus*), *lower, inferior*. [below.

infernus, a, um, *of the world*

infero, ferre, tulī, lātum (illātum), *bring or throw in or upon*;

bellum infero, *make war*.

inferus, a, um, *lower, below*.

infestus, a, um, *hostile, dangerous, in a dangerous condition*.

infidus, a, um, *unfaithful*.

infimus, a, um, *lowest*.

infinitus, a, um, *unlimited, infinite, immeasurable* (finis).

infirmus, a, um, *feeble, infirm*.

inflammo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to set on fire*.

inflātus, a, um, *inflated, puffed up*.

infortūnium, ī, N., *misfortune*.

ingeniōsus, a, um, *full of genius*.

ingenium, ī, N., *nature, mind, genius* (13).

ingēns, tis, *vast, monstrous* (65).

ingenuus, a, um, *noble, free-born* (62).

inhabito,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *inhabit*.

inhūmānus, a, um, *rude, churlish, ill-bred, barbarous* (p. 125).

inimicus, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile*; *personal enemy* (54).

iniquus, a, um, *unjust (aequus)*.

initium, ī, N., *beginning*; *initio*, *at first* (in; eo, entering on).

injicio (inicio),² ere, jēci, jectum, *to cast upon* (in; jacio).

injūcundus, a, um, *unpleasant*.

injussū (abl.), *without orders*

injūria, ae, F., *injury*.

injūstē, *unjustly*.

injūstus, a, um, *unjust*.

inlātus, a, um, *brought upon or against* (infero).

innātus, a, um, *inborn, innate*.

innocēns, tis, *harmless, innocent*.

innocentia, ae, F., *innocence*.

innuo,² ere, uī, ūtum, *nod, hint*.

inopia, ae, F., *want, need*.

inquam (def. Gr. p. 81), *say* (always in direct discourse

and following some of the words said): *said he, &c.* (64).

inrīdeo,² ēre, rīsī, rīsum, *to mock, laugh at* (acc.).

inrumpo,² ere, rūpi, ruptum, *to break in or upon, burst in*.

insānio,² ire, īvi, itum, *be insane*.

insānus, a, um, *unsound, insane*.

insectum, ī, N., *insect, fly*.

insequor,² sequī, secutus, *to follow closely, pursue* (95).

insero,² ere, serui, sertum, *to weave in, bind in*.

insero,² ere, sēvi, situm, *to implant*.

insideo,² ēre, sēdī, sessum, *to sit upon, be established.*

insidiae, ārum, F., *ambush, plot, treachery.*

insidior,¹ āri, ātus, *plot against, lie in wait for (as game).*

insignia, e, *marked, distinguished.*

insitus, a, um (part. of *insero*), *fixed, implanted.*

insolēns, tis, *unused, insolent, arrogant.*

insomnium, ī, N., *sleeplessness.*

insono,¹ āre, sonuī, *resound over, rattle (dat.).*

instabilis, e, *varying, unsteady.*

instituo,³ ere, uī, ūtum, *to establish, train (statuo).*

institutum, ī, N., *institution (any thing established).*

insto,¹ āre, stitī, *to be at hand, insist on, threaten.*

instructus, a, um, *equipped, armed.*

instruo,³ ere, xī, ctum, *furnish, set in order, equip.*

insula, ae, F., *island.*

insum, esse, fuī, *to be in or on, belong (dat.).*

intactus, a, um, *untouched.*

integer, gra, grum, *sound, whole.*

integritās, ātis, F., *uprightness, soundness.*

intelligo (-lego),³ ere, xī, ctum, *to understand (inter; lego).*

intendo,³ ere, tendī, tentum, or sum, *strain, devote.*

intentus, a, um, *fixed, intent.*

inter (acc.), *between, among; inter sē, with each other.*

interdico,³ ere, xī, ctum, *interdict, forbid.*

interdiū, *by day, in the day time.*

interdum (adv.), *sometimes.*

intereā, *in the mean time.*

interest, erāt, &c., *it interests or is important (to the state, civitātis; to me, meā, § 222. a).*

interficio,³ ere, fecī, fectum, *to kill.*

interim, *meanwhile.*

interior, ius, *inner.*

intermisceo,² ēre, miscuī, mixtum or mistum, *minge among.*

interpellātor, ōris, M., *interrupter; sine interpellatore, without interruption.*

interrumpo,³ ere, rūpī, ruptum, *to break down, interrupt.*

intersum, esse, fuī, *to be present at or engaged in (dat.).*

intimus, a, um, *inmost.*

intrā (acc.), *within.*

intro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to enter.*

intulī, see *infero.*

intus (adv.), *within.*

inundo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to overflow, inundate (unda).*

inūtilis, e, *useless.*

invādo,³ ere, sī, sum, *to advance upon, attack, invade.*

invenio,⁴ ire, vēnī, ventum, *come upon, find (55).*

investigo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *track, trace, investigate (following a scent).*

invideo,² ēre, vidī, vīsum, *to envy (dat.).*

invidia, ae, F., *envy, jealousy, malice, odium (76).*

invidiōsus, a, um, *envious, odious.*

inviolātus, a, um, *unharméd.*

invisus, a, um, *hated.*

invito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *entertain, invite (with ad or in).*

invitus, a, um, *unwilling, reluctant.*

ipse, a, um, *self (emphatic), himself, herself, &c.*

ira, ae, F., *anger.*

irācundō (adv.), *with irascibility, with little patience.*

irācundus, a, um, *irascible, high-tempered, passionate.*

irascor,² ī, irātus, *to be angry.*

ire, see *eo* (p. 39).

is, ea, id, *he, she, it, that (52).*

Isocratēs, is, M., *an orator of Athens.*

iste, ista, istud, *that yonder, that of yours (52).*

ita, so, thus.

Italia, ae, F., Italy.

itaque, therefore, accordingly.

item, likewise, also.

iter, itineris, N., way, journey, march.

itero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to repeat.

iterum, again, a second time.

J.

†JAC, throw (jacio,² conjicio).

jaceo,² ēre, jacuī, jacitum, to lie, be low, lie low.

jacio,² ere, jēcī, jactum, throw, cast.

jactō,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, cast, toss, boast (intens. of jacio).

jam, now, already; jam nōn, no longer (with present); jam vērō, then again; (with future), presently; jam pridem non fui, it is long since I have been.

Jāniculum, ī, N., a hill of Rome.

jānuā, ae, F., doorway, door (86).

jocor,¹ āri, ātus, jest, joke.

jocus, ī, M.; pl., joca, ōrum, N., jest; per jocum, for fun.

Jovis, see Juppiter.

jubeo,² ēre, jussī, jussum (acc. and infin.), to order, command.

jūcunditās, ātis, F., pleasure, delight. [fu!]

jūcundus, a, um, p'asant, cheer-

jūdex, icis, C., judge, juror; in plural, properly jurors.

jūdicium, ī, N., judgment, court.

jūdico,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, judge, decide.

†JUG, join (jungo,² conjux).

jūglāns, andis, F., walnut.

jugum, ī, N., yoke, ridge of hill.

Jugurtha, ae, M., a king of Numidia.

Jūlius, ī, M., Julius. a man's name; as adj., of Julius.

jungo,² ere, nxi, nctum, to join, connect (JUG: 63).

Jūno, ōnis, F., Juno, queen of the gods.

Juppiter, Jovis, M., Juppiter, king of the gods.

jūs, jūris, N., right, justice (57).

jūs, jūris, N., broth.

jūstitia, ae, F., justice.

jūstus, a, um, just.

jussū (abl.), by command.

juvencus, ī, M., bullock.

juvenis, is, C., young person (from 20 to 40); gen. pl. um.

juventūs, ūtis, F., youth.

juvo,¹ āre, jūvī, jūtum, aid, help, do good, favor, please (acc.).

juxtā, near (acc.).

K.

Kalendae, ārum, F., Kalends (1st of the month).

Karthāgo, inis, F., Carthage.

L.

L. for Lucius, a Roman name.

labor (ōs), ōris, M., toil, hardship (58).

lābor,² ī, lāpsus, to fall, fail, decay, glide. [labor.]

labōriōsē (adv.), with great

labōriōsus, a, um, toilsome.

labōro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, toil, labor, trouble one's self.

labrum, ī, N., lip.

lāc, lactis, N., milk.

Lacedaemōn, ōnis, ōna, Lacedaemon or Sparta, a city of Greece.

Lacedaemōnius, a, um, Lacedaemonian, Spartan.

lacerātus, a, um, mangled.

lacero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to mangle.

lacertus, ī, M., the arm (above the elbow: comp. brachium).

lacrima, ae, F., tear.

lacus, cūs, M., lake (p. 18).

laedo,² ere, si, sum, to injure, hurt (acc.).

laetifico,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to make glad (laetus; facio).

laetitia, ae, F., *joy*.
 laetus, a, um, *glad, blooming, gladdening* (by abundance).
 laevus, a, um, *left* (left hand).
 lampas, adis (os), ada, adas, F., *lamp, torch*.
 lapis, idis, M., *a stone* (59).
 lapsus, a, um, *fallen* (lābor).
 lapsus, sūs, M., *flow*.
 laqueus, ī, M., *noose, snare*.
 largior,⁴ iri, itus, *to lavish, give lavishly* (37).
 largitās, ātis, F., *generosity, abundance, bounty*.
 largus, a, um, *broad*.
 Lars, tis, M., an Etruscan title.
 lateo,² ēre, latui, *be hidden* (with acc., *from*).
 laterculus, ī, M., *brick*.
 Latinus or Latius, a, um, *Latin* (of Latium).
 lātītūdo, inis, F., *breadth*.
 latro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to bark*.
 latro, ōnis, M., *robber*.
 latrōcinium, ī, N., *robbery*.
 latus, eris, N., *side*.
 lātus, a, um, *wide*.
 laudatio, ōnis, F., *praise, eulogy*.
 laudātus, a, um (part. of following), *much praised*.
 laudo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to praise*.
 laus, laudis, F., *praise* (46).
 lautus, a, um, *noble, elegant, dainty*; part. of
 lavo, āre or ere, lāvi or lavāvi, lavāt- laut- or lōtum, *to wash*.
 lectus, ī, M., *bed* (60).
 lēgātus, ī, M., *lieutenant, ambassador* (part. of lēgo: 42).
 legio, ōnis, F., *legion* (61).
 lēgitimus, a, um, *lawful, established by law*.
 lego,³ ēre, lēgi, lectum, *gather, read, choose*.
 legūmina, um, N. pl., *vegetables*.
 lēnio,⁴ ire, ivi (ii), itum, *soothe, calm, soften*.
 lēnis, e, *gentle, smooth, mild* (41).
 lentus, a, um, *slow*.
 leo, ōnis, M., *lion*.
 lepus, oris, M., *hare*.

lētum, ī, N., *death*.
 levāmen, inis, N., *relief, alleviation*.
 levis, e, *light*.
 lēvis, e, *smooth*.
 levitās, ātis, F., *lightness*.
 lēvitūdo, inis, F., *smoothness*.
 levo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to lighten, lift, relieve*.
 lēx, lēgis, F., *law* (written).
 liber, brī, M., *book*.
 liber, era, erum, *free* (62).
 Lībera, ae, F, *Proserpine, daughter of Ceres*.
 liberātor, ōris, M., *deliverer*.
 liberē, *freely*.
 liberī, ōrum, M., *children*.
 libero,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *set free*.
 libertās, tātis, F., *liberty, free-dom*.
 libet (or lubet), uit, itum est, *it pleases* (dat.).
 libīdo, inis, F., *passion, desire*.
 libum, ī, N., *cake*.
 ‡LIC, leave (linquo³).
 licet, licuit, licitum est, *it is permitted, one may* (dat.).
 licitor, ōris, M., *licitor, attendant on a Roman magistrate; executioner*.
 ligo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to fasten, bind* (63).
 ligo, ōnis, M., *hoe, mattock*.
 ligustrum, ī, N., *privet* (a hedge-plant).
 limen, inis, N., *threshold, entrance* (86).
 lingua, ae, F., *tongue, language*.
 linquo,³ ēre, liqui, *to leave*.
 liquidus, a, um, *clear, transparent*.
 lis, litis, F., *lawsuit, quarrel*.
 littera (littera), ae, F., *letter of the alphabet: plur., a letter, epistle, literature*.
 literātus, a, um, *learned, lettered*.
 litus (littus), oris, N., *shore*.
 loco,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to place, station, let* (for hire).
 locuplēs, ētis, *wealthy*.

locuplētō,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *enrich*.
 locus, ī, M.: plur., loca, ōrum,
 N., *place, region*.
 lōcusta, ae, F., *locust, grass-*
hopper.
 longaevus, a, um, *aged*.
 longē, ius, issimē, *far, by far,*
at a distance.
 longimanus, a, um, *long-handed*.
 longinquus, a, um, *distant, long*
(of time).
 longus, a, um, *long*; longum est,
it would take too long.
 loquāx, ācis, *talkative*.
 loquor,³ ī, locūtus, *speak* (64).
 lubet (or libet), *it pleases, one is*
glad.
 lūbricus, a, um, *slippery*.
 lūcidus, a, um, *bright, trans-*
parent, glittering (lux).
 lucrum, ī, N., *gain*.
 luctor,¹ āri, *to wrestle, struggle*.
 luctus, ūs, M., *grief, mourning*
 (38).
 Lūcullus, ī, M., a Roman name.
 Lucumo, ōnis, an Etruscan title,
 properly, *one inspired*.
 lūcus, ī, M., *grove* (96).
 lūdibrium, ī, N., *jest, mockery*.
 lūdo,⁸ ere, si, sum, *to play, sport*.
 Ludovīcus, ī, M., *Lewis*.
 lūdus, ī, M., *play, school*; plur.,
public games.
 lūgeo,² ēre, xī, ctum, *to grieve,*
mourn.
 lumbricus, ī, M., *earth-worm*.
 lūmen, inis, N., *light*.
 lūna, ae, F., *moon*.
 lupa, ae, F., *she-wolf*.
 lupus, ī, M., *wolf*.
 luscīnia, ae, F., *nightingale*.
 lūstro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *purify,*
survey.
 lūsus, ūs, M., *play, sport*.
 lutulentus, a, um, *muddy, dirty*.
 lutum, ī, N., *mud*.
 lūx, lūcis, F., *light*.
 lūxī, see lūgeo.
 lyra, ae, F., *lyre*.
 Lysīās, ae, M., an orator of
 Athens.

M.

M., abbrev. of *Marcus*.
 M., abbrev. of *Manius*.
 Macedo, ōnis, a *Macedonian*.
 māchina, ae, F., *machine, engine*.
 maciēs, iēi, F., *emaciation, lean-*
ness.
 macte (voc.), *well-done! prosper*.
 maculo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *stain*.
 maestus, a, um, *sad, sorrowful*.
 magis, *more*.
 magister, tri, M., *master, teacher*.
 magistra, ae, F., *mistress*.
 magistrātus, tūs, M., *magistrate,*
office.
 magnitūdo, inis, F., *greatness,*
size; incredibili magnitudine,
of marvellous size.
 magnopere, *greatly*.
 magnus, a, um, *great* (in all
 senses), *powerful* (65).
 māior, us (comp. of magnus),
greater, older.
 māiusculus, a, um, *somewhat*
large or larger.
 male, *ill*.
 maledīco,⁸ ere, xī, ctum, *to speak*
ill, curse (dat.).
 malefīcium, ī, N., *ill deed, crime*.
 mālō, mālle, mālui, *wish more,*
choose rather (p. 38).
 malus, a, um, *bad, malicious* (i. e.
 intended evil: 66).
 mancipium, ī, N., a *chattel,*
slave (taken in the hand).
 mandātum, ī, N., *command*.
 maneo,⁹ ēre, mānsī, mansum,
wait, stay, remain, await.
 mānēs, ium, M., a *departed spirit*.
 manipulāris, e, *belonging to a*
company, manipular.
 manipulus, ī, M., *wisp of straw*
 (used as a standard for a mili-
 tary company, hence later the
 company itself: 61).
 Mantīnēa, ae, F., a city of
 southern Greece.
 manus, ūs, F., *hand, troop*.
 Marcellus, ī, M., a famous Ro-
 man.

Marcus, ī, M., a proper name.
mare, is, N., *sea*.
maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, on the sea*.
maritus, ī, M., *husband*.
marmoreus, a, um, *of marble, glistening*.
Mars, Martis, M., the god of war.
māter, tris, F., *mother*.
māteria, ae; iēs, iēi, F., *timber, material*.
māteriātus, a, um, *built, timbered*.
māternus, a, um, *of a mother*.
mātricida, ae, C., *matricide*.
mātrimōnium, ī, N., *marriage*.
mātrōna, ae, F., *matron, married woman*.
mātūrē, *early, hastily, promptly*.
mātūrus, a, um, *ripe, early*.
maximē, *chiefly, especially*.
maximus, a, um, *greatest*.
Maximus, ī, M., *Q. Fabius Maximus*, a Roman commander in the war against Hannibal.
medeor,⁴ ēri, *to heal*.
medicābilis, e, *curable*.
medicāmen, inis, N., *remedy*.
medicāmentārius, *pertaining to (dealing in) remedies*.
medicāmentōsus, *curative*.
medicāmentum, ī, N., *remedy*.
medicīna, ae, F., *medicine*.
medicinālis, e, *medicinal*.
medicor,¹ āri, ātus, *heal*.
medicōsus, a, um, *curative*.
medicus, ī, M., *physician*.
meditor,¹ āri, ātus (*devote one's self to*), *practise, meditate*.
medius, a, um, *mid, middle, middle of* (in agr. with noun).
mel, mellis, N., *honey*.
meleagris, idis, F., *a guinea-hen*.
membrāna, ae, F., *membrane*.
membrum, ī, N., *limb*.
memento (imperat.), *remember*.
memini (def.), *remember* (68).
memor, oris, *mindful*.
memorāndus, a, um, *memorable*.
memoria, ae, F., *memory*.
memoro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *call to mind, relate*.

mendāctum, ī, N., *falsehood*.
mendāx, ācis, *false, deceitful*.
mēns, mentis, F., *mind, wits* (13).
mēnsa, ae, F., *table*.
mēnsia, is, M., *month*.
mēnsūra, ae, F., *measure*.
mentior,⁴ iri, itus, *to lie* (speak falsely).
mercēnārius, ī, M., *hireling*.
mercēs, ēdis, F., *wages* (40).
meroēs, ium, F., plur., *commodities, wares*.
mercor,¹ āri, ātus, *trade, buy*.
Mercurius, ī, M., *Mercury*, god of trade, &c.
mergus, ī, M., *diver, sea-fowl*.
meridiēs, iēi, M., *mid day, noon, south*.
meritum, ī, N., *merit, service*.
meritus, a, um (part. of mereor), *deserved; meritō, deservedly*.
messis, is, F., *harvest* (94).
-met, intens. (added to pronoun).
mētiōr,⁴ iri, mēnsus, *measure, measure out*.
metuo,³ ere, uī, *fear, dread* (69).
metus, ūs, M., *fear, apprehension*.
meus, mea, meum, *my, mine; voc. M., mī*.
mico,¹ āre, micuī, *quiver, shine, glitter*.
migrātiō, ōnis, F., *migration*.
migro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to remove, emigrate*.
mīles, itis, C., *soldier*.
mīlia, pl. of mille.
militāris, e, *military*.
mīlltia, ae, F., *military service* (22); *militiae, abroad* (in military service).
mīlito,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *serve* (as a soldier).
mille, plur. *mīlia, thousand*.
Miltiadēs, is, an Athenian commander.
mināciter, *threateningly*.
minae, ārum, F., *threats*.
mināx, ācis, *threatening*.
Minerva, ae, F., *Minerva*, goddess of arts and wisdom.

minimē, *least-of-all, no, by no means.*

minimus (sup. of **parvus**), *the least*; — **nātū**, *youngest.*

minister, **trī**, M., *attendant.*

ministra, ae, F., *handmaid.*

ministro,¹ **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *serve, supply, afford.*

minitābundus, a, um, *in a threatening manner.*

minitor,¹ **ārī**, **ātus**, *to threaten.*

minor, **minus**, *smaller, lesser.*

minus, *less* (adj. or adv.).

mirābiliter, *wonderfully.*

mirāculum, **ī**, N., *a miracle, wonder.*

miror,¹ **ārī**, **ātus**, *to wonder.*

mirus, a, um, *wonderful, marvellous*; *quid mirum?* *what wonder?*

misellus, a, um, dim. of

miser, **era**, **erum**, *wretched.*

miserē, *wretchedly.*

miseresco,³ **ere**, *pity* (gen.).

miseria, ae, F., *misery* (38).

misericordia, ae, F., *pity, mercy.*

miserrimus, a, um, *unhappiest.*

mītesco,³ *grow soft or mellow.*

mitigo,¹ **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *to mellow, tame down.*

mītia, e, *mild, gentle, mellow.*

mitto,³ **ere**, **mī**, **missum**, *to send* (see p. 134).

mixtura, ae, F., *mixture.*

mōbīlis, e, *movable, pliant.*

modestē, *modestly.*

modestia, ae, F., *modesty.*

modestus, a, um, *modest.*

modicē, *moderately.*

modicus, a, um, *moderate.*

modius, **ī**, M., **modius**, a measure of grain; *a peck.*

modo (in a manner), *only, just now*; **nōn modo**, *not only.*

modus, **ī**, M., *manner, measure, limit* (48); *ejus modi*, *such, of that sort.*

moenia, **ium**, N., *fortifications.*

mola, ae, F., *mill, grain.*

molestia, ae, F., *vexation, distress, trouble* (38).

molestus, a, um, *vexatious*; **molestē fero**, *to be vexed at.*

mōlior,⁴ **īrī**, **itus**, *to attempt, do* (with effort: 18).

mollīo,⁴ **īre**, **īvī**, **itum**, *to soften.*

mollis, e, *soft, smooth, mealy* (of fruits, &c.), *ripe* (41).

mollitia, ae, F., *effeminacy, softness.*

momordī, see **mordeo**.

moneo,² **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, *warn, admonish, advise.*

monitus, **ūs**, M., *admonition.*

mōns, **montis**, M., *mountain.*

mōnstro,¹ **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *to show, point out* (80). [ster.

mōnstrum, **ī**, N., *prodigy, mon-*

monumentum, **ī**, N., *monument,*

mora, ae, F., *delay.*

morbū, **ī**, M., *disease.*

mordeo,² **ēre**, **momordī**, **morsum**, *to bite.*

mōrēs, **um**, M. (**mos**), *character, habit* (70).

moribundus, a, um, *dying.*

morior,³ **ī**, **mortuus**, *to die.*

moror, **ārī**, **ātus**, *to delay.*

mōrōsus, *cross, ill-tempered.*

mors, **mortis**, F., *death.*

mortalis, e, *mortal.*

mortuus, a, um, *dead.*

mōs, **mōris**, M., *custom*; plur., also *character* (70).

mōtus, **ūs**, M., *disturbance* (of insurrections, and the like: 71).

moveo,² **ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *move* (in all senses).

mox, *presently.* [(16).

mūcro, **ōnis**, M., *blade, sword*

mūgio,⁴ **īre**, **īvī** (ii), **itum**, *bellow* (like cattle).

mulier, **eris**, F., *woman.*

multiplex, **plicis**, *manifold, repeated.*

multitūdo, **inis**, F., *multitude, great number.*

multō (adverbial ablative), *by much, much.*

multum, *much* (with part. gen.).

multus, a, um (generally plural), *much, many.*

mūlus, ī, M., *mule*.
mundus, ī, M., *the universe, the world*. [tion.
mūnimentum, ī, N., *fortifica-*
mūnio,⁴ īre, īvī (īi), itum, *fortify*.
mūnus, eris, N., *office, gift* (40).
mūnuscūlum, ī, N., *little gift*.
murmuro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to murmur, mumble*.
mūrus, ī, M., *wall*.
mūs, mūris, M., *mouse*.
mūtatio, ōnis, F., *change*.
mūto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to change*.
mūtus, a, um, *dumb, mute*.
myrica, ae, F., *heather*.
myrtus, ūs or ī, F., *myrtle*.

N.

†**ñac**, *find, win* (*nanciscor*⁸).
nam, *namque, for*.
nanciscor,⁸ cī, nactus or nactus,
catch, get, find (55).
nāres, ium, F., *nostrils, scent*.
narro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *tell, relate, talk of* (with acc.).
Nāsica, ae, M., *Nāsica*, a name of a family of Scipios.
nascor,⁸ cī, nātus, *be born* (GEN).
nātio, ōnis, F., *nation* (50).
nato,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to swim*.
nātū, *by birth* (abl.).
nātūra, ae, F., *nature*.
nātūrālis, e, *natural*.
nātus (part. of *nascor*), a, um, *born*; as noun, *son*.
nauta, *nāvita*, ae, M., *sailor*.
nāvigō,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to sail, navigate*.
nāvis, is, F., *ship*; — *longa, galley* (a ship of war, driven by oars: 73).
nē, *lest*; with imperat., *not*; with subj., *not to*; ne . . quidem, *not . . even, not . . either*.
-ne (enclitic), mark of interrogation, *whether*.
†**ñec**, *bind* (*necto*,⁸ *nexus*).
nec (*neque*), *and not, neither, nor*.

nec enim, *for . . not* (you see).
necessārius, a, um, *necessary*.
necesse (indecl.), *necessary*.
necessitās, ātis, F., *necessity*.
neco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to destroy, kill*.
nefārius, a, um, *wicked, abominable*.
nefās, *moral wrong, impiety*.
negligo (*ego*),³ ere, neglexī, ctum, *neglect, disregard* (*nec; lego*).
nego,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to refuse, deny* (*ne; aio*).
negōtiōr,¹ āri, ātus, *do business*.
negōtium, ī, N., *business, task*.
nēmo, inis, c., *no one, no* (in apposition with noun); *nemo non, every one*.
nemus, oris, N., *wood, grove* (96).
nepōs, ōtis, M., *grandson*.
nēquam (indecl.), *ior, issimus, worthless*.
nēquāquam, *by no means*.
neque, see *nec*.
nequeo, īre, īvī (īi), itum, *cannot* (see p. 40).
nēquīquam (*nēquicoquam*), *in vain, to no purpose*.
nēquis, *nēqua, nēquid, not (lest) any*.
nērēis, idis, F., *neretid, sea-nymph*.
Nēreus, ī (eos), M., *Nereus, god of the sea-depths*.
nescius, a, um, *ignorant*.
Nestor, oris, M., *Nestor, a wise and aged Greek chieftain*.
nēve, *nor*.
nex, necis, F., *death* (by violence) (*neco*¹).
nīdus, ī, M., *nest*.
niger, gra, grum, *black, dark* in color (9).
nihil, indecl., *nothing*; (as adv.), *not at all*.
nihilōminūs, *nevertheless*.
nihilum, ī, N., *nothing*.
nīl = *nihil, nothing*.
nimius, a, um, *excessive*.
nimis, *too, too much*.
nisi, *unless*.

niteo,² ēre, uī, *to shine, glitter.*
nix, nivis, F., *snow.*
nōbilis, e, *well-known, famous, noble* (GNO in *gnosco*).
nōbilitās, ātis, F., *nobility.*
nocēns, tis, *injurious, guilty* (66).
noceo,² ēre, nocuī, nocitum, *do harm, hurt, injure* (dat.).
nocturnus, a, um, *nightly, of the night* (nox).
nōdōsus, a, um, *knotty.*
nōdus, ī, M., *knot.*
nōlo, nōlle, nōluī, *to be unwilling* (p. 38) ; nōli, *do not* (prohib.).
nōmen, inis, N., *name, bill of exchange* (74). [mention.
nōmino,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to name,*
nōn, *not.*
nōnāgintā, *ninety.*
nondum, *not yet.*
nonne, *not ? (does not ? do . . not ? whether . . not).*
nonnullus, a, um, *some.*
nonnunquam, *sometimes.*
nōrim for **nōverim**, see **nosco**.
nōs, nostrum, trī, nōbis, *we.*
nosco,³ ere, nōvī, nōtum, *learn ; perf. know* (as an acquaintance : GNO).
nōster, tra, trum, *our, ours.*
nōtus, a, um, *known* (nosco).
Notus, ī, M., *south wind.*
novem, *nine.*
noverca, ae, F., *stepmother.*
nōvī, *I know* (nosco).
novō,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to renew.*
novus, a, um, *new.*
nox, noctis, F., *night.*
nūbēs, is, F., *cloud* (75).
nūbilus, a, um, *cloudy.*
nūbo,³ ere, nūpsī, nūptum (dat.), *marry* (of the woman).
nūdus, a, um, *naked, bare, unclad.*
nullus, a, um (gen. ius), *no, none.*
num, sign of question expecting negative answer : translate in indirect question, *whether* ; in direct, by denial and question together, *is not, is it ?*
nūmen, inis, N., *god, will, divine being, divinity.*

numero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to number, account.*
numerus, ī, M., *number.*
Numida, ae, M., *a Numidian.*
Numitor, ōris, M., *grandfather of Romulus.*
nummus, ī, M., *coin = 5 cts.*
numquam (nunquam), *never.*
nunc, *now* (emphatic).
nuntio,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *bring news, announce, report.*
nuntius, ī, M., *messenger, message.* [veiled].
nupta, ae, F., *married, bride* (lit. nuptiae, ārum, F., *marriage.*
nusquam, *nowhere.*
nūtrio,⁴ ire, ivī (ii), itum, *to nourish.*
nux, nucis, F., *nut ; ludere or certare nucibus, play marbles.*
nympha, ae, F., *nymph.*

O.

O (interjection), *Ok !*
ob (acc.), *on account of.*
obeo, ire, ii, itum, *go to meet or in the way, to die.*
obfero (offero), ferre, tūli, lātum, *bring in the way of, offer.*
obfirmo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to strengthen against, strengthen.*
objicio (ōbicio),³ ere, jēcī, jectum, *cast at, throw in the way.*
oblecto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *delight, amuse, entertain.*
oblitus, a, um, *forgetful*, part. of **obliviscor**,³ ī, oblitus, *to forget.*
obnoxius, a, um, *exposed, liable.*
obscurus, a, um, *obscure.*
obsequium, ī, N., *indulgence* (of whims), *deference.*
observeo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to keep, observe, watch.*
obses, idis, C., *hostage.*
obsideo,² sēdī, sessum, *besiege.*
obsidio, ōnis, F. ; -ium, ī, N., *siege.*
obsisto,³ ere, stitī, stitum, *to withstand, resist.*

obstinātus, a, um, *obstinate*.
obsto,¹ āre, stiti, stātum, *to stand against, oppose*.
obstupefacio,³ ere, fēcī, factum, *to stupefy, amaze*.
obtempero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to give heed, observe* (dat.).
obtestor,¹ āri, ātus, *appeal, adjure* (79).
obtineo,² ēre, uī, tentum, *to hold, retain* (ob; teneo).
obtingo,³ ere, tigī, *fall to the lot of any one* (dat.: ob; tango).
obtracto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to detract, oppose, speak enviously*.
obtrunco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to kill* (with a blow: trunco).
obtuli, see **obfero** (**offero**).
occāsio, ōnis, F., *opportunity*.
occāsus, ūs, M., *setting, west*.
occido,³ ere, cidī, cāsum, *to fall, set* (ob; cado).
occido,³ ere, dī, sum, *to kill* (ob; caedo).
occulo,³ ere, culuī, cultum, *hide*.
occultus, a, um, *hidden*; in occultō, *under cover*.
occupātus, a, um, *busy, engaged*.
occupo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *seize, take possession of*.
occurro,³ ere, curri or cucurri, cursum, ōris, M., *run up, run to meet, oppose*.
octāvus, a, um, *eighth*.
ooto, *eight*.
octōgēsimus, a, um, *eightieth*.
oculus, ī, M., *eye*.
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsus, *to hate* (p. 40).
odiōsus, a, um, *odious, hateful*.
odium, ī, N., *hate, hatred* (76).
odor, ōris, M., *smell*.
offero, see **obfero**.
officium, ī, N., *duty, service* (57).
oleum, ī, N., *olive-oil, oil*.
ōlim, *once, of old, formerly*.
oliva, ae, F., *the olive-tree*.
olivētum, ī, *olive-orchard*.
ōmen, inis, N., *omen*.
omitto,³ ere, misi, missum, *to let go, neglect*.
omnino, *altogether, at all*.

omnis, e, *all, every* (77); **omnia**, *every thing*.
onerārius, a, um, *of burden* (as a ship).
onus, eris, N., *burden*.
opāco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to darken*.
opera, ae, F., *work, help, pains* (58); pl., *workmen*.
opēs, opum, F., plur., *resources, wealth* (78).
opifex, ficis, C., *workman*.
opinio, ōnis, F., *notion, idea* (31).
opinor,¹ āri, ātus, *to think, deem*.
opiparis, e, *sumptuous*.
oportet, uit, *there is need* (p. 40).
oppidānus, ī, M., *townsman*; pl., *townspeople*.
oppidum, ī, N., *fortified town* (98).
opportunitās, ātis, F., *fitness*.
opportūnus, a, um, *fit, suitable, exposed* (30).
opprimo,³ ere, pressi, pressum, *oppress, crush* (ob; premo).
oppugno,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *attack, besiege* (in the modern sense).
[ops], opis, F. (only used in the nominative as name of a goddess; in the other cases), *help*.
optimē (superl. of **bene**), *best*.
optimus, a, um, *best (bonus)*.
opto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *choose, desire, wish for* (with acc.).
opulentia, ae, F., *wealth*.
opus, eris, N., *work* (58), *need*; as pred., *needful*.
ōra, ae, F., *shore, coast*.
ōrātio, ōnis, F., *speech, oration, plea, discourse*.
ōrātor, ōris, M., *orator, envoy*.
orbis, is, M., *circle, world*; **orbis terrārum**, *the earth*.
orbis, a, um, *bereft, deprived*.
ordino,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to set in order, regulate*.
ordo, inis, M., *order, rank, class*.
Orgetorix, igis, M., *an Helvetian chief*.
oriēns, tis, M., *rising, east*.
origo, inis, F., *origin*.

orior, **irī**, **ortus**, *rise* (inflected in 3d conjugation), *begin*.

ornāmentum, **ī**, N., *ornament*.

ornātus, **ūs**, M., *ornament*.

orno,¹ **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *to furnish, adorn, equip*.

ōro,¹ **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *pray, entreat, pray for* (79).

ortus, **ūs**, M., *rising, birth*.

ortus, **a**, **um** (part. of **orior**), *risen, rising, descended*.

Ortygia, **ae**, F., the island on which Syracuse is built.

ōs, **ōris**, N., *mouth*.

os, **ossis**, N., *bone*.

oscen, **inis**, M., *a bird giving omens by its note* (technical word of augury: **os**; **cano**).

osculator,¹ **ārī**, **ātus**, *kiss*.

ostendo,³ **ere**, **dī**, **sum**, or **tum**, *to show* (80).

ostento,¹ **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *display*.

ostium, **ī**, N., *door* (outer: 86), *mouth* (of a river).

ostrum, **ī**, N., *purple*. [*leisure*.

ōtior,¹ **ārī**, **ātus**, *be idle, enjoying*

ōtiosus, **a**, **um**, *at ease, leisurely*.

ōtium, **ī**, N., *leisure, ease, peace*.

ovile, **is**, N., *sheepfold*.

ovis, **is**, F., *sheep*.

ōvum, **ī**, N., *egg*.

P.

P. for *Publius*.

pāce tuā, *by your leave* (**pāx**).

pactum, **ī**, N., *way, means*.

paedagōgus, **ī**, M., *tutor of boys*.

paene, *almost*.

paenitentia, **ae**, F., *penitence*.

paenitet (**poenitet**), **uit**, *it repents* (p. 40); **me** —, *I repent*.

PAG. *fix* (**pango**; ² **pax**).

pāgānus, **ī**, M., *a villager*.

pāgus, **ī**, M., *village, canton, district*.

palam, *openly*.

palātum, **ī**, N., *palate, taste*.

pallesco,² **ere**, **uī**, *to grow pale*.

pallidus, **a**, **um**, *pale, pallid*.

palliolum, **ī**, N., *robe* (99).

palūdāmentum, **ī**, N., *military cloak* (99).

palūs, **ūdis**, F., *marsh*.

palūster, **tris**, **tre**, *marshy*.

pando,³ **ere**, **dī**, **pāsum** or **pasum**, *to spread* (80).

pāpillio, **ōnis**, M., *butterfly*.

pār, **paris**, *equal, a match for* (6).

parātus, **a**, **um**, *ready, prepared*.

parco,³ **ere**, **peperci**, **parcitur** or **parsum**, *to spare* (dat.: 81).

parēns, **tis**, C., *parent*.

pāreo,² **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, *obey* (dat.).

paries, **etis**, M., *wall* (of house).

pario,³ **ere**, **peperi**, **partum** (partitum), *bring forth, produce*.

pariter, *equally, alike*.

paro,¹ **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *to prepare, get, provide, furnish*.

parricidium, **ī**, N., *parricide*.

pars, **partis**, F., *part, share*.

particula, **ae**, F., *a particle*.

partus, **ūs**, M., *birth*.

partus, **a**, **um** (part. of **pario**), *gained, got, produced*.

parum (adv.), *a little, not enough*.

parumper, *a little while*.

parvulus, **a**, **um** (dim. of **parvus**), *very small*; **ab parvulis**, *from childhood*.

parvus, **a**, **um**, *small, scanty*.

pasco,² **ere**, **pāvī**, **pastum**, *feed*.

pascuum, **ī**, N., *pasture*.

passus, **a**, **um**, part. of **patior**,³ *suffer*; also of **pando**,³ *spread*; **crīnibus passis**, *with dishevelled hair*.

passus, **ūs**, M., *step, pace*; **mille passuum**, *a mile*.

pastor, **ōris**, M., *shepherd*.

pastus, **a**, **um**, *fed, pastured*.

pastus, **ūs**, M., *pasturage*.

patefacio,³ **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, *lay open*; **pass.**, **patefio** (80).

patēns, **tis**, **open**, *outspread*.

pateo,² **ēre**, **uī**, *lie open, be open*.

pater, **tris**, M., *father*.

patera, **ae**, F., *bowl* (sacrificial).

paternus, **a**, **um**, *of a father, of one's father*.

patiōne, tis, *patient (patior)*.
 patientia, ae, F., *patience*.
 patina, ae, F., *plate, dish*.
 patior,² i, passus, *to suffer, permit*.
 patria, ae, F., *fatherland, native city or land*.
 patricius, a, um, *patrician*.
 patrius, a, um, *of a father, of one's native city*.
 patro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to commit, perpetrate*.
 pauci, ae, *a few, a few (only)*;
 paucis, *in few words, briefly*.
 paulatim, *little by little*.
 paulisper, *a little while*.
 paulus, a, um, *small*; paulum, *a little, a little while*; paulo post, *a little after*.
 Paulus, i, M., *a man's name*.
 pauper, eris, *poor (82)*.
 paupertās, ātis, F., *poverty*.
 pāvi, see *pasco*.
 pavor, ōris, M., *terror*.
 pāx, pācis, F., *peace*.
 peccātum, i, N., *sin, wrong (32)*.
 pecco,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *do wrong*.
 pecto,³ ere, pexi, pexum or pectitum, *to comb*.
 pectus, oris, N., *breast, heart*.
 pecūlium, i, N., *property (private savings of a slave)*.
 pecūnia, ae, F., *money, a sum of money*.
 pecus, udis, F., *creature (in a flock), domestic animal (51)*.
 pecus, oris, N., *flock (51)*.
 peditātus, ūs, M., *infantry*.
 pellis, is, F., *skin, hide (34)*.
 pello,³ ere, pepuli, pulsum, *to drive, expel*.
 pendeo,² ēre, pependi, *to hang*;
 — ex, *depend on*.
 pendo,³ ere, pependi, pēsum, *to weigh, pay (weighing out the coin)*. [trate.
 penetra,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to penetrate*.
 penna, ae, F., *feather, wing*.
 pēsum, i, N., *task (pendo)*.
 per- (in comp.), *very*; as permagnus.

per (acc.), *through, by means of*.
 peractus, a, um (perago³), *finished, complete*.
 peragro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to travel over*.
 perceptio, ōnis, F., *a gathering*.
 percipio,³ ere, cēpi, ceptum, *to gather, gain, perceive (capio)*.
 percommodus, a, um, *very convenient*.
 percontor,¹ āri, ātus, *to inquire*.
 perorēbresco,³ ere, uī, *thicken, become frequent, spread*.
 percussus, a, um (percello³), *struck through, amazed*.
 Perdiccās, ae, M., *a king of Macedon*.
 perdifficilis, e, *very difficult*.
 perdix, icis, C., *partridge*.
 perdo,³ didi, ditum, *to lose, ruin, destroy (83)*.
 peregrinus, a, um, *foreigner, foreign*.
 perennis, e, *perennial*.
 pereō, ire, ii, itum, *perish (in perf.), be dead, be destroyed*.
 perexcelsus, a, um, *very high*.
 perfectus, a, um, *perfect, consummate*.
 perficio,³ ere, feci, sectum, *to do thoroughly, finish, perform*.
 perfruor,³ i, fructus, *to enjoy thoroughly (abl.)*.
 perfugio,³ ere, fugi, fugitum, *to take refuge*.
 perfundo,³ ere, fudi, fūsum, *to pour upon, drench (FUD)*.
 pergo,³ ere, perrexī, perrectum, *keep on, proceed (rego)*.
 periclitatio, ōnis, F., *trial*.
 periculōsus, a, um, *dangerous*.
 periculum, i, N., *trial, danger*.
 perinde, *just so, so much*; — ac si, *just as if*.
 peritus, a, um, *skilled (with gen.)*.
 perlucidus, a, um, *very clear*.
 permaneo,² ēre, mānsi, māsum, *to remain*.
 permōtus, a, um (part. of permoveo²), *moved, disturbed*.
 permultū, ae, a, *very many*.

perniciās, ātis, F., *swiftness*.
perobscūrus, a, um, *very obscure*.

perpauci, ae, a, *very few*.
perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual, eternal*; **perpetuō**, *constantly*.

Persa, ae, M., *a Persian*; **Persa**, a name (of a dog).

persequor,⁸ sequi, secūtus, *pur-sue, follow out*.

Persēs, ae, M., *Perses*, a king of Macedonia.

Persēus, eos (ei), M., the slayer of Medusa.

persevēro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to persevere*.

Persicus, a, um, *Persian*.

persōna, ae, F., *mask, character* (of a play or dialogue).

perspicio,⁸ ere, spexī, spectrum, *to perceive, ascertain*.

persuādeo,⁸ ēre, sī, sum, *per-suade* (dat.).

pertineo,³ ēre, tinuī, tentum, *reach, extend*; **pertineo** ad, *belong to, have to do with*.

perturbo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to disturb*.

pervenio,⁴ īre, vēnī, ventum, *to come through, arrive at* (with ad or in).

perverto,³ ere, tī, sum, *overturn, overthrow*.

pēs, pedis, M., *foot*.

pestilēns, tis, *infected, unwholesome*.

peto,⁸ ere, petīvī (ii), petītum, *aim at, seek, ask* (79).

Phalaris, idis, M., *Phalaris*, a name of a tyrant.

phāsīānus, ī, M., *pheasant*.

philosophia, ae, F., *philosophy*.

philosophus, ī, M., *philosopher*.

Phōciōn, ōnis, M., a statesman of Athens.

pictūra, ae, F., *painting, picture*.
pietās, ātis, F., *filial or family love*.

†**PIG**, *paint* (pingo,⁸ pictura).

piger, gra, grum, *sluggish, inactive, stupid*.

pignus, oris, N., *pledge*.

pigritia, ae, F., *indolence, stupidity*.

pingo,⁸ ere, pinxī, pictum, *paint*.

pīnus, ūs or ī, F., *pine-tree*.

piscātor, ōris, M., *fisherman*.

piscis, is, M., *fish*.

piscor,¹ āri, ātus, *fish, catch fish*.

pīus, a, um, *pious, tender, kind-hearted*.

placeo,² ēre, uī (or -itus sum), itum, *please*; mihi placet, *I am willing, I like*; placetne, *would you like?*

placidus, a, um, *mild, gentle*.

plāco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to soothe, appease*.

plānē, *plainly, absolutely*.

plānitēs, iēi, F., *plain, level*.

Platō, ōnis, M., *Plato*, a Greek philosopher.

plausus, ūs, M., *clapping* (of hands), *applause*.

plēbēius, a, um, *of the people, plebeian*.

plēbs, plēbis, F., *common people, commons* (85).

plēnus, a, um, *full*.

plērusque, -aque, -umque, *most*; pl., *very many*; plerumque, *generally, for the most part*.

plūrimus, a, um, *most, very much*; pl., *very many*; plurimum, *very much, most*.

plūs, plūris (see page 16), N., *more*; plur., *more, several*.

pluvia, ae, F., *rain* (properly an adj. with aqua).

pōculum, ī, N., *bowl* (for drinking; PO).

poēma, atis, N., *poem* (27).

Poenus, a, um, *Carthaginian*.

poēta, ae, M., *poet*.

polliceor,² ērī, itus, *promise* (freely), *offer* (84).

pōmum, ī, N., *apple, fruit*.

pōno,⁸ ere, posui, positum, *to put, place*.

pōns, pontis, M., *bridge*.

poposci, see posco. [*people*.

populāris, e, *popular, of the*

populatio, ōnis, F., *devastation*.
pōpuleus, a, um, *of the poplar*.
populus, ī, M., *people* or organized community (85).
por- (in compos.), *forward*.
porta, ae, F., *gate* (86).
portentum, ī, N., *a portent, prodigy*.
porticus, ūs, F., *gallery, porch, colonnade*.
porto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *carry*.
portus, ūs, M., *harbor* (p. 18).
†pos, *put* (pono).
posco,³ ere, poposci, *demand, claim, call for* (79).
possessio, ōnis, F., *possession, occupation*.
possideo,² ēre, sēdī, sessum, *possess, occupy* (potis; **sedeo**).
possum, posse, potuī, *can, be able*; past tenses, *could* (87).
post (acc.), *behind, after*; (adv.), = **postea**, *afterwards*.
posterus, a, um, *later*; with diēs, *next*; plur., *posterity*.
posthabeo,² ēre, uī, itum, *to esteem less, neglect*.
posthāc, *hereafter*. [as **postquam**, *after, when, as soon*.]
postrēmus, a, um, *last*; **postremum**, *lastly*; ad —, *at last*.
postridiē, *the next day, or the day after*.
postulo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to demand* (79).
potēns, tis, *powerful*.
potentia, ae, F., *power* (88).
potestās, ātis, F., *power* (over, with gen.: 88).
pōtio, ōnis, F., *a drink*.
potior,⁴ iri, itus, *to possess, win, gain* (p. 37 : abl. or gen.).
potior, us, *better, preferable*; **potius**, *rather*; **potissimum**, *first-of-all, chiefly*.
prae (abl.), *before, in comparison with, considering*; **prae se ferre**, *to display*. [yield.
praebeo,² ēre, uī, itum, *to afford*.
praebibo,³ ere, bibī, bibitum, *to drink one's health*.

praecaveo,² ēre, cāvī, cautum, *to take precaution*.
praiceps, cipitis, *headlong*.
praeceptor, ōris, M., *instructor*.
praeceptum, ī, N., *instruction, precept*.
praecipio,¹ ere, cēpī, ceptum, *instruct* (dative).
praecipito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to hurry, precipitate*.
praecīlārē, *nobly, handsomely*.
praecīlārus, a, um, *glorious*.
praeda, ae, F., *spoils, booty*.
praedico,³ ere, xī, ctum, *to predict*.
praedico,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *tell, boast, speak of with praise*.
praedo, ōnis, M., *robber, free-booter*.
praedium, ī, N., *landed estate*.
prae eo, īre, īvī (īī), itum, *to go before, precede* (dat.).
praefātus, a, um, *having spoken beforehand*; — **veniam**, *apologizing*.
praefero, ferre, tulī, lātum, *hold before, bear before, prefer* (dat).
praemitto,³ ere, misī, missum, *to send forward, in advance*.
praemium, ī, N., *reward, prize*.
praeparo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to prepare in advance*.
praeruptus, a, um, *broken, steep* (rumpo).
praescribo,³ ere, psī, ptum, *to prescribe*.
praesēns, tis, *present*.
praesertim, *especially*.
praesidium, ī, N., *defence*.
praestābilis, e, *excellent, admirable*.
praestāns, tis, *excellent, conspicuous*.
praesto,¹ āre, stitī, (āvī), stitum (ātum), *to excel, bestow*; **prae-stat**, *it is better*.
praesum, esse, fuī, *to be at the head of or in command*.
praetendo,³ ere, dī, tum, *hold before or close* (dative). [except.
praeter (acc.), *beyond, besides*,

praetereā, *besides*.

praetereo, īre, ii (ivī), itum, *to pass by; to go (or return) beyond; praeterita, the past*.

praetor, ōris, M., *praetor*, a Roman officer, who presided in courts.

prātum, ī, N., *meadow* (8).

prāvus, a, um, *bad, evil* (66).

precēs, um, F., plur. (also dat., acc., abl. sing.), *prayers*.

precor,¹ āri, ātus, *to beseech, pray* (79); bene —, *wish well*.

premo,³ ere, pressī, pressum, *to press; pressum lāc, cheese or curd*.

pretium, ī, N., *price*.

Priamidēs, ae, M., *son of Priam*.

Priamus, ī, M., *Priam*, king of Troy.

prīdem, *long ago, long since*.

primōrēs, um, *chief men*. [*first*.

primus, a, um, *first*; **primō**, at princeps, ipis, *chief*.

principium, ī, N., *beginning*.

priscus, a, um, *early, ancient*.

pristinus, a, um, *former, early*.

prius, *before, sooner*.

privātim, *privately*.

prius . . . quam, *before, sooner than*; nōn . . . —, *not . . . until*.

privātus, ī, M., *private person*.

prīvo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to deprive*.

prō (abl.), *before, for, instead, in behalf of, in proportion to, as*.

probābilis, e, *probable, approved*.

probo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to prove, approve*.

procella, ae, F., *storm, tempest*.

procerēs, um, *chiefs*.

prōcōsul, ulis, M., *proconsul*.

procul, *far off*.

prōdeo, īre, ii, itum, *to go forth*.

prōdesse, infin. of **prosum**.

prōdigiosus, a, um, *prodigious, astonishing*.

prōdigium, ī, N., *prodigy*.

prōdo,³ dēre, didī, ditum, *give forth, betray*. [*bring forward*.

prōdūco,³ ere, xi, ctum, *lead or proelior,¹ āri, ātus, *give battle*.*

proellum, ī, N., *battle* (22).

profectō, *as a fact, surely*.

prōfero, ferre, tulī, lātum, *publish, give out, put forth*,

prōficio,³ ere, fēcī, fectum, *to effect, put forward*.

proficiscor,³ cī, profectus, *set forth, go, proceed* (43).

prōfugio,³ ere, fūgī, *to escape, flee*.

prōfui, see **prosum**.

prōfundo,³ ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour forth, lavish*.

prōgredior,³ di, gressus, *to advance (pro; gradior)*.

prohibeo,² ere, ui, itum, *to forbid*.

proinde, *accordingly, so, then*.

prōjicio³ (**prōicio**), ere, jēcī, jectum, *cast forth, throw*.

prōlēs, is, F., *offspring*.

prōmitto,³ ere, misi, missum (*let go forth*), *promise* (84).

prōmissus, a, um (part. of preceding), *long*; N., *a promise*.

prōmo,³ ere, mpsī, mptum, *to draw forth*; *promptus, ready*.

Pronoea, ae, F., *Providence*.

prope (acc.), *near, near by*; as adv., *nearly, almost*.

propemodum, *almost, nearly*.

properē, *in haste*.

propero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten*.

propinquus, a, um, *near, neighboring*.

propitius, a, um, *propitious*.

prōpōno,³ ere, posui, positum, *propose, set forward*.

prōpositum, ī, N., *purpose*.

propter (acc.), *near, on account of; propterea quod, because*.

prōrēpo,³ ere, psī, ptum, *to crawl forth*.

prōrsus, *altogether, precisely*.

prōscribo,³ ere, scripsī, scriptum, *post up* (in writing), *advertise, proscribe*.

Proserpina, ae, F., *Proserpine*, daughter of Ceres, and queen of the lower world.

prōsilio,⁴ ire, uī, *spring forth*.

prōspicio,³ ere, spexī, spectrum, *to look forth, view, see*.

prōsum (p. 26), *to benefit, help*.
 prōtero,⁸ ere, trīvi, tritum, *to tread upon* (follow closely).
 protervus, a, um, *saucy, bold*.
 prōtinus (adv.), *farther on, at once, immediately*.
 prōtulī (profero), *put forth*.
 prōverbium, ī, N., *proverb*.
 prōvidentia, ae, F., *providence, foresight, prudence*.
 prōvideō,² ēre, vidī, visum, *provide, foresee*.
 prōvidus, a, um, *provident*.
 prōvincia, ae, F., *province* (sphere of action).
 prōvoo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to call forth, challenge*.
 prōximus, a, um, *nearest, next*; e proximo, *from near by*.
 prūdēns (= providens), tis, *prudent, wise*.
 prūdenter, *prudently*.
 prūdēntia, ae, F., *prudence, discretion*.
 prūnum, ī, N., *a plum*.
 prytanīum, ī, N., *town hall*.
 publicē, *publicly, officially, at the public expense*.
 publicus, a, um, *public*.
 Publius, ī, M., *Roman name*.
 pudet, uit, *it shames* (p. 40).
 pudicitia, ae, F., *modesty*.
 pudicus, a, um, *modest*.
 pudor, ōris, M., *sense of shame, or honor*.
 puella, ae, F., *girl, maiden*.
 puer, ī, M., *boy, child*.
 pueritia, ae, F., *childhood* (ending at 17).
 puerulus, ī, M., *little boy*.
 PUG, *push, prick* (pungo,⁸ punctus).
 pugillārēs, um, *note-book* (M.).
 pugna, ae, F., *battle, fight*.
 pugnātor, ōris, M., *fighter, fighting man*.
 pugnāx, ācis, *pugnacious*.
 pugno,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *fight* (90).
 pugnus, ī, M., *fist*.
 pulcher (or pulcer), cra, crum, *beautiful* (91).

pulcritūdō, inis, F., *beauty*.
 pullus, ī, M., *chicken, young bird*.
 pulso,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to knock, beat* (intens. of pello).
 pulsus, a, um, *part. of pello, driven, expelled*.
 punctum, ī, N., *point, spot*.
 Pūnicus, a, um, *Carthaginian*.
 puppis, is, im, ī, F., *stern, ship* (poetical: 73).
 purpura, ae, F., *purple*.
 purpurātus, a, um, *dressed in red; a courtier*.
 pusillanimus, a, um, *feeble-hearted*.
 pusillus, a, um, *feeble, slight*.
 puter, tris, tre, *rotten, fetid*.
 pūtesco,³ ere, putui, *to grow offensive* (in smell), *rot*.
 puto,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to think, suppose* (92).
 putrefacio,⁸ ere, fēcī, factum, *to corrupt, rot; pass., fio*.
 Pyrrhus, ī, M., *a king of Epirus*.
 Pythagorās, ae, M., *an ancient Greek philosopher*.

Q.

Q. for *Quintus*.
 quā, *where, in what way*.
 quācumque, *wherever*.
 quadriennium, ī, N., *space of four years*.
 quae, *see qui, or quis*.
 quaero,⁸ ere, quaesivi, quaesitum, *to seek, ask* (79).
 quaeso,⁸ ere, ivi (ii), *to ask*.
 quaestio, ōnis, F., *investigation*.
 quaestor, ōris, M., *quaestor, a Roman officer, like paymaster*.
 quālis, e, as, *what* (correl. to tālis); *such as*.
 quam, *how, as, than; quam maximus, the very greatest* (as great as the greatest); *quam primum, as soon as possible*.
 quamdiū, *how long, as long as*.
 quamobrem, *why, wherefore*.

quamquam, *although* (lit. *how-ever*), *though* (corrective).
 quamvis, *however much, though*.
 quando, *when* (interrog.), *since*;
 num —, *whether ever*.
 quandoquidem, *since*.
 quantopere, *how greatly*.
 quantus, a, um, *how great*.
 quartus, a, um, *fourth*.
 quasi, *as if, as it were*.
 quater, *four times*.
 quatio,³ ere, quassum, *to shake*.
 quattuor, *four*.
 -que (enclitic), *and*.
 quemadmodum, *how*.
 queo (def. Gr. p. 82), *can* (87).
 quercus, ūs, F., *oak*.
 queror,⁸ i, questus, *to complain*,
bewail.
 quī, quae, quod, *who, which*,
that, as (rel.); quod, *so far as*.
 quī, old ablative form of quis;
 as quicum, *with whom*.
 quia, *because*.
 quicquam, *any thing, at all*.
 quicquid, *whatever*. [*whoever*.
 quicumque, quaecumque, &c.,
 quid (adv. acc.), *what? why?*
 quidam, quaedam, &c., *a cer-*
tain one (p. 21, a).
 quidem, *in fact, to be sure, at*
least; ne . . . quidem, *not even*.
 quidnī, *why not?*
 quiēs, ētis, F., *quiet, rest*.
 quiētus, a, um, *quiet, still*.
 quilibet, quaelibet, &c., *any*
(whatevēr: p. 21, a).
 quīn, *why not? but that*.
 quīnam, quisnam, (emph. inter-
 rog.), *who (tell me)?*
 quintuplex, plicis, *five-fold*.
 Quintus, i, M., *a proper name*.
 quintus, a, um, *fifth*.
 Quiritēs, ium, *citizens* (Roman).
 quis, quae, quid, *who? what?*
 (p. 20), quis homo? *what man*
(the person)? quī homo?
what sort of man?
 quispiam, *any one, some one*.
 quisquam, quaequam, &c., *any,*
any one (p. 21, a).

quisque, quaeque, quodque,
every, each.
 quisquis, *whoever* (p. 21, c).
 quō, *whither*; with compara-
 tives, eō . . . quō, *the . . . the*.
 quoad, *as far as, according as*.
 quōcumque, *whithersoever*.
 quod (adv. acc.: see quī or
 quis), *so far as, the fact that*
 (see p. 118), *because*.
 quōminus, *so that not* (after
 verbs of hindrance: p. 108, c).
 quōmodo, *how*.
 quondam, *once, formerly*.
 quoque, *also, as well*.
 quot, *how many, as (many)*.
 quotannis, *each or every year,*
yearly.
 quotidiānus, a, um (adj.), *daily*.
 quotidiē (adv.), *daily*.
 quotiēs, *how often? as often as*.
 quōtus, a, um, *one of how*
many? quota hora, what
o'clock? (as prima, &c.).

R

rādo,⁸ ere, sī, sum, *to scrape,*
graze, shave.
 rāmulus, i, M., *a little branch,*
twig.
 rāmus, i, M., *a branch, bough*.
 rāna, ae, F., *frog*.
 †RAP, *seize* (rapio).
 rapidus, a, um, *swift, violent*.
 rapio,³ ere, rapui, raptum, *seize,*
carry off (with force: 25).
 raptō,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *seize*.
 raptus, a, um, *caught, stolen*.
 raptus, ūs, M., *a carrying off*.
 rārō, *rarely, seldom*.
 rārus, a, um, *rare, few, scattered*.
 rāstrum, i, N., *rake*; pl., rāstrī.
 rāsus, a, um, *shorn* (rādo).
 ratio, ōnis, F., *reckoning, reason,*
method.
 ratus, a, um, *confirmed, fixed*.
 †RE, *thing, think* (res, reor²).
 re- or red- (in compos.), *back or*
again.

recēna, tis, *recent*, *fresh*.
recidivus, a, um, *restored*.
recido,² ere, dī, cāsum, *fall back*.
recipio,³ ere, cēpī, ceptum, *to take back, recover (capio)*.
recito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to recite*.
reclūdo,² ere, sī, sum, *to unlock, throw open (80: claudō)*.
rectē, rightly.
rector, ōris, M., *ruler (rego)*.
rectus, a, um, *straight, right*.
recūso,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *decline, refuse (causa)*.
redditus, a, um, *restored*.
reddo,³ dere, didī, ditum, *give back, restore, give out, produce*.
redeo, īre, īi, itum, *return*.
redintegro,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to renew, restore*.
reditus, ūs, M., *return*.
redolēns, tis, *having the smell of*.
redundo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *overflow (unda)*.
refero, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bring back, relate, represent, restore*.
refervesco,² ere, vī, *to boil up*.
reficio,² ere, fecī, fectum, *to repair, refresh*.
reflo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to blow contrary*.
†REG, *guide, rule (rego, rex)*.
rēgia, ae, F. (sc. domus), *palace*.
rēgiē, royally.
rēgina, ae, F., *queen, princess*.
regio, ōnis, F., *region*.
rēgius, a, um, *royal, kingly*.
regno,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *reign*.
rego,³ ere, xī, ctum, *to rule (81)*.
religio, ōnis, F., *religion, worship, reverence*.
relinquo,² ere, liquī, lictum, *to leave, abandon*.
reliquus, a, um, *remaining*.
remedium, ī, N., *remedy*. [(68).
reminiscor,² ī, *to call to mind*
remissus, a, um, *slack, remiss*;
comparative, less intense.
remitto,³ ere, misi, missum, *send back, let go, relax*.
remoror,¹ āri, ātus, *to delay*.
remōtus, a, um, *remote*.

remūneror,¹ āri, ātus, *to reward*.
renovo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to renew*.
renuntio,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to carry back tidings*.
reor,² rēri, ratus, *think (92)*.
reparo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to recover, restore, renew*.
repello,³ ere, puli, pulsum, *to push back, repel*.
repente, suddenly.
repentinus, a, um, *sudden*.
reperio,⁴ īre, reperi, repertum, *find, discover (55)*.
repeto,² ere, ivī (ii), itum, *to claim back, demand*.
repetundae, ārum, F., *claim for restitution, on a charge of extortion (sc. res)*.
repōno,² ere, posuī, positum, *to put by, store*.
reporto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to carry back*.
reprehendo,² ere, dī, sum, *blame, seize*.
reprehēnsio,¹ āre, *hold in check*.
reprimo,² ere, pressi, pressum, *to push back, repress, restrain*.
repudio,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to reject, repudiate*.
repugno,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to fight back, resist*.
requiēs, ētis, F., *rest, repose*.
requiro,² ere, sivi (siī), situm, *to seek, search, miss (quaero)*.
rēs, rei, F., *thing, property, state, event*; plur., *circumstances*; res publica, *commonwealth, public life*.
rescindo,² ere, scidi, scissum, *to cut away*.
reservo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *reserve, keep back, preserve*.
resolvo,² ere, vī, solūtum, *melt, dissolve*.
resono,¹ āre, āvī, *to resound*.
respicio,² ere, spexī, spectrum, *to look back*.
respondeo,² ēre, dī, sum, *to reply, answer*.
rēs publica, rei publicae, F., *republic, public life*.

restat, *it remains* (to be done).
restinguo,³ ere, stinxī, stinctum,
to extinguish, quench.
restituo,³ ere, uī, ūtum, *to re-*
store (statuo).
rēte, is, N., *hunting or fishing-*
net.
retineo,² ēre, uī, tentum, *to hold*
back, retain (teneo).
retrahō,³ ere, xī, ctum, *to drag*
back.
retrō, *back, backward, behind*.
rēvērā, *in truth, really*.
reverentia, ae, F., *reverence*.
revertor,³ tī, sus, *to return*.
reviso,³ ere, revisit, *see again*.
revoco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *recall*.
revolo,¹ āre, *to fly back*.
rex, rēgis, M., *king*.
Rhea Silvia, ae, F., *the mother*
of Romulus.
Rhēnus, ī, M., *the Rhine*.
Rhodanus, ī, M., *the Rhone*.
Rhodus, ī, F., *Rhodes*.
rictus, ūs, M., *the open mouth*.
rideo,² ēre, sī, sum, *to laugh,*
laugh at, ridicule.
ripa, ae, F., *river-bank*.
risus, ūs, M., *smile, laughter*.
rīte, *rightly, duly*.
rivulus, ī, M., *little stream*.
rīvus, ī, M., *stream, brook* (49).
rixa, ae, F., *brawl, quarrel*.
rōbustus, a, um, *stout, sturdy*.
rogo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *demand,*
ask, entreat (two acc. : 79).
Rōma, ae, F., *Rome*.
Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman*.
Rōmulus, ī, M., *the founder of*
Rome.
rōs, rōris, M., *dew*.
rosa, ae, F., *rose*.
rōscidus, a, um, *dewy*.
rōstrum, ī, N., *beak*; pl., *the*
rostrum (the raised platform
from which Roman orators
addressed the people).
rubēns, tis, *growing, red*.
ruber, bra, brum, *red, ruddy*.
rūbigo, inis, F., *rust, blight*.
rudo,³ ere, īvī, ītum, *to bray*.

rūdus, eris, N., *rubbish*.
rugio,⁴ īre, īvī, ītum, *to roar*.
rugitus, ūs, M., *roaring, braying*.
ruīna, ae, F., *downfall, ruin*.
ruinōsus, a, um, *ruinous*. [(46).
rūmor, ōris, M., *report, rumor*
rumpo,³ ere, rūpī, ruptum, *to*
break, burst (RUP).
rūpēs, is, F., *rock* (59).
ruptus, a, um, *broken*.
rūrsus, *again*.
rūs, rūris, N., *the country* (as
opposed to city); pl., *fields* (8);
ruri, *in* (rure, *from the coun-*
try; rus (acc.), *to the country*.
rūsticus, a, um, *of the country,*
rustic; M., *a farmer*.

S.

Sabīnus, a, um, *Sabine*.
sacer, cra, crum, *sacred* (SAC).
sacerdōs, ōtis, M. or F., *priest,*
priestess.
sacra, ōrum, N., *sacred rites*.
saepe, ius, issimē, *often*.
saepenumero, *oftentimes*.
saevitia, ae, F., *cruelty*.
saevus, a, um, *cruel* (93).
sagācitās, ātis, F., *keenness of*
scent, sagacity, keenness.
sagāx, ācis, *keen, sagacious*.
Saguntum, ī, N., *a city of Spain*.
sāl, salis, M., *salt*.
salio,⁴ īre, uī, saltum, *to leap*.
saltatio, ōnis, F., *dancing*.
saltem, *at least*.
salto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to dance,*
leap (intens. of salio).
salūber, bris, bre, *wholesome*.
salūs, ūtis, F., *health, safety,*
preservation. [some.
salūtifer, fera, ferum, *whole-*
salūto,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to salute*.
salveo,² ēre, *be well*; imp., *hail!*
salvus, a, um, *safe, sound*.
sancio,⁴ īre, sanxi, sanctum, *to*
sanction, establish (SAC).
sanctus, a, um, *sacred*.
sānē, *to be sure, doubtless*.

sanguis, inis, M., *blood* (in the veins, or fresh), *stock, race*.
sānus, a, um, *sound, sane*.
sapiēns, tis, *wise*.
sapientia, ae, F., *wisdom*.
sapio,³ ere, ivi (ii), *to taste or savor of, understand, be wise*.
Sardēa, ium, *Sardis*, the capital of Lydia (F.).
satelles, itis, C., *satellite, attendant*.
satis, *enough*; — est, *very well*.
satis-facio,³ *satisfy* (dat.).
satus, a, um (part. of **sero**), *sown, sprung, descended*.
saxum, ī, N., *a stone, rock* (59).
scabo,⁸ ere, bī, *to scratch*.
Scævola, ae, M., a man's name, meaning *left-handed*.
scalpus, ī, M., *thole-pin*.
scelerātus, a, um; **scelestus**, a, um, *wicked, criminal* (66).
scelus, eris, N., *crime, guilt*.
scēna, ae, F., *stene, theatre-curtain, stage*.
scientia, ae, F., *knowledge* (17).
scilicet, *that is to say, forsooth*.
scindo,³ ere, scidī, scissum, *to cut, rend, divide*.
scio,⁴ īre, ivi, itum, *know* (as fact).
Scipio, ōnis, M., *Scipio*.
sciscitor,¹ āri, ātus, *to inquire*.
scriba, ae, M., *scribe, secretary*.
scribo,³ ere, psī, ptum, *to write*.
scriptum, ī, N., *a writing*.
scūtum, ī, N., *a shield* (28).
Scythēs, ae, M., *Scythian* (of an Asiatic or Tartar people).
sē, suī, sibi, *self* (p. 19).
sē, sēd- (in compos.), *apart*.
seco,¹ āre, uī, sectum, *cut*.
sector, ōris, M., *divider, buyer*.
sector,¹ āri, ātus, *to chase* (95), *hunt* (intens. of **sequor**).
secundum (prep. acc.), *along, by, according to*.
secundus, a, um, *second, favorable* (**sequor**).
secūris, is, im, ī, F., *axe*.
sēcūrus, a, um, *secure, without care or difficulty*.

secūtus, see **sequor**.
sed, *but*.
sēdecim, *sixteen*.
sedeo,³ ēre, sēdī, sessum, *sit*.
sedēs, is, F., *seat, abode* (39).
seges, etis, F., *standing crop* (94).
segnis, e, *lazy, sluggish*.
semel, *once*.
sēmēstria, e, *of six months*.
sēmet, see **-met**.
semper, *always*.
senātus, ūs, M., *senate*.
Seneca, ae, M., a Roman philosopher.
senectūs, ūtis, F., *old age*.
senesco,³ ere, senuī, *to grow old, wane, waste away*.
senex, senis, M., *old man* (100).
sēnī, ae, a, *six* (each, at a time).
senilis, e, *of an old man*.
senior, ōris, *older*; pl., *elders*.
Senones, um, a people of Gaul.
sēnsus, ūs, M., *feeling, sense*.
sententia, ae, F., *opinion* (31).
sentio,⁴ īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *feel, notice, perceive, understand*.
sentis, is, M., *thorn, brier*.
sepelio,⁴ īre, ivi (ii), sepultum, *to bury*.
sēpio,⁴ īre, sēpsī, sēptum, *to fence, enclose*.
septem, *seven*.
septimus, a, um, *seventh*.
septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred*. — **Ser.** for **Servius**.
sepulcrum, ī, N., *tomb*.
sequor,³ quī, cūtus, *follow* (95).
serēnus, a, um, *calm, clear, fair*.
Seriphus, a, um, of Seriphus, a Greek island.
sermo, ōnis, M., *talk, discourse*.
sero,³ ere, serui, sertum, *weave*.
sero,³ ere, sēvī, satum, *to plant*.
serpens, tis, M. or F., *serpent* (12).
sērus, a, um, *late, too late*.
servilis, e, *of slaves, servile*.
servitūs, ūtis, F., *slavery*.
servitium, ī, N., *slavery, troop of slaves*.
servo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to save, preserve, keep*.

servus, ī, M., *slave*.
sessio, ōnis, F., *sitting*.
sessum, (sup. of *sedeo*), *to a seat*.
sēstertium, ī, M., 1000 sesterces, = \$50 (Gr. § 379).
sēstertius, ī, M., *sesterce*, a coin of the value of 5 cents.
seu, or; **seu** . . **seu**, *whether . . or, if either . . . or if*.
severē, *with severity*.
sevērus, a, um, *stern, severe*.
sex, *six*.
sextus, a, um, *sixth*.
sī, *if*.
sibilo,¹ āre, *to hiss*.
sic, *so, thus*.
sicīne, *so?* (interrog.).
Sicilia, ae, F., *Sicily*.
Siciliēnsis, e, or **Siculus**, a, um, *Sicilian*.
sicut, **sicuti**, *as, just as, as also*.
sīdus, eris, N., *star, constellation*.
significo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *make a sign, signify, indicate*.
signum, ī, N., *mark, sign, standard, statue*.
silentium, ī, N., *silence*.
sileo,² ēre, uī, *to be silent (about)*.
silva, ae, F., *wood, forest* (96).
simia, ae, F., *a monkey* ("pug-nose").
similis, e, *like, similar* (6).
similitūdo, inis, F., *likeness*.
simul, *at the same time; simul ac, as soon as*.
simulācrum, ī, N., *an image*.
simulo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to feign, pretend*.
sīn, *but if*.
sine (abl.), *without*.
singulāris, e, *singular, unique*.
singulī, ae, a (distributivē numeral), *one by one, single*.
sino,³ ere, sivi, situm, *to leave, let, permit*.
sisto,⁵ ere, stitī, statum, *to set, place* (STA).
stītio,⁴ īre, ivī (īi), *to thirst*.
stis, is, im, ī, F., *thirst*.
sītula, ae, F., *water-bucket*.

situs, ūs, M., *neglect, dust*.
situs, a, um (sino), *placed; est situs, rests, is situated; in eo —, consisting in this*.
sive, *whether, or*.
socer, cerī, M., *father-in-law*.
societās, ātis, F., *partnership, alliance*.
socius, ī, M., *companion, partner, ally* (29).
Sōcratēs, is, M., *a philosopher of Athens*.
sodālis, is, C., *companion, friend, schoolmate* (29).
sōl, sōlis, M., *the sun*.
soleo,² ēre, solitus, *be accustomed*.
sōlātium (sōlāctum), ī, N., *solace, comfort*.
sōlītūdo, inis, F., *solitude*.
sollennis, e, *customary, solemn*.
sollers, tis, *skilful*.
sollertia, ae, F., *skill*.
solstitium, ī, N., *solstice* ("sun-stay"), *midsummer*.
sōlum, *only*.
sōlum, ī, N., *soil, ground*.
sōlus, a, um, *alone, only* (p. 7).
solvō,⁸ ere, solvi, solūtum, *loosen, relieve; crines solve, to throw loose the hair (in sign of mourning)*.
somnium, ī, N., *dream*.
somnus, ī, M., *sleep*.
sono,¹ āre, uī, itum, *to resound, sound*.
sonus, ī, M., *sound* (97).
sopor, ōris, M., *sleep*.
sordidus, a, um, *dirty, mean* (20).
soror, ōris, F., *sister*.
sors, sortis, F., *lot, destiny*.
sospes, itis, *safe* (escaped from peril).
Sp. abbrev. of *Spurius*.
spargo,³ ere, sī, sum, *to scatter*.
Sparta, ae, F., *a city of southern Greece*.
spatior,¹ āri, ātus, *to walk about*.
spatiōsus, a, um, *spacious*.
spatium, ī, N., *space*.
speciēs, iēi, F., *show, appearance*.

specimen, inis, N., *show, specimen*.
speciōsus, a, um, *showy, beautiful* (91).
spectābilis, e, *of noble aspect*.
spectāculum, ī, N., *spectacle*.
specto,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *behold, view, look, face* (-spicio).
spelunca, ae, F., *cavern*.
spēro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to hope*.
spēs, ei, F., *hope*.
spīro,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to breathe*.
splendidus, a, um, *splendid*.
spolio,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to rob, plunder*.
spondeo,² ēre, spopondi, spōnsum, *to promise, pledge, betroth* (84). [issd.]
spōnsus, a, um, *betrothed, promise*.
sponte (abl.), *accord*; suā —, *of his own accord*.
squālens, tis, *rude, disfigured*.
squāleo,² ēre, uī, *to be in mourning*.
squālor, ōris, M., *filth, mourning apparel, wretched plight* (38).
†STA, *stand* (sto,¹ sisto,³ statuo, instituo⁸).
statim, *immediately*.
statio, ōnis, F., *post, station*.
statua, ae, F., *statue*.
statūra, ae, F., *stature*.
status, ūs, M., *posture, attitude, condition*.
stella, ae, F., *star*.
sterno,³ ere, strāvi, strātum, *strew, spread a couch*.
stilus, ī, M., *style* (for writing).
stimulus, ī, M., *goad*.
stipendium, ī, N., *soldier's pay*.
stipula, ae, F., *strubble*.
stirps, stirpis, *stock, race* (50).
sto,¹ stāre, steti, statum, *stand, stop, cost*.
Stoicus, ī, M., *a Stoic*.
stomachor,¹ āri, ātus, *be vexed*.
strenuus, a, um, *bold, vigorous*.
strepitus, ūs, M., *noise* (97).
struo,³ ere, xī, ctum, *to build*.
studeo,² ere, studui, *to be earnest or eager, favor* (dat.), *study*.

studium, ī, N., *earnestness, fondness* (for), *study, zeal*.
stultitia, ae, F., *folly*.
stultus, a, um, *foolish*; M., *a fool*.
stupor, ōris, M., *stupor*.
suādeo,² ēre, si, sum, *to advise*.
suāpte (abl.), *his, her, or their own* (intens. of suā, abl.).
suāvis, e, *sweet* (41).
suāvitās, ātis, F., *sweet taste, sweetness*.
suāviter, *sweetly*.
sub (abl.), *under, near*.
subdūco,³ ere, xī, ctum, *to withdraw*.
subigo,⁸ ere, ēgī, actum, *subdue, break in* (sub-ago).
subitus, a, um, *sudden*; subitō, *suddenly*.
sublātus, see tollo.
sublevo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to up-lift, lighten, relieve* (levio).
sublicius, a, um, *of timber, on piles*.
subsidium, ī, N., *help, aid, relief*.
subvenio,⁴ ire, vēnī, ventum, *come to the relief, help*.
succēdo,⁸ ere, cēssi, cēssum, *come up to, advance, prosper, succeed*.
succurro,³ ere, curri, cursum, *to run up to, help*.
sūdo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to sweat, exude*.
sūdor, ōris, M., *sweat*.
Suēvi, ōrum, M., *Suevi or Swabians, a German tribe*.
Sulla, ae, M., *Sulla, a Roman general*.
sum, esse, fui, *I am, to be*.
summus, a, um, *highest, utmost, greatest, highest part*; — cortex, *outer hull*. [take (25).]
sūmo,⁸ ere, humpsi, sumptum, *to*
super (acc. or abl.), *upon*.
superbia, ae, F., *pride*.
superbus, a, um, *proud, haughty*.
superincidēs, tis, *falling upon*.
superior, us, *upper*.
supero,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *surpass*.

superstes, stitis, *surviving, a survivor.*

supplex, icis (adj.), *suppliant.*

supplicium, ī, N., *supplication, (capital) punishment.*

suppono,⁸ ere, posuī, positum, *to put beneath (dative).*

suprā (acc.), *above, beyond.*

surculus, ī, M., *sapling.*

surgo,⁸ ere, surrexī, surrectum, *to rise.*

sūs, suis, C., *swine* (p. 14, 3).

suscipio,⁸ ere, cēpī, ceptum, *to undertake, receive* (in succession).

suscito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to rouse, excite.*

suspicio,³ ere, spexī, spectrum, *look up to or at, suspect; suspectus, suspicious.*

sustento,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *sustain, keep alive.*

sustineo,² ēre, uī, tentum, *to sustain, check, bear up against* (sub; teneo).

sustulī, *sustuleram*, see *tollo*.

suus, a, um, *his (her or their), reflexive* (89).

Syrācūsae, ārum, F., *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

Syrācūsānus, a, um, *Syracusan.*

T.

tabellae, ārum, F., *tablets* (for writing; singular rare).

tabellārius, ī, M., *messenger, runner* (bearer of messages).

taberna, ae, F., *shop, hut.*

tabula, ae, F., *plank, panel* (for pictures), *picture.*

tacitus, a, um, *silent.*

tactus, a, um, *touch.*

taeda, ae, F., *pine-tree, torch.*

taedet, uit, *it wearies* (acc. and gen. or infin.).

taedium, ī, N., *weariness, fatigue.*

†TAG, *touch* (tango³).

talentum, ī, N., *talent* (weight or money).

tālis, e, *such; tāle, such a thing.*

tālus, ī, M., *ankle, heel.*

tamen, *yet, nevertheless, however.*

tamquam (tanquam), *so as, just so, as if.*

tandem, *at length, pray* (with question).

tango,⁸ ere, tetigī, tactum, *touch.*

tanquam, see **tamquam**.

tantopere, *so much.*

tantum, *so much, only; with plur. gen., so many; tantum abest, it is so far* [from being the case].

tantus, a, um, *so great.*

Tarentum, ī, N., *Tarentum, a town of South Italy.*

taurus, ī, M., *bull.*

tectum, ī, N., *roof, dwelling.*

tēcum = cum and te from tu.

†TEG, *cover* (tego, tectum).

tegimentum, ī, N., *covering, clothing, shelter.*

tego,⁸ ere, xī, ctum, *to shelter, cover.*

tellūs, ūris, F., *earth.*

tēlum, ī, N., *weapon of attack* (16).

temere, *rashly, hastily.*

temno,⁸ ere, temp̄sī, *to despise.*

temperātus, a, um, *tempered, temperate.*

tempero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to moderate, control, restrain; spare* (dat.: 81).

tempestās, ātis, F., *weather, storm.*

tempestivē, *seasonably, in season.*

templum, ī, N., *temple.*

tempus, oris, N., *time.*

†TEN, *strain* (tendo,⁸ teneo²).

tenāx, ācis, *tenacious* (teneo).

tendo,³ ere, tetendī, tentum, or tēsum, *to stretch, spread.*

tenebrae, ārum, F., *darkness, dark recess.*

teneo,² ēre, tenuī, tum, *hold, possess; hoc tene, mind this*

tener, era, erum, *tender.*

tenua, e, slender (44).
ter, three times.
tergum, ī, N, back; ā tergō, in the rear.
ternus, a, um, by threes, three.
terra, ae, F., earth, land.
terreo,² ēre, uī, itum, terrify, alarm.
terrester, tris, tre, earthly.
terribilis, e, full of terror.
territōrium, ī, N, territory.
terror, ōris, M., alarm, terror (object of alarm).
tertius, a, um, third.
tesca, ōrum, N., thickets.
testāmentum, ī, N., will, testament.
testimōnium, ī, N., testimony, proof.
testis, is, C., witness.
testor,¹ āri, ātus, to witness, call to witness.
tēter, tra, trum, foul, rancid.
tetigī, see tango.
theātrum, ī, N., theatre.
Thēbae, ārum, F., Thebes, a city of Greece.
Themistoclēs, is, or ī, M., a statesman of Athens.
Thermopylae, ārum, F., Thermopylae.
Thēseus, eos (ei), king and law-giver of Athens, slayer of the Minotaur.
TL, abbrev. for *Tiberius*.
Tiberinus, ī, M., god of the river Tiber.
Tiberis, is, M., the Tiber.
tibia, ae, F., pipe, leg, shin.
Tiburtēs, um, people of Tibur.
tigillum, ī, N., a small log.
tignum, ī, N., beam, log.
tigris, is (idis), C., tiger.
timeo,² ēre, timuī, fear (69).
timescōns, tis, taking alarm.
timidus, a, um, fearful, timid.
timor, ōris, M., fear.
titulus, ī, M., placard.
toga, ae, F. [*tego*], toga (99).
tolerābilis, e, tolerable, passable.
tolero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to endure.

tollo,² ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise, take up, take away.
tormentum, ī, N., torment; engine for hurling stones (torqueo).
torqueo,² ēre, torsī, tortum, to twist, hurl.
torvus, a, um, cruel, cross (in aspect).
tot, so many.
tōtus, a, um (p. 7), whole, entire; with adv. force, wholly (77).
trādo,³ ere, didī, ditum, to deliver up, betray.
trādūco,³ ere, xī, ctum, to lead across (with two acc.).
tragoedia, ae, F., tragedy.
traho,³ ere, xī, ctum, to draw, drag, bring; trahit sua quemque voluptas, every one to his liking (Eng. DRAG).
tranquillus, a, um, tranquil, calm.
trāno,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to swim across (trāns; no).
trāns (acc.), across, beyond.
trānseo, īre, ii, itum, to cross, go over.
trānsfigo,³ ere, fixī, fixum, to transfix, pierce through.
trānsfuga, ae, M., deserter.
trānsilio,⁴ īre, uī or īvī, to leap across (trāns; salio).
trānsitus, ūs, M., crossing, passage.
trānsno, see trāno.
trānsvolo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to fly across.
trecentī, ae, a, three hundred.
tremo,³ ere, tremuī, tremble (69).
tremulus, a, um, trembling.
trepidatio, ōnis, F., cowardice, alarm.
trepido,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, to be in terror (root TREP, turn).
trepidus, a, um, timid, trembling.
trēs, tria, three.
tribūnal, ālis, N., tribunal, seat of justice.
tribūnālis, e, of a tribune.

tribūnus, ī, M., *tribune*, a plebeian officer.

tricēsimus, a, um, *thirtieth*.

triduum, ī, N., *three days*.

triennium, ī, N., *three years*.

trigeminī, ōrum, *three of one birth*.

trigintā (indec.), *thirty*.

triquetrus, a, um, *three-cornered*.

tristculus, a, um, *a little sad*.

tristis, e, *sad, gloomy, cruel*.

triticum, ī, N., *wheat* (94: *tero*).

Trōja, ae, F., *Troy*.

Trōjānus, a, um, *Trojan*.

tropaeum, ī, N., *trophy*.

trucido,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to massacre* (*trux*; *caedo*).

trux, trucidis, *cruel, grim, stern, ferocious* (93).

tū, tuī, tibi, tē, *thou* (p. 18).

tuba, ae, F., *trumpet* (straight).

tubicen, inis, M., *trumpeter* (*tuba*; *cano*).

†TUD, *beat* (*tundo*⁸).

tueor,² tuērī, tuitus, *to gaze at, preserve, protect*.

tulī, perf. of *fero* (p. 39).

Tullus, ī, M., a Roman king.

tum, *then*; **tum** . . **tum**, *now . . now, not only . . . but also*.

tumeo,³ ēre, uī, *to swell*.

tumultuōsus, a, um, *tumultuous* (*tumeo*).

tumultus, ūs, M., *tumult* (22).

tūne, *you?* — **tuno**, *then*.

tunica, ae, F., *tunic* (99).

turba, ae, F., *a crowd* (85).

turbo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, *to disturb*.

turpis, e, *ugly, disgraceful, evil*.

turris, is, F. (p. 14), *a tower*.

tūs (*thūs*), tūris, N., *incense*.

tūtus, a, um, *safe, defended*; in tūtum, *to a safe place* (*tueor*).

tuus, a, um, *thy, thine, your* (almost always).

Tyndaris, idis, F., *daughter of Tyndarus* (Helen).

tyrannus, ī, M., *tyrant*.

Tyrius, a, um, *Tyrian*, of Tyre, an ancient city of Syria.

U.

ūber, eris, *rich, fertile*.

ubi, *where, when; where? when?*

ubinam, *where* (emphatic)?

ubique, *everywhere*.

ubivis, *anywhere* (where you will).

ulciscor,⁸ cī, ultus, *to revenge, punish*.

Ulixēs, is or eī, M., *Ulysses*.

ullus, a, um (gen. ius : p. 7), *any*.

ultimus, a, um, *last*.

ultor, ōris, M, *avenger*.

ultus, see *ulciscor*.

umbilicus, ī, M., *navel, centre*.

umbra, ae, F., *shade, shadow*.

umbrōsus, a, um, *shadowy, shady*.

umquam, *ever*.

unā, *together*; **unā cum**, *along with*.

unda, ae, F., *wave*.

unde, *whence, from which*.

undique, *from every side, everywhere*.

unguentum, ī, N., *ointment*.

unguis, is, M., *claw, talon*.

ūnicus, a, um, *single, unique*.

ūniversus, a, um, *all together, whole, entire* (77).

unquam, see *umquam*.

ūnus, a, um (gen. ius : p. 7), *one*.

ūnusquisque, unaquaque, &c. (gen. uniuscūjusque), *each one, every one*.

urbānus, a, um, *of the city, polite*.

urbs, urbis, F., *city* (98).

ūro,⁸ ūrere, ūssi, ūstum, *to burn*.

ursus, ī, M., *a bear*.

urtica, ae, F., *nettle* (*uro*).

usquam, *anywhere*.

usque, *even, up to*; **quo** —, *how far?* — **ad**, *as far as*.

ūsus, ūs, M., *use, advantage, experience* (70).

ut (with subj.), *that, so that*; (with indic.), *when, as, how*.

ūter, *utra, utrum*, gen. *utrius*, (see p. 7), *which* (of the two)?

uterque, utraque, utrumque (gen. utriusque), *both* (making the verb plural in English).

utī (ut), *that, so that.*

ūtilis, e, *useful, advantageous, serviceable, expedient* (30).

ūtilitās, ātis, F., *utility, advantage, usefulness.*

ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus, use, employ (abl.).

utrumque, on both sides.

utrum, whether (see p. 11).

ūva, ae, F., *grape, cluster.*

uxor, ōris, F., *wife.*

V.

vacat, there is leisure.

vaccinium, ī, N., *hyacinth, blueberry.*

vacillo, āre, āvī, ātum, to shift about, stagger.

vacuus, a, um, empty, unoccupied, empty-handed.

vādo, ēre, to go, advance (43).

vae, alas!

vāgio, īre, ivī (iī), itum, to cry (as an infant).

vagor, āri, ātus, to wander, roam. [*ing.*]

vagus, a, um, wandering, roam-valdē, strongly, very, quite.

valeo, ēre, uī, itum, be strong, be well, be worth, prevail (87); **valē** (imperat.), *farewell*; **valeat, valeant, farewell to, away with.**

valētūdo, inis, F., *health* (state of health).

validus, a, um, strong (in almost all senses).

vallis (vallēs), is, F., *valley.*

vallum, ī, N., *rampart, palisade.*

vānus, a, um, empty, idle, vain.

varietās, ātis, F., *variety, variation.*

vario, āre, āvī, ātum, to vary.

varius, a, um, various.

vastitās, ātis, F., *devastation, desolation, vastness.*

vasto, āre, āvī, ātum, to devastate, lay waste.

vastus, a, um, vast (65), *desolate. -ve* (enclitic), *or.*

vehementer, vigorously, very much.

Vēientēs, ium, the people of Vēii, ōrum, M., a city near Rome.

vel, or, even; vel . . vel, either

velōx, ōcis, swift. [. . or.

velut, as, just as.

vēnābulum, ī, N., *hunting-spear.*

vēnālis, e, for sale.

vēnātio, ōnis, F., *hunting.*

vēnātor, ōris, M., *hunter.*

vēnātrix, icis, F., *huntress.*

vēnātum, see venor.

vēnditio, ōnis, F., *sale.*

vēnditor, ōris, M., *the seller.*

vēndo, ēre, didī, ditum, put to sale, sell (venum; do).

vēnēnum, ī, N., *poison.*

vēneo, īre, ivī (iī), itum, to be sold (go to sale : **venum** ; eo).

veneror, āri, ātus, to venerate, worship.

Venetī, ōrum, M., a people of western Gaul.

venia, ae, F., *pardon, permission, favor, indulgence.*

venio, īre, vēnī, ventum, come.

vēnor, āri, ātus, hunt; vēnātum (sup.), *a-hunting.*

ventus, ī, M., *wind* (19).

Venus, eris, F., the goddess of Love and Beauty. [*elegance.*]

venustās, ātis, F., *grace, polish,*

vēr, vēris, N., *spring.* [*scourge.*]

verbero, āre, āvī, ātum, to beat,

verbum, ī, N., *a word.*

vērē, truly, with truth, rightly.

verēcundus, a, um, bashful, modest.

vereor, ērī, itus, to respect, fear (69), *vereor ne veniat, I fear he will come; vereor ut —,*

I fear he will not come.

vērītās, ātis, F., *truth.*

vērnus, a, um, spring (adj.), *of the spring, vernal.*

vērō, in truth, in fact, but, and (with emphasis on the word which precedes).

Verrēs, is, M., a tyrannical Roman governor of Sicily.
verro,⁸ ere, verri, versum, to sweep, sweep away.
verso,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, to turn (freq. of **verto**).
versor,¹ āri, ātus, to be, abide, turn about, occupy one's self in.
versus, ūs, M., verse (**verto**).
vertex, icis, M., the head, top, vertex (sometimes equivalent to **vortex**, whirl, eddy).
verto,⁸ ere, tī, sum, to turn.
vērūm, but, in truth. [earnest.
vērus, a, um, true; re verā, in **vescor**,³ cī, to feed on (abl.).
vesper, erī, M., evening; ad vesperum or vesperi, at evening.
vespera, ae, F., evening.
Vesta, ae, F., goddess of the Hearth or Home.
vestibulum, ī, N., vestibule.
vestigium, ī, N., footprint, trace.
vestio,⁴ īre, ivī (iī), itum, to clothe, cover (as with garment, forests, &c.).
vestis, is, F., clothing, raiment, vesture (99).
vestitus, ūs, M., clothing, garb, covering (99).
veto,¹ āre, vetuī, vetitum, to forbid (acc. and infin.).
vetus, eris, old, ancient (100).
vetustās, ātis, F., antiquity.
vexillum, ī, N., flag, standard.
vexo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, to vex, trouble, distress.
via, ae, F., way, road, course (56).
Sacra Via, the principal street of Rome.
viātor, ōris, M., a traveller.
†VIC, conquer (**vinco**³).
vicēsīmus, a, um, twentieth.
vicīnum, ī (N. of the following), neighborhood.
vicīnus, a, um, neighboring; M., neighbor.
vicis (gen.), em, e; plur. ēs, ibus, F., share, turn, changing aspect; meam vicem, on my account; in vicem, in turn.

victor, ōris, M., conqueror; (as adj.), victorious.
victōria, ae, F., victory.
victus, ūs, M., food, living (**vīvo**).
video,² ēre, vidī, visum, see; videor, ēri, visus, to be seen, seem, appear.
vidēane, don't you see?
vigeo,³ ēre, to be vigorous or flourishing.
vigil, ilis, watchful; M., a watchman (**vigeo**).
vigilāntia, ae, F., watchfulness.
vigilia, ae, F., watching, watch (division of the night).
vigilo,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, to watch, wake, remain awake.
vīginti (indecl.), twenty.
vilis, e, cheap.
vilitās, ātis, F., cheapness.
villa, ae, F., farm-house, villa or country-house (39).
villus, ī, M., shaggy hair (of animals), wool.
vincio,⁴ īre, vinxī, vinctum, to bind about, fasten (63).
vinclum = **vinculum**.
vinco,³ ere, vici, victum, to conquer (**VIC**).
vinculum, ī, N., bond, tie, chain.
vindico,¹ āre, āvi, ātum, assert, claim, punish.
vīnea, ae, F., a vine-trellis, shed (for besiegers).
vinum, ī, N., wine.
vir, virī, M., man (53), husband.
virēns, tis, green, flourishing.
vīrēs, ium (**vīs**), F., strength.
virga (ula), ae, F., rod, twig.
virginitās, ātis, F., virginity, age or condition as a maiden.
virgo, inis, F., maiden, virgin.
virgultum, ī, N., shrubbery (15).
virilis, e, of a man, manly.
virtūs, ūtis, F., manliness, valor, excellence, virtue.
vīs, vis, vim, vī, F., force, violence; plur. **vīrēs**, strength.
viscera, um, N., flesh (plur. of **viscus**, a vital organ).
visne or **vīn** (**volo**), will you?

visūrus, fut. part., and **visus**, perf. part. of **video**.

visus, ūs, M., *sight, vision (video)*.

vīta, ac, F., *life*.

vitiōsus, a, um, *vicious, full of faults*.

vītis, is, F., *grape-vine*.

vitium, ī, N., *vice, fault*.

vito,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to avoid*.

vitupero,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to blame, censure (vitium)*.

vīvo,⁸ ere, vixī, vīctum, *live*.

vīvus, a, um, *alive, living*.

vix, *with difficulty, scarcely*.

vōcālis, e, *loud, vocal, tuneful*.

vōciferor,¹ āri, ātus, *to call aloud, shout (vox; fero)*.

voco,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *call (in all senses)*.

volāntia, um, N., *flying things, insects*.

volcānus, ī, M., *fire (Vulcan)*.

Volcānus or **Vulcānus**, ī, M., *Vulcan, the god of Fire*.

volēns, tis, *willing*.

volo,¹ āre, āvī, ātum, *to fly*.

volo, velle, voluī (irreg. p. 38), *to wish (33); sibi vult, means*.

voluntās, ātis, F., *will, feeling, wish*.

voluptās, ātis, F., *pleasure*.

vōs, vēstrum or vōstrum (trī), vōbīs, *you (p. 18)*.

vōsmet, *yourselves (emphatic; see -met)*.

vōtum, ī, N., *vow*.

voceo,² ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow*.

vōx, vōcis, F., *voice (97)*.

vulcānus, see **volcānus**.

vulgāris, e, *of the crowd, vulgar*.

vulgus (volgus), ī, N., *the lower classes, the crowd (85)*.

vulnus (volnus), eris, N., *a wound*.

vulpēs, is, F., *fox*.

vultus (voltus), ūs, M., *expression, face, countenance*.

X

Xerxēs, is, M., *a king of Persia*.

Z

Zephyrus, ī, M., *the West wind*.

NOTE. — The final o in verbs, and in such words as *leo, natio*, though almost invariably long, is regarded by most prosodists as common, and has therefore not been marked. The authority for special exceptions will be found in Arnold's "Anticleptic Gradus."

SYNONYMES:

WITH GROUPS OF VARIOUSLY RELATED WORDS, ILLUSTRATING
ONE ANOTHER'S MEANING.

NOTE. — In using the following list of allied or kindred words,* it must be borne in mind that the distinctions drawn are often slight, and that, especially in poetic use, the boundaries are varying and uncertain. The accurate meaning and employment of words should always be sought in a larger lexicon.

1. **A**, **ab** (opp. to **ad**), *away from*; **de**, *down or aside from*; **e**, **ex** (opp. to **in**), *out of*.

2. **abdo**,³ **abscondo**,³ *hide*, or put out of sight; **condo**,³ **recondo**,³ *lay away for safe keeping*; **occulo**,³ **occulto**,¹ *cover up*; **celo**,¹ *conceal from one what he has a right to know* (compare 80).

3. **abeo**, *go away*; **exeo**, *go out from*; **discedo**,³ *depart to some other place*; **decedo**,³ *give way to some one else*; **excedo**,³ *withdraw wholly*; **profiscor**,³ *set forth on a journey*.

4. **accidit**,³ *it happens* (suddenly), with reference to some effect; **contingit**, *it befalls* (fortunately), coincident with something else; **evenit**, *it turns out*, as resulting from some event; **obtingit**, *it falls to*, by lot or otherwise; **obvenit**, *it results from some chance*, &c.

5. **acies**, *army in line of battle* — with its "edge" of weapons; **agmen**, *in line of march (ago)*; **exercitus**, *the disciplined force itself* (see 61).

6. **aequus**, *level, even*; also *fair, calm, just*; **par**, *equal*, in number, strength, &c.; **aequalis**, *usually of like age*; **aequabilis**, *equable in one's self, uniform*; **similis**, *like*.

7. **aetas**, *age* (period of life); **tempus**, *time* (of limited duration); **aevum**, *a long period*; **saeculum**, *age or century*.

8. **ager**, *field in general, especially wild or open, also public territory*; **campus**, *an extended plain*; **arvum**, *ploughed land*; **pratium**, *meadow, level or grassy*; **rus**, *the country*, as opposed to city.

* Prepared with the aid of Ramshorn's "Latin Synonymes," and of the lists in Bul-
lions's Dictionary.

9. **albus**, *dead white* (opp. to **ater**); **candidus**, *bright white* (opp. to **niger**); **canus**, *gray* or *hoary*.

10. **altus**, *high, deep*; **arduus**, *steep, difficult*; **celsus** (**excelsus**), *lofty, stately*; **editus**, *uplifted*; **sublimis**, *on high*.

11. **amo**,¹ *to love with affection*; **diligo**,³ *with esteem*; **adamo**,¹ *conceive affection for*; **deamo**,¹ *of ardent passion*.

12. **anguis**, *snake* (swift, darting); **serpens**, *the crawling creature* (**vipera**, **coluber**, &c., special venomous kinds); **draco**, *dragon*, often used poetically for **serpens**.

13. **anima**, *life* (animal life); **animus**, *soul* (thought or passion); **mens**, *intelligence*; **indoles**, *disposition, talent*; **ingenium**, *mind or genius*, as innate quality.

14. **animal**, *animal*, the living thing; **bestia**, *beast* (wild and fierce; plur. *brutes* in general); **belua**, a bulky and monstrous creature (as elephant or whale); **fera**, *wild animal* as opposed to tame; **pecus**, *tame animal* as opposed to wild (see 51).

15. **arbor**, *tree*; **frutex**, *shrub*; **arbustum**, a place planted with trees; **virgultum**, *bushes, thicket*.

16. **arma**, *weapons* in general, especially defensive: **galea**, *helmet*; **lorica**, *corselet* of leather or metal; **ocreae**, *greaves* for the leg; **scutum** (or **clipeus**, 28), *shield*. It may also, more generally, include *offensive weapons* (for which the proper word is **tela**): **gladius**, *sword*, short, straight, and pointed (**ensis**, **muco**, **ferrum**, poetic); **pilum**, *javelin*, a heavy missile with long thin blade and stout handle; **hasta**, *spear* or *pike*, for thrusting; **jaculum**, *dart*; **arcus**, *bow*; **sagittae**, *arrows*, &c.

17. **ars**, *art* (the practice; **artes**, acquired skill); **scientia**, *knowledge* (theory); **artificium**, skill of the *artifex*, or craftsman.

18. **audeo**,² *dare*, in reference to danger; **conor**,¹ *undertake*, of importance; **moli**,⁴ *attempt*, of difficulty.

19. **aura**, *breeze*; **ventus**, *wind*; **flamen**, *blast*; **flatus**, *flabrum*, of gentle or favorable winds.

20. **avarus**, *covetous*; **avidus**, *greedy*; **cupidus**, *eager*; **parcus**, *frugal*; **sordidus**, *mean, stingy*.

21. **avis**, a *bird* (feathered creature); **ales**, winged (especially of large birds, or poetic); **volucris**, as capable of flight; **praepes**, of swift and lofty flight; **oscen** [**os**, **cano**], of omen by the voice.

22. **bellum**, *war*; **pugna**, *fight* (in general); **proellum**, *battle*; **militia**, *warfare* (the soldier's trade); **tumultus**, a sudden tumult or insurrection (near home).

23. **bonus**, *good* (kind or virtuous); **probus**, *upright*; **fortis**, *bold, manly, valiant*; **honestus**, *honorable* (see 41).

24. **caedes**, *killing, massacre*; **clades**, *defeat, disaster*; **strages**, *carnage*; **internecio**, *destruction*.

25. **capio**,³ *grasp, contain*; **accipio**,³ *to receive*; **excipio**,³ *take what comes in one's way*; **recipio**,³ *to take back*; **suscipio**,³ *undertake*; **rapio**,³ *seize*; **adripio**,³ **corripio**,³ *seize with force or eagerness*; **sumo**,³ *to take (without force)*.

26. **careo**,² *to lack or be in want*; **egeo**,² **indigeo**,² *to be in need*; **vaco**,¹ *to be empty or at leisure*.

27. **carmen**, *a song or brief poem (the words)*; **cantus**, *song (as sung)*; **versus**, **poema**, *the composition*.

28. **clipeus**, *shield, oval, of brass*; **scutum**, *of wood, with skin covering and iron rim*; **parma**, **pelta**, **cetra**, *buckler (small shields of peculiar shape)*; **ancile**, *short and oval, borne in processions*.

29. **comes**, *companion (fellow traveller)*; **socius**, *partner or ally*; **sodalis**, *boon companion, or member of a club*.

30. **commodus**, *convenient or suitable in itself*; **opportunus**, *fit according to circumstance*; **utilis**, *of service to some end*.

31. **consilium**, *counsel or advice, the result of reflection*; **sententia**, *opinion, considered and fixed, especially in deliberative bodies, as the Senate or a jury*; **opinio**, *notion, conjecture (compare 92)*.

32. **culpa**, *fault*; **crimen**, *charge of any offence*; **delictum**, *fault of omission or neglect*; **peccatum**, *a wilful misdeed*; **facinus**, *act (facto), often implying violence*; **maleficium**, *crime*.

33. **cupio**,³ *to desire, long for any thing*; **concupisco**,³ *to feel a longing*; **opto**,¹ *choose or wish*; **desidero**,¹ *to feel the want of*; **volo**, *wish or intend*.

34. **cutis**, *skin (on the body)*; **pellis**, *the fresh soft hide*; **corium**, *coarse or tanned hide, leather*; **aluta**, *a soft leather prepared with alum*; **tergus**, *skin of the back and body*.

35. **damnum**, *loss or forfeit*; **detrimentum**, *damage (wearing away)*; **jactura**, *loss by shipwreck, &c. (a casting away)*; **incommodum**, *disaster, loss by misfortune or defeat (a euphemism)*.

36. **daps**, *any rich food*; **pl.**, *feast*; **epulum**, *a public or religious banquet*; **cena**, *dinner, the chief meal of the day*; **prandium**, **merenda**, *lunch*; **jentaculum**, *an early breakfast*; **cibus**, *any food*.

37. **do**,¹ *to give in general*; **dono**,¹ *of a formal or valuable gift*; **dedo**,³ *surrender (compare abdo, perdo, trado, prodo, condo, vendo)*; **largior**,⁴ *of lavish gifts*.

38. **dolor**, *pain in general*; **maeror**, *a settled sadness*; **luctus**, *grief with signs of mourning*; **cura**, *anxiety or distress of mind*;

aerumna, misery, affliction ; **aegritudo**, distress (of mind, chiefly) ; **aegrimonia**, of body ; **tristitia**, sadness as shown by outward signs ; **miseria**, wretchedness, as of destitution, &c. ; **molestia**, annoyance or distress from some special cause ; **squalor**, disfigurement in sign of mourning.

39. **domus**, house, as dwelling, also a large or fine house ; **aedes**, as a building, or group of apartments ; **tectum**, shelter ; **sedes**, place of permanent abode ; **villa**, farm-house ; **insula**, a city-mansion or block, occupying a whole square ; **atrium**, hall, the main apartment of the house ; **aula**, poetic, and used of royal courts, &c. (see 86).

40. **donum**, gift ; **munus**, of bounty or obligation (compare 57) ; **praemium**, reward considered as the receiver's due ; **beneficium**, as the giver's bounty ; **merces**, wages.

41. **dulcis**, sweet ; **blandus**, gentle, caressing ; **comis**, kind, courteous ; **lenis**, soft ; **mollis**, smooth (to the touch) ; **suavis**, agreeable to the senses in general ; **amoenus**, to the eye in particular.

42. **dux**, leader, properly a guide (so **ductor**) ; **imperator**, commander, with military authority ; **legatus**, aid or lieutenant, who receives his commission from the Senate instead of popular election, and is hence regarded as a *delegate*.

43. **eo**, to go, in general ; **gradior**,² advance with steps ; **grassor**,¹ (intens.), to walk rapidly ; **proficiscor**,³ set forth ; **vado**,³ advance firmly ; **spatior**,⁴ with long or stately strides.

44. **exilis**, slight or lean ; **tenuis**, thin, delicate ; **gracilis**, slender, little ; **macer**, lean, lank.

45. **fallo**,² to deceive, or betray into error ; **decipio**,³ to take un-awares ; **fraudo**,¹ deprive of one's due ; **frustror**,¹ to frustrate or disappoint ; **deludo**,³ beguile.

46. **fama**, fame, repute (wide-spread) ; **rumor**, report ; **gloria**, glory, resting on esteem ; **laus**, praise or good-name ; **praedicatio**, publishing of deeds or merit ; **decus**, outward splendor or distinction ; **honor**, honor or respect, pl. *public honors* ; **munus**, office, as implying service or obligation (compare 57).

47. **felix**, happy or fortunate ; **beatus**, prosperous ; **faustus**, of good omen ; **fortunatus**, lucky, rich (favored by fortune).

48. **finis**, end (pl. *boundary*) ; **modus**, limit to excess ; **terminus**, landmark ; **limes**, a belt of land marking the division of estates.

49. **flumen**, river or stream in general ; **fluvius**, the flowing body of water ; **amnis** (generally), broad and navigable ; **rivus**, **rivulus**, brook, rivulet ; **torrens**, a sudden violent flow, from rains, &c.

50. *gens*, race including nations (*nationes*), or house including families (*familiae*); *genus*, origin or kind; *stirps*, stock; *prosapia*, used of ancient and extensive family connection.

51. *grex*, flock, especially of sheep, &c.; *armentum*, herd of cattle, horses, &c.; *jumentum*, yoke-beast; *pecus*, flock or herd (*pecora*, cattle in general); *pecus* (*udis*), a creature of the flock (14).

52. *hic*, this (of the person speaking); *iste*, that (of the person addressed); *ille*, that (at a distance, well-known, or the following); *is*, especially as correlative with *qui*, one who, &c. (see Gr. § 20).

53. *homo*, man, as a human being in general; *vir*, man, a male person, or as implying force, energy, &c.

54. *hostis*, an enemy (public); pl., the enemy; *inimicus*, a personal foe, or rival; *adversarius*, opponent at law, &c.

55. *invenio*,⁴ to find or meet; *reperio*,⁴ discover something hidden or unknown; *nanctiscor*,³ happen upon (as game); *offendo*,³ stumble upon.

56. *iter*, way of travel; *via*, a broad street, &c.; *semita*, a narrow way; *trames*, by-path; *callis*, foot-track; *angiportus*, alley-way.

57. *jus*, a right, or general law; *lex*, statute; *fas*, moral right, or duty; *officium*, duty as obligation or service; *munus*, duty, as connected with civil or official position (*function*).

58. *labor*, toil, hardship; *opus*, the work accomplished; *opera*, implying workmanship or active energy (pl. *hands*).

59. *lapis*, stone of any sort; *saxum*, rock, hard or large; *silex*, flint; *cautes*, cliff; *rupes*, a mass of rock, precipice; *scopulus*, a peak (giving an extensive view).

60. *lectus*, bed; *cubile*, any resting-place; *stratum*, any thing strewn, couch or covering; *torus*, couch, or mattress.

61. *legio*, legion (of about 5000); *cohors*, cohort or battalion, one-tenth of a legion (in later use, auxiliary infantry); *manipulus*, maniple, one-third of the cohort; *turma*, troop of 30 horsemen; *ala*, a division of auxiliary cavalry; *caterva*, any band of forces; *phalanx*, a close array of 800 men (Greek).

62. *liber*, free; *libertus*, a freedman; *libertinus*, one of the class of freedmen; *ingenuus*, freeborn, or becoming to a freeman.

63. *ligo*,¹ to bind fast (by winding about); *vincio*,⁴ to bind with chains; *necto*,³ to fasten by knotting or entwining; *jungo*,³ to unite in one.

64. *loquor*,³ to speak, talk; *dico*,³ to say, or speak more formally; *for*,¹ to use the faculty of speech; *aiō*, assent, say yes; *inquam*, inquit, said I, said he, only in quotations.

65. **magnus**, great in all senses ; **ingens**, of extraordinary bulk or force ; **grandis**, large of its kind ; **amplus**, broad, grand ; **procerus**, tall ; **vastus**, **enormis**, of something huge or prodigious.

66. **malus**, evil by nature ; **pravus**, vicious, deformed ; **improbus**, unprincipled, dishonest ; **scelestus**, **sceleratus**, criminal or wicked ; **reus**, arraigned as an offender ; **sons**, **nocens**, guilty.

67. **mare**, sea, as opposed to land ; **aequor**, the extended surface ; **pelagus**, the flood of waters ; **pontus**, often of some special part (a poetic word) ; **fretum**, strait or narrow sea.

68. **memini**, remember ; **reminiscor**,³ call to mind ; **recordor**,³ endeavor to recall.

69. **metuo**,³ to fear, dread more or less remotely ; **timeo**,² a more present danger ; **vereor**,² with awe or respect ; **formido**,¹ to be in a state of dread ; **paveo**,² in a disordered fright ; **tremo**,³ tremble.

70. **mos**, custom which grows to a rule of conduct ; hence pl. character (as formed by conduct) ; **consuetudo**, a settled custom ; **usus**, experience or advantage of practice.

71. **motus**, emotion ; **affectio**, of any change or condition of mind or body ; **affectus**, chiefly of the mind ; **perturbatio**, trouble or irregular passion.

72. **eloquens**, eloquent, implying the highest qualities of the orator, both fervor and trained skill ; **disertus**, implying easy skillful and natural discourse ; **facundus**, fluent and tonguey.

73. **navis**, ship, generally of large size (**navis longa**, a galley propelled by oars, for swiftness in battle) ; **navigium**, of smaller craft ; **linter**, **cymba**, skiff, wherry ; **ratis**, raft or flat-boat, hastily built ; **phaselus**, a pleasure-boat ; **puppis**, stern (poetic for **navis**).

74. **nomen**, the family name, as **Julius** ; **praenomen**, personal name, as **Caius** ; **cognomen**, surname, as **Cæsar** ; **agnomen** (added name), of adoption, as **Octavianus**, or of some exploit, as **Africanus**.

75. **nubes**, cloud ; **nimbus**, rain-cloud ; **nebula**, mist or fleecy cloud ; **imber**, rain-storm ; **fulgor**, lightning ; **fulmen**, thunderbolt ; **tonitrus**, the noise of thunder ; **nix**, snow ; **grando**, hail.

76. **odium**, hate ; **simultas**, malice or grudge ; **inimicitia**, enmity, as from a quarrel between friends ; **invidia**, odium or unpopularity.

77. **omnis**, all, every ; **totus**, whole, as a unit ; **cunctus**, all considered as parts united (**conjunctus**) ; **universus**, all together, the whole as made up of individuals.

78. **opes**, wealth, resources in general, as means to an end ; **copla**, abundance ; **divitiae**, riches, great wealth ; **facultas**, property as a means of influence, &c. (cf. 88).

79. **oro**,¹ to beg, pray; **peto**,³ seek or request; **quaero**,³ seek or inquire; **rogo**,¹ to entreat as a favor; **obsecro**,¹ beseech earnestly; **obtestor**,¹ conjure, appeal; **precor**,¹ pray as to a divine being; **posco**,³ demand with urgency; **postulo**,¹ demand as a right; **repeto**,³ claim as one's own.

80. **ostendo**,³ show, hold in sight; **ostento**¹ (intens.), display; **monstro**,¹ point out; **exhibeo**,³ hold forth to view; **pando**,³ spread open; **aperio**,⁴ uncover; **patefacio**,³ **recludo**,³ throw open (as the gates of a city), or lay bare what was hidden.

81. **parco**,³ spare; **moderor**,¹ restrain, control; **tempero**,¹ regulate, refrain; **rego**,³ guide, direct.

82. **pauper**, poor (not destitute); **egenus**, distressed by want; **inops**, destitute, helpless; **egenus**, **indigenus**, needy.

83. **perdo**,³ to lose (by one's own fault), destroy; **amitto**,³ to lose by misfortune.

84. **polliceor**,² to promise, voluntarily; **promitto**,³ to engage for the future; **spondeo**,² to pledge.

85. **populus**, the people making a community; **plebs**, the commons, as distinguished from the upper or governing class; **vulgus**, the lower classes as such; **turba**, a mob.

86. **porta**, city-gate; **janua**, entrance, outer door; **foris**, the door proper; **valvae**, folding-doors; **ostium**, door-way to an apartment; **limen**, threshold; **vestibulum**, porch.

87. **possum**, I can (of simple ability); **queo**, no obstacle preventing; **polleo**,² to be relatively strong; **valeo**,² to be in good health and vigor; **potior**,⁴ get possession of.

88. **potestas**, power (what we may); **potentia**, (what we can); **facultas**, power or opportunity of doing (78); **dicio**, jurisdiction; **imperium**, military authority; **auctoritas**, authority, or influence of station, &c.; **gratia**, personal influence.

89. **proprius**, one's own as opposed to common property; **suus**, **ipsius**, as opposed to other persons.

90. **pugno**,¹ fight; **certo**,¹ strive, vie; **contendo**,³ contend for the attainment of any thing; **decerto**,¹ **decerno**,³ decide by contest; **dimico**,¹ contend as implying two parties.

91. **pulcher**, beautiful, the most general term; **formosus**, of the face and person; **venustus**, graceful; **decorus**, dignified or becoming; **speciosus**, of fine appearance; **bellus**, pretty.

92. **puto**,¹ think, suppose; **arbitror**,¹ to form a judgment; **credo**,³ believe; **existimo**,¹ form an estimate; **reor**,³ of similar meaning, but poetic; **opinor**,¹ suppose (compare 31); **censeo**,² of formal and deliberate opinion, especially in the Senate.

93. **saevus**, cruel, wrathful ; **barbarus**, rude, barbarous ; **atrox**, dreadful ; **ferox**, fierce in temper ; **immanis**, monstrous, wicked ; **durus**, harsh, stern ; **ferus**, wild, savage ; **dirus**, destructive ; **trux**, of fierce aspect ; **crudelis**, inexorable.

94. **seges**, cornfield (standing corn) ; **messis**, harvest ; **far**, spelt, a coarse grain, the earliest food of the Romans ; **frumentum**, grain, or corn ; **tritium**, fine wheat ; **hordeum**, barley ; **avena**, oats ; **fruges**, crops, fruits of the earth ; **fructus**, fruit (of trees) ; **annona** (the year's produce), grain in market ; hence, *price of corn*.

95. **sequor**,² follow ; **sector**¹ (intens.), chase, pursue ; **insequor**,² follow close ; **adsequor**,² come up with ; **consequor**,² overtake, attain.

96. **silva**, wood, forest ; **nemus**, grove or park (of tall trees) ; **lucus**, a shady or dark grove ; **saltus**, glade (open space in the woods), defile, or mountain pass. (Both **nemus** and **lucus** are used of sacred groves, especially the latter.)

97. **sonus**, sound ; **clamor**, shout, cry ; **sonitus**, a great noise ; **fragor**, crash (as of falling trees) ; **clangor**, noise of arms, blast of instruments, &c. ; **vox**, the voice ; **strepitus**, a confused noise.

98. **urbs**, city, as a collection of buildings, streets, &c. ; **civitas**, the political community ; **oppidum**, a walled or garrison town.

99. **vestis**, clothing in general ; **vestitus**, apparel ; **amictus**, cloak or wrapper ; **tunica**, tunic, a belted shirt without sleeves ; **toga**, *toga*, a large shawl of unbleached wool, the distinguishing costume of the Romans ; **stola**, gown, woman's garment ; **peplum**, mantle worn by women ; **palla**, upper garment of women ; **pallium**, a Grecian cloak ; **sagum**, military cloak ; **paludamentum**, officer's cloak ; **trabea**, a royal robe ; **paenula**, a travelling cloak.

100. **vetus**, old ; **antiquus**, very ancient ; **priscus**, of old time ; **grandaevus**, venerable in years ; **senex**, old man (after the age of 63) ; **longaevus**, of long duration (as custom, &c.).

SYNOPSIS OF CONSTRUCTIONS.

N.B. The references to *pages* are to this book; those to *sections* are to the Revised Edition of the Grammar.

I. — THE SENTENCE.

- I. A SENTENCE may be either Simple or Compound : viz.,
1. SIMPLE : containing a single statement (Subject and Predicate).
 2. COMPOUND : { *a.* Containing two or more co-ordinate clauses.
 b. Modified by subordinate clauses (*complex*).

II. The Essential Parts of the Sentence are —

1. The SUBJECT : consist- { *a.* Noun or its equivalent.
 b. Pronoun contained in verb-ending.
2. The PREDICATE : con- { *a.* Neuter (intransitive) Verb.
 b. Copula with Complement.
 c. Verb with Object.

III. The Subject and Predicate may be MODIFIED as follows :

1. The NOUN (*Subject or Object*) by { *a.* Noun in Apposition.
 b. Adjective or Participle.
 c. Noun in Oblique Case.
 d. Preposition with its Case.
 e. Relative Clause.
2. The VERB (*predicate*) by { *a.* Adverb or Adverbial Phrase.
 b. Predicate Adjective.
 c. Subordinate Clause.

IV. The PARTS OF SPEECH may be described as follows :—

1. The NOUN : as *proper* (name of a Person or Place), *common* (name of a Thing), or *abstract* (name of a Quality).
2. The ADJECTIVE : *a.* by Gender, Number, Case, Degree.
 b. as Descriptive, Possessive, Derivative, &c.
 c. as Attributive, Predicate, Appositive (G. 186).
3. The PRONOUN : as, Personal, Demonstrative, Relative, &c.
4. The VERB : *a.* by Conjugation (*principal parts*) ;
 b. by Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

The Forms of the Verb may be analyzed according to the instructions given on pages 8, 27, 42 (Gr. pp. 63-67, 71-74).

V. The following are the Rules of Agreement (*the Four Concords*) :—

1. NOUNS agree in Case (p. 7) :
 a. in *Apposition* { Abl. with Locative (184. *c*).
 Gen. with Possessive (184. *d*)
 b. in *Predicate Agreement* (p. 9).
2. The ADJECTIVE agrees in Gender, Number, and Case (p. 6) —
 a. With nearest Noun (Gr. 187).
 b. By *Synesis* with Noun implied (Gr. 187. *d*).
3. The RELATIVE agrees in Gender and Number (p. 21) :—
 a. With Appositive rather than Antecedent (Gr. 199).
 b. Sometimes in Case by attraction (Gr. 199. *b*).
4. The VERB agrees with Subject-Nominative in Number and Person.

II. — CONSTRUCTIONS OF CASES.

1. — *Genitive.*

1. **SUBJECTIVE** : { 1. of Possession, 214.
2. of Source or Material, 214. *c.*
3. of Quality (with Adjectives), 215.
2. **PARTITIVE** : of the Whole, after words designating a Part, 216.
3. **OBJECTIVE** : { 1. with Nouns of action and feeling, 217.
2. with Adjectives { Relative adjective or Verbal, 218.
for Specification (later use), 218. *c.*
3. with Verbs { of Memory and Feeling, 219, 221.
of Accusing, &c. (secondary obj.), 220.

2. — *Dative.*

1. **AS INDIRECT OBJECT** (general use) : { *a.* with Transitives, 225.
b. with Intransitives, 226.
2. **SPECIAL or IDIOMATIC USES** : { *a.* of Possession (with *esse*), 231.
b. of Agency (with Gerund), 232.
c. of Service (predicate use), 233.
d. of Fitness, &c. (with Adjectives), 234.
e. of Reference (*dativus commodi*), 235.

3. — *Accusative.*

1. **PRIMARY OBJECT** : { *a.* Directly affected by the Action, 237.
b. Effect of the Action { Thing produced, 237.
Cognate Accusative, 238.
2. **SECONDARY OBJECT** : { *a.* Predicate Accusative (of Naming, &c.), 239. *a.*
b. of Asking or Teaching (the Thing), 239. *c.*
c. of Concealing (the Person), 239. *d.*
3. **IDIOMATIC USES** : { *a.* Adverbial, 240. *a.*
b. of Specification (Greek Accusative), 240. *c.*
c. of Extent and Duration, 240. *c.*
d. of Exclamation, 240. *d.*
e. Subject of Infinitive (Indirect Discourse), 240. *f.*

4. — *Ablative.*

1. **ABLATIVE** (*from*) : { *a.* of Separation, Privation, and Want, 243.
b. of Source (participles of origin, &c.), 244.
c. of Cause (*gaudeo*, *dignus*, &c.), 245.
d. of Agent (with *ab* after Passives), 246.
e. of Comparison (*than*), 247.
2. **INSTRUMENTAL** (*with*) : { *a.* of Means and Instrument, 248.
b. of Accompaniment (with *cum*), 248. *a.*
c. of Object of the Deponents *utor*, &c., 249.
d. of Degree of Difference, 250.
e. of Quality (with Adjectives), 251.
f. of Price and Exchange, 252.
g. of Specification, 253.
3. **LOCATIVE** (*in, on, at*) : { *a.* of Place *where* (commonly with *in*), 254.
b. of Idiomatic Expressions, 254. *a.*
c. of Time and Circumstance, 255.
d. Ablative Absolute, 255.

PREPOSITIONS take either the Accusative or Ablative ; but are omitted with names of Towns and small Islands (see Rule 36, p. 163; Gr. 25³).

III. — SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

1. — *Moods and Tenses.*

1. INDICATIVE : Direct Assertion or Question ; Absolute Time, 264.
 - a. Independent : Wish, Exhortation, Command, Question (*dubitative*), 265-268.
 - Purpose or Result (with *ut, ne*), 317-319.
 - Characteristic (Relative Clause), 320.
 - Relative Time (with *cum*), 325.
2. SUBJUNCTIVE :
 - b. Dependent (Chap. V.)
 - Conditions
 - Future (primary tenses), 307.
 - Contrary to Fact, 308.
 - Intermediate (Indirect Discourse), 340.
 - Indirect Questions, 334.
3. IMPERATIVE :
 - a. Direct Commands (often subjunctive), 269.
 - b. Statutes, Laws and Wills (Future), 289. d.
 - c. Prohibitions (early or poetic use), 269. a.
4. INFINITIVE :
 - a. Subject of *esse* and Impersonal verbs, 270.
 - b. Object
 - Complementary Infinitive, 271.
 - Indirect Discourse (with subj.-accusative), 272.
 - c. Idiomatic Uses
 - Purpose (poetic or Greek use), 273.
 - Exclamation (with subject-accus.), 274.
 - Historical Infinitive, 275.

2. — *Noun and Adjective Forms.*

1. PARTICIPLES
 - a. Present and Perfect
 - Simple Predicate, 291.
 - Periphrastic Perfect (passive).
 - Predicate of Circumstance, 292.
 - Descriptive (Indirect Discourse).
 - b. Future
 - Periphrastic with *esse*, 293.
 - Periphrastic with *fui* (= Pluperfect Subj.).
 - c. Gerundive
 - as Descriptive Adjective, 294.
 - Periphrastic with *esse*.
 - of Purpose with certain verbs.
2. GERUND OR GERUNDIVE :
 - a. Genitive as Objective Genitive, 298.
 - b. Dative, with Adjectives (of Fitness), Nouns, Verbs, 299.
 - c. Accusative, with certain Prepositions, 300.
 - d. Ablative, of Means, Comparison, or with Prepositions, 301.
3. SUPINE :
 - a. Former Supine (in *um*), with Verbs of Motion, 302.
 - b. Latter Supine (in *u*), chiefly with Adjectives, 303.

3. — *Conditional Sentences.*

1. SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS, nothing implied as to fulfilment :
Indicative, Present or Past Tenses, 306.
2. FUTURE CONDITIONS :
 - a. More vivid (probable) : *Future Indicative*, 307.
 - b. Less vivid (improbable) : *Present Subjunctive*.
3. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT :
 - a. Present : *Imperfect Subjunctive*, 308.
 - b. Past : *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, 308.
4. GENERAL CONDITIONS :
 - a. Indefinite : *2d person, Subjunctive*, 309.
 - b. Repeated Action : *Imperfect or Pluperfect with Indicative in Apodosis*.
5. IMPLIED CONDITIONS :
 - a. Disguised
 - in clause of Fact, Wish, &c., 310.
 - in Participial Expression, 310.
 - b. Omitted
 - Potential Subjunctive, 311.
 - Subjunctive of Modesty, 311.

IV.—FORMS OF THE VERB.

1.—*Verbal Forms.*

		ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.		
		INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	
Present.						
<i>Sing.</i>	1. o'	Vowel-Change : 1. to ē. 2. to ēā. 3. to ēi. 4. to ēā.	m	or	Vowel-Change : as in Active.	
	2. s		s	ris or re		
	3. t		t	tur		
<i>Plur.</i>	1. mus		mus	mur		
	2. tis		tis	mini		
	3. nt		nt	ntur		
Imperfect.						
<i>Sing.</i>	1. bam		rem	bar	rer	
	2. bās		rēs	bāris (re)	rēris (re)	
	3. bat		ret	bātur	rētur	
<i>Plur.</i>	1. bāmus		rēmus	bāmur	rēmur	
	2. bātis		rētis	bāminī	rēminī	
	3. bānt		rent	bantur	rentur	
Future.						
<i>Sing.</i>	i. ii.	iii. iv.	Vowel-Change as indicated in italics; verbs in <i>to</i> retaining <i>e</i> before these vowels.	i. ii.	iii. iv.	Vowel-Change : as in Active.
	1. bo	am		bor	ar	
	2. bis	ēs		beris (re)	ēris (re)	
	3. bit	et		bitur	etur	
<i>Plur.</i>	1. bimus	emus		bimur	emur	
	2. bitis	ētis		biminī	ēminī	
	3. bunt	ent		buntur	entur	
Perfect.						
<i>Sing.</i>	1. ī	erim		-tus (ta,	sum	sim
	2. istī	eris		tum)	es	sīs
	3. it	erit			est	sit
<i>Plur.</i>	1. imus	erimus		-ti (tae,	sumus	simus
	2. istis	eritis		ta)	estis	sītis
	3. erunt or ēre	erint			sunt	sint
Pluperfect.						
<i>Sing.</i>	1. eram	issem		-tus (ta,	eram	essem
	2. erās	issēs		tum)	erās	essēs
	3. erat	isset			erat	esset
<i>Plur.</i>	1. erāmus	issēmus		-ti (tae,	erāmus	essēmus
	2. erātis	issētis		ta)	erātis	essētis
	3. erant	issent			erant	essent
Future Perfect.						
<i>Sing.</i>	1. ero			-tus (ta,	ero	
	2. eris			tum)	eris	
	3. erit				erit	
<i>Plur.</i>	1. erimus			-ti (tae,	erimus	
	2. eritis			ta)	eritis	
	3. erint				erunt	

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. —		re
3. to		tor
<i>Plur.</i> 2. te, tōte		mini
3. nto		ntor

2. — Noun and Adjective Forms.**Infinitive.**

<i>Pres.</i> re (Pres. stem)	i ii. iv. rī, iii. ī (old rier, ier)
<i>Perf.</i> isse (Perf. stem)	tus (ta, tum) esse
<i>Fut.</i> turus (a, um) esse	tum irī

Participle.

<i>Pres.</i> ns, ntis	_____
<i>Perf.</i> _____	tus, ta, tum
<i>Fut.</i> turus, a, um	<i>Ger.</i> ndus, a, um

SUPINE. tum, tu

ANNOUNCEMENTS
OF
NEW BOOKS
BY
GINN AND HEATH.

Latin.

THE AGRICOLA OF TACITUS.

• Edited for School and College Use by W. F. ALLEN, Professor of
Latin in the University of Wisconsin. [Ready in July.

THE GERMANIA OF TACITUS.

Edited for School and College Use by W. F. ALLEN, Professor of
Latin in the University of Wisconsin. [In preparation.

THE ANNALS OF TACITUS.

Edited by TRACY PECK, Professor of Latin in Cornell University.
Vol. I. will contain the first six books of the Annals, covering the
reign of Tiberius. [In preparation.

*SELECTIONS FROM SOME OF THE LESS-KNOWN
LATIN POETS; viz., Catullus, Lucretius, the Elegiac Writers,
Lucan and Martial. With notes for colleges. By E. P. CROWELL,
A.M., Professor of Latin, Amherst College. [In preparation.*

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

CICERO DE NATURA DEORUM.

Translated and Edited, with the Commentary of Schoeman, by
Professor AUSTIN STICKNEY, formerly of Trinity College, Hartford.

[*Ready in August.*]

A NEW AND COMPLETE VIRGIL.

This Edition will be printed from wholly new plates, and will be
fully annotated by Professor J. B. GREENOUGH, Harvard University.
It will also have numerous illustrations from the antique.

[*Ready in June, 1881.*]

ALLEN'S LATIN COMPOSITION.

Introduction to Latin Composition by Professor W. F. ALLEN.
New Edition, revised and enlarged.

This edition has been thoroughly revised, recast, and adapted to
the Revised Edition of Allen and Greenough's Grammar, with parallel
references to Gildersleeve and Harkness. About twenty-five preliminary
Lessons have been added on elementary constructions; also, a
new and enlarged general Vocabulary. In the introductory portion,
special attention has been given to oral practice, with a view to the
rapid acquisition of a good Vocabulary (taken largely from Cæsar)
as well as the familiar knowledge of grammatical constructions. In
the revision, and in the preparation of the preliminary exercises, the
Editor has been greatly aided by the advice and coöperation of Mr.
JOHN TETLOW, Principal of the Girls' Latin School, Boston.

[*Ready in July.*]

In order to meet a very general demand, an edition of the
NEW LATIN METHOD

Will be published during the summer, with the "Parallel Exercises"
greatly simplified, abridged, and accompanied by progressive exercises
in "Reading at Sight" (interlined), taken chiefly from Cæsar. In
these exercises the long vowels will be consistently marked through-
out.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

THE LETTERS OF THE YOUNGER PLINY.

Edited for Use in Schools and Colleges by TRACY PECK, Professor of Latin in Cornell University.

This edition will contain all the letters of Pliny, including the correspondence with the Emperor Trajan, and a commentary upon the entire series. The slight attention paid to these letters in our Latin courses has often been remarked and regretted. The light which they throw upon the public and private history of their time, the amiable and cultivated character of the writer, and their graceful style and exquisite Latinity, make them exceptionally instructive and interesting.

[*In preparation.*]

LATIN PRONUNCIATION.

A Brief Outline of the Roman, Continental, and English Methods, by D. B. KING, Adjunct Professor of Latin in Lafayette College.

Contains a few explanatory and historical paragraphs on the Roman, Continental, and English methods of pronouncing Latin, and a brief presentation of the main features of each, prepared for use at Lafayette College, where the character and arrangement of studies in English and Comparative Philology make it desirable that students should have a knowledge of both Roman and English methods.

The students are carefully taught in practice to use the English method, and to give the rules for the sound of the letters, this having been found a valuable aid in teaching English Pronunciation and the Philology of the English language. A knowledge of the Roman method, giving the sounds, in the main, as we believe Cicero and Virgil gave them, is required as a matter of historical information and culture, and as an important aid in determining the derivations of words and laws of phonetic change, and in illustrating the principles of Comparative Philology. Mailing price, 15 cents.

[*Ready.*]

LEIGHTON'S LATIN LESSONS

Will have references, in the next edition, to the Grammars of Andrews and Stoddard, Gildersleeve and Harkness.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

Greek.

THE PROMETHEUS OF AESCHYLUS.

Edited, with Notes and an Introduction, by FREDERIC D. ALLEN,
Ph.D., Professor of Greek in Yale College. [In preparation.]

THE PHILIPPICS OF DEMOSTHENES.

Edited by FRANK B. TARBELL, Ph.D., Yale College, with the
Zürich Edition of the Text, a Historical Introduction, and Explanatory Notes. [Ready in June.]

THE HELLENIC ORATIONS OF DEMOSTHENES.

Symmories, Megalopolitans, and Rhodians. With revised text
and commentary by ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D., Professor of Greek in
Cornell University, Ithaca, N.Y. [Ready in August.]

SELECTIONS FROM PINDAR, THE BUCOLIC POETS, AND THE GREEK HYMNS.

Containing twelve
Odes of Pindar, six Idylls of Theocritus, Bion's Epitaphius Adonidis,
Moschus' Europa, two Homeric Hymns, a Hymn of Callimachus, and
the Hymn of Cleanthes; in all, about 2,800 lines. Edited by T. D.
SEYMOUR, Professor of Greek in Western Reserve College, Ohio.

[Ready January 1, 1881.]

THE FIRST THREE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD.

[In preparation.]

SIDGWICK'S FIRST GREEK WRITER.

Adapted to Goodwin's Greek Grammar by JOHN WILLIAMS
WHITE, Ph.D. Intended to follow WHITE'S FIRST LESSONS
IN GREEK, and to introduce SIDGWICK'S GREEK PROSE
COMPOSITION. [In preparation.]

STEIN'S SUMMARY OF THE DIALECT OF HEROD-

OTUS, translated by Professor JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D.,
from the German of the fourth edition of Herodotus by Heinrich
Stein. Paper, pp. 15.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

This pamphlet makes a complete statement of the euphonic and inflexional peculiarities which distinguish the language of Herodotus from Attic Greek, and is suitable for use with any edition of Herodotus. Mailing price, 15 cents. [Ready.]

WHITE'S FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK, REVISED

EDITION. With references to the revised and enlarged edition of Goodwin's Greek Grammar, and printed from entirely new plates.

The publishers beg leave to call attention to the following changes which have been made in the new edition of the First Lessons in Greek.

The number of lessons has been increased from seventy-five to eighty. The five added lessons are on the verb, the treatment of which is thus distributed over more ground. By this enlargement the difficulty of single lessons on the verb is correspondingly decreased.

After λύνε has been fully presented by moods, as in the first edition, a development of the Greek verb by tense-stems has been introduced. The seven tense-stems are now fully developed.

Contract verbs are presented, in this edition, in two lessons in place of one. The lesson on liquid verbs has been brought forward. The perfect and pluperfect middle and passive of liquid and mute verbs is now fully treated. A lesson has been added to Lessons LII. and LIII. giving in full the principal parts of twenty-five additional verbs. In the Lessons on the Formation of Words and on Prepositions it has now been possible to remove the body of the text, but the exercises of Lessons LIV. and LV. remain, and a complete set of exercises has been added to Lesson LXII.

Single words and phrases have been removed from the exercises, which now consist wholly of complete sentences. In the special vocabularies the parts of the verbs are given in full and no words are repeated. In the general vocabularies the words are more fully treated, especially the prepositions, the cases required by the verbs stated, and English cognate and borrowed words distinguished by different types.

New editions of the Pamphlet of Parallel References to Hadley's Grammar, and of the Key for the use of Teachers, are to follow.

An edition of the First Lessons in Greek is to be printed and published for the use of English schools, by Macmillan & Co. in England, simultaneously with the American edition. [Ready in July.]

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

***AN ILLUSTRATED VOCABULARY TO THE FIRST
FOUR BOOKS OF XENOPHON'S ANABASIS.*** By JOHN
WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Greek in Harvard
University.

The distinguishing features of this Vocabulary will be its illustrations, the fullness of its definitions, and its careful treatment of etymologies.

To be published both separately and bound with Goodwin and White's edition of the First Four Books of the Anabasis.

[Ready in September.]

The next edition of

***GOODWIN'S ANABASIS, GREEK READER, and
SELECTIONS FROM XENOPHON and HERODOTUS,*** will
have references to the new edition of Goodwin's Greek Grammar.

LEIGHTON'S NEW GREEK LESSONS.

With references to Hadley's Greek Grammar as well as to Goodwin's New Greek Grammar.

About seventy easy and well-graded lessons, both Greek and English, introduce the pupil to the first book of Xenophon's Anabasis, from which the Exercises and Vocabularies are mainly selected. Definite directions have been given in regard to the amount of the Grammar to be learned. The main aim has been, while introducing the simpler principles of syntax, to have the pupil *master the Inflections* and *acquire a Vocabulary*. In furtherance of this purpose, the exercises on the inflections have been increased, while those on syntax have been decreased. Vocabularies have been given under each lesson; and, in order to aid the pupil in memorizing them, some insight has been given into the derivation and into the composition of words, — how they are built up, by means of significance endings, from noun and verb stems, and from roots. The Prepositions are introduced from the first; and the pupil is taught the primary meanings, and then how these meanings are modified by the cases before which the Prepositions stand. Questions for Review and Examination as in the first edition. In rewriting these Lessons, considerable use has been made of the excellent exercises, used in most of the German gymnasiums, prepared by Dr. Wasener to accompany the Greek Grammar of Professor Curtius.

[Ready in June.]

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

MAY 22 1918

